

(19) **DANMARK**



Patent- og
Varemærkestyrelsen

(10) **DK/EP 3380124 T3**

(12) Oversættelse af
europæisk patentskrift

-
- (51) Int.Cl.: **A 61 K 47/60 (2017.01)** **A 61 K 38/00 (2006.01)** **A 61 K 47/54 (2017.01)**
A 61 K 47/68 (2017.01) **A 61 P 35/00 (2006.01)**
- (45) Oversættelsen bekendtgjort den: **2024-06-24**
- (80) Dato for Den Europæiske Patentmyndigheds bekendtgørelse om meddelelse af patentet: **2024-04-03**
- (86) Europæisk ansøgning nr.: **16868091.6**
- (86) Europæisk indleveringsdag: **2016-11-23**
- (87) Den europæiske ansøgnings publiceringsdag: **2018-10-03**
- (86) International ansøgning nr.: **IB2016001772**
- (87) Internationalt publikationsnr.: **WO2017089890**
- (30) Prioritet: **2015-11-25 US 201562260046 P**
- (84) Designerede stater: **AL AT BE BG CH CY CZ DE DK EE ES FI FR GB GR HR HU IE IS IT LI LT LU LV MC MK MT NL NO PL PT RO RS SE SI SK SM TR**
- (73) Patenthaver: **LigaChem Biosciences Inc., 10, Gukjegwahak 10-ro, Yuseong-gu, Daejeon 34002, Sydkorea**
- (72) Opfinder: **CHAE, Jeiwook, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro, Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea**
CHUNG, Chul-woong, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro, Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
KIM, Hyoungrae, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
KIM, Jinyeong, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
MIN, Ji, Young, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
KIM, Sung, Min, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro, Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
KIM, Yong Zu, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro, Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
OH, Yeong Soo, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
SONG, Ho Young, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
PARK, Yun Hee, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
CHOI, Hyo Jung, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro, Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
PARK, Kyung Eun, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
LEE, Byung Soo, 8-26 Mupyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
WOO, Dong Hyun, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
JUN, Ji Eun, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
LEE, Su In, 8-26 Munpyeongseo-ro Daedeok-gu, Daejeon 34302, Sydkorea
- (74) Fuldmægtig i Danmark: **Budde Schou A/S, Dronningens Tværgade 30, 1302 København K, Danmark**
- (54) Benævnelse: **Konjugater omfattende selv-immolative grupper og fremgangsmåder relateret dertil**
- (56) Fremdragne publikationer:
WO-A1-2016/040684
WO-A2-2012/153193
KR-A- 20150 137 015

Fortsættes ...

US-A- 5 112 739

US-A1- 2014 031 535

JOONG-JAE LEE ET AL: "Enzymatic Prenylation and Oxime Ligation for the Synthesis of Stable and Homogeneous Protein-Drug Conjugates for Targeted Therapy", ANGEWANDTE CHEMIE INTERNATIONAL EDITION, vol. 54, no. 41, 5 October 2015 (2015-10-05), pages 12020-12024, XP055385203, DE ISSN: 1433-7851, DOI: 10.1002/anie.201505964

LEE, J.-J. ET AL.: 'Enzymatic prenylation and oxime ligation for the synthesis of stable and homogeneous protein-drug conjugates for targeted therapy' ANGEWANDTE CHEMIE INTERNATIONAL EDITION vol. 54, no. 41, 05 October 2015, pages 12020 - 12024, XP055385203

Description

BACKGROUND

[0001] Antibody-drug conjugate (ADC) technology is a target-oriented technology, which allows for selective apoptosis of cancer cells. Typically, ADCs function by targeting cancer cells using the antibody and then releasing a toxic material (i.e., the drug) in a cell, thereby triggering cell death. Since ADC technology allows a drug to be accurately delivered to a target cancer cell and released under specific conditions, while minimizing collateral damage to healthy cells, ADC technology increases the efficacy of a therapeutic antibody and decreases the risk of an adverse reaction.

[0002] A basic structure of an antibody-drug conjugate is an "antibody-linker-low molecular drug (toxin)". The linker ideally allows the drug to exhibit an effect on a target cancer cell, e.g., after being separated from the antibody (for example, by enzyme-mediated hydrolysis), after the drug reaches a target cell. The linker also plays a functional role, by connecting the antibody and the drug. The efficacy and toxicity of the antibody-drug conjugate thereby depends, in part, on the stability of the linker, and thus, the linker plays an important role in drug safety.

[0003] The linkers of antibody-drug conjugates may be roughly classified as non-cleavable or cleavable. Many non-cleavable linkers are attached to antibodies using a thioether, comprising a cysteine of the antibody. The pendant drug generally cannot dissociate from the antibody *in vivo*. In the case of the widely-used thiol-maleimide method, however, the antibody-drug conjugate is unstable, which may result in dissociation of the drug from the conjugate before or after it reaches a target cell.

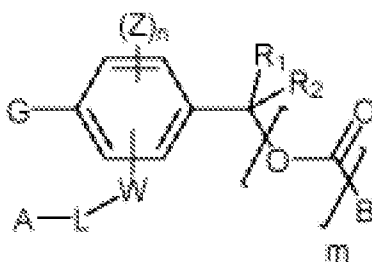
[0004] Cleavable linkers may be hydrolyzed, for example, by a lysosomal enzyme. A cleavable linker may comprise a disulfide bond, e.g., including a cysteine of the antibody. A disulfide linker, which allows for dissociation via a thiol exchange reaction, relies in part on the uptake of an antibody-drug conjugate into a target cell and the exposure of the disulfide to the cytosol, which is a reducing environment. Since various types of thiols (for example, albumin, and glutathione) are present in the blood, however, a drug may dissociate from the antibody prior to reaching its target.

[0005] Recently, a new approach to making antibody-drug conjugates has been described, using protein prenylation of a C-terminal amino acid sequence to install a modified isoprenoid unit that allows for attachment of a drug or other active agent to the antibody in a mild and site-specific manner (e.g., see U.S. Patent Publication No. 2012/0308584). Further refinement is possible. Lee et al. (2015), *Angewandte Chemie*, 54(41):12020-12024 describe the enzymatic prenylation and oxime ligation for the synthesis of stable and homogeneous protein-drug conjugates for targeted therapy.

[0006] In light of the foregoing, improved linkers for antibody-drug conjugates are desirable.

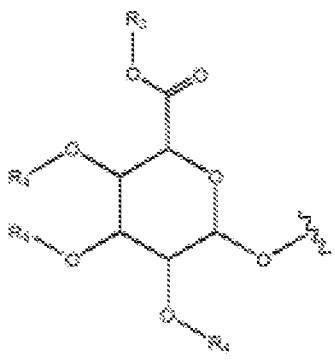
SUMMARY

[0007] The present invention is defined by the claims. The present invention relates in a first aspect to a ligand-drug conjugate, comprising a ligand, a linker, and an active agent, having the formula:



wherein:

G represents



A represents an antibody;

B represents the active agent;

W represents $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'-$, $-C(O)O-$, $-S(O)_2NR'-$, $-P(O)R''NR'-$, $-S(O)NR'-$, or $-PO_2NR'-$, in each case where the C(O), S, or P is directly bound to the phenyl ring, and R' and R'' are each independently hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl, (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl, (C_1-C_8) alkoxy, (C_1-C_8) alkylthio, mono- or di- (C_1-C_8) alkylamino, (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl, or (C_6-C_{20}) aryl;

each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), (C_1-C_8) alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro;

n is an integer from 1 to 3;

m is 0 or 1 ;

L is a linker that covalently links A to W, wherein the linker comprises a peptide that comprises at least one hydrophilic amino acid;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl, or (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl; or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl ring;

R₃ is hydrogen or a carboxyl protecting group; and

each R₄ is independently hydrogen or a hydroxyl protecting group.

[0008] In accordance with a preferred embodiment the antibody is a monoclonal antibody, polyclonal antibody, antibody fragment, Fab, Fab', Fab'-SH, F(ab')₂, Fv, single chain Fv ("scFv"), diabody, linear antibody, bispecific antibody, multi-specific antibody, chimeric antibody, humanized antibody, human antibody, or a fusion protein comprising the antigen-binding portion of an antibody.

[0009] In accordance with another preferred embodiment the antibody is muromonab-CD3 abciximab, rituximab, daclizumab, palivizumab, infliximab, trastuzumab, etanercept, basiliximab, gemtuzumab, alemtuzumab, ibritumomab, adalimumab, alefacept, omalizumab, efalizumab, tositumomab, bevacizumab, natalizumab, ranibizumab, eculizumab, rilona-cept, certolizumab, romiplostim, AMG-531, golimumab, ustekinumab, ABT-874, belatacept, belimumab, atacicept, an anti-CD20 antibody, canakinumab, tocilizumab, atlizumab, mepolizumab, pertuzumab, HuMax CD20, tremelimumab, ticilimumab, ipilimumab, IDEC-114, inotuzumab, aflibercept, HuMax-CD4, teplizumab, orelizumab, catumaxomab, the anti-EpCAM antibody IGN101, adecatumomab, oregovomab, , dinutuximab, girentuximab, denosumab, bapineuzumab, motavizumab, efumgumab, raxibacumab, an anti-CD20 antibody, LY2469298, or veltuzumab.

[0010] In accordance with a preferred embodiment R₃ and R₄ are each hydrogen.

[0011] In accordance with a further preferred embodiment W is $-C(O)NR'-$, where C(O) is bonded to the phenyl ring and NR' is bonded to L.

[0012] In accordance with a further preferred embodiment the linker comprises an alkylene having 1 to 100 carbon atoms, and either: the alkylene includes at least one unsaturated bond; the alkylene includes at least one heteroarylene; a carbon atom of the alkylene is replaced by one or more heteroatoms selected from nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), and sulfur (S); or the alkylene is further substituted with one or more alkyls having 1 to 20 carbon atoms.

[0013] In accordance with a preferred embodiment the peptide comprises alanine, aspartate, asparagine, glutamate, glutamine, glycine, lysine, ornithine, proline, serine, or threonine.

[0014] In accordance with a further preferred embodiment the peptide comprises aspartate or glutamate.

[0015] In accordance with a still further preferred embodiment the ligand comprises an amino acid motif that is recognized by an isoprenoid transferase; and the thioether bond comprises a sulfur atom of a cysteine of the amino acid motif. In accordance with a preferred embodiment the linker comprises at least one isoprenyl unit.

[0016] In accordance with another preferred embodiment the linker comprises a connection unit represented by $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_q-$, $-((CH_2)_pV)_q-$, $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_qY-$, $-((CH_2)_pV)_q(CH_2)_r-$, $-Y(((CH_2)_pV)_q-$ or $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_qYCH_2-$

wherein:

r is an integer from 0 to 10;

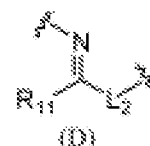
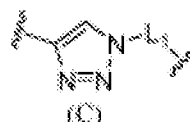
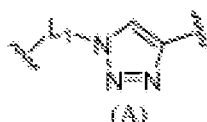
p is an integer from 1 to 10;

q is an integer from 1 to 20;

V and Y are each independently a single bond, -O-, -S-, -NR₂₁-, -C(O)NR₂₂-, -NR₂₃C(O)-, -NR₂₄SO₂-, or -SO₂NR₂₅-; and

R₂₁ to R₂₅ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₆-C₂₀)aryl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl.

[0017] In accordance with a further preferred embodiment the linker comprises a binding unit which is represented by any one of Formulas A, B, C, or D:



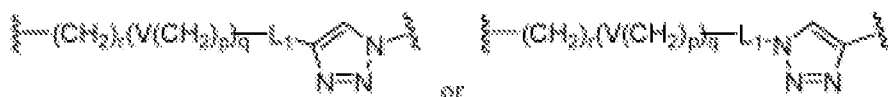
wherein:

L₁ is a single bond or alkylene having 1 to 30 carbon atoms;

R₁₁ is hydrogen or alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms; and

L₂ is alkylene having 1 to 30 carbon atoms.

[0018] In accordance with a yet further preferred embodiment the linker comprises:



V is a single bond, -O-, -S-, -NR₂₁-, -C(O)NR₂₂-, -NR₂₃C(O)-, -NR₂₄SO₂-, or -SO₂NR₂₅-, preferably -O-;

R₂₁ to R₂₅ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl;

r is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably 2 or 3;

p is an integer from 0 to 10, preferably 1 or 2;

q is an integer from 1 to 20, preferably 1 to 6; and

L₁ is a single bond.

[0019] In accordance with a preferred embodiment the active agent is selected from:

(a) erlotinib, bortezomib, fulvestrant, sutent, letrozole, imatinib mesylate, PTK787/ZK 222584, oxaliplatin, 5-fluorouracil, leucovorin, rapamycin, lapatinib, lonafarnib, sorafenib, gefitinib, AG1478, AG1571, thiotepa, cyclophosphamide, busulfan, improsulfan, piposulfan, benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, uredopa, ethylenimine, altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphoramide, trimethylolmelamine, bullatacin, bullatacinone, camptothecin, topotecan, bryostatin, calystatin, CC-1065, adozelesin, carzelesin, bizelesin, cryptophycin 1, cryptophycin 8, dolastatin, duocarmycin, KW-2189, CB1-TM1, eleutherobin, pancratistatin, sarcodictyin, spongistatin, chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard, carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine, calicheamicin, calicheamicin gamma 1, calicheamicin omega 1, dynemicin, dynemicin A, clodronate, esperamicin, neocarzinostatin chromophore, aclacinomysins, actinomycin, antrmycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, carabycin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, morpholino-doxorubicin, cyanomorpholino-doxorubicin, 2-pyrrolino-doxorubicin, liposomal doxorubicin, deoxydoxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycin C, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptomigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin, 5-fluorouracil, denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate, fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thiguanine, ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine, calusterone, dromo-

stanolone propionate, epitiostanol, mepitiothane, testolactone, aminogluthethimide, mitotane, trilostane, folinic acid, aceglatone, aldophosphamide glycoside, aminolevulinic acid, eniluracil, amsacrine, bestabucil, bisantrene, edat-raxate, defofamine, demecolcine, diaziquone, elfornithine, elliptinium acetate, etoglucid, gallium nitrate, hydroxyurea, lentinan, lonidainine, maytansine, ansamitocins, mitoguazone, mitoxantrone, mopidanmol, nitraerine, pentostatin, phenamet, pirarubicin, losoxantrone, 2-ethylhydrazide, procarbazine, polysaccharide-k, razoxane, rhizoxin, sizofiran, spirogermanium, tenuazonic acid, triaziquone, 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine, T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A, and anguidine, urethane, vindesine, dacarbazine, mannomustine, mitobronitol, mitolactol, pipobroman, gacyto-sine, arabinoside, cyclophosphamide, thiotepa, paclitaxel, albumin-engineered nanoparticle formulation of paclit-axel, doxetaxel, chlorambucil, gemcitabine, 6-thioguanine, mercaptopurine, cisplatin, carboplatin, vinblastine, plat-inum, etoposide, ifosfamide, mitoxantrone, vincristine, vinorelbine, novantrone, teniposide, edatrexate, daunomycin, aminopterin, xeloda, ibandronate, CPT-11, topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000, difluoromethylornithine, retinoic acid, capecitabine, or pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates or acids of any of the foregoing;

(b) monokine, a lymphokine, a traditional polypeptide hormone, parathyroid hormone, thyroxine, relaxin, prorelaxin, a glycoprotein hormone, follicle stimulating hormone, thyroid stimulating hormone, luteinizing hormone, hepatic growth factor fibroblast growth factor, prolactin, placental lactogen, tumor necrosis factor- α , tumor necrosis factor- β , mullerian-inhibiting substance, mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide, inhibin, activin, vascular endothelial growth factor, thrombopoietin, erythropoietin, an osteoinductive factor, an interferon, interferon- α , interferon- β , interferon- γ , a colony stimulating factor ("CSF"), macrophage-CSF, granulocyte-macrophage-CSF, granulocyte-CSF, an interleukin ("IL"), IL-1, IL-1 α , IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, a tumor necrosis factor, TNF- α , TNF- β , a polypeptide factor, LIF, kit ligand, or a combination of any of the foregoing;

(c) diphtheria toxin, botulium toxin, tetanus toxin, dysentery toxin, cholera toxin, amanitin, α -amanitin, a derivative of amanitin, pyrrolobenzodiazepine, pyrrolobenzodiazepine derivatives, tetrodotoxin, brevetoxin, ciguatoxin, ricin, AM toxin, auristatin (e.g., auristatin E (MMAE), or auristatin F (MMAF)), tubulysin, geldanamycin, maytansinoids, calicheamicin, daunomycin, doxorubicin, methotrexate, vindesine, SG2285, dolastatin, a dolastatin analog, cryptophycin, camptothecin, a derivative or metabolite of camptothecin (e.g., SN-38), rhizoxin, a rhizoxin derivative, CC-1065, a CC-1065 analogue or derivative, duocarmycin, an enediyne antibiotic, esperamicin, epothilone, azonafide, aplidine, a toxoid, or a combination of any of the foregoing;

(d) an affinity ligand, wherein the affinity ligand is a substrate, an inhibitor, a stimulating agent, a neurotransmitter, a radioisotope, or a combination of any of the foregoing;

(e) a radioactive label, ^{32}P , ^{35}S , a fluorescent dye, an electron dense reagent, an enzyme, biotin, streptavidin, dioxigenin, a hapten, an immunogenic protein, a nucleic acid molecule with a sequence complementary to a target, or a combination of any of the foregoing;

(f) an immunomodulatory compound, an anti-cancer agent, an anti-viral agent, an anti-bacterial agent, an anti-fungal agent, and an anti-parasitic agent, or a combination of any of the foregoing;

(g) tamoxifen, raloxifene, droloxifene, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, or toremifene;

(h) 4(5)-imidazoles, aminogluthethimide, megestrol acetate, exemestane, letrozole, or anastrozole;

(i) flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, goserelin, or troxacitabine;

(j) an aromatase inhibitor;

(k) a protein kinase inhibitor; and

(l) a lipid kinase inhibitor.

[0020] In accordance with a further preferred embodiment the active agent is selected from an antisense oligonucleotide, a ribozyme a vaccine, and an anti-angiogenic agent.

[0021] The present invention relates in a second aspect to pharmaceutical composition comprising the conjugate according to the first aspect of the invention and at least one pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

[0022] The present invention relates in a third aspect to a conjugate according to the first aspect of the invention for use in the treatment of cancer.

[0023] The present invention relates in a third aspect to a method for making the ligand-drug conjugate according to the first aspect of the invention, comprising reacting a biomolecule with a prodrug, wherein:

the biomolecule comprises a ligand and a ketone or aldehyde;

the prodrug comprises an alkoxyamine;

the reaction produces an oxime, thereby covalently linking the ligand to the prodrug.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[0024]

Figure 1 illustrates an active drug release mechanism from a β -glucuronide based linker.

Figure 2 is a graph depicting the hydrolysis of a linker by β -glucuronidase from Experimental Example 1.

Figure 3 is a graph depicting the plasma stability of two drug-linker conjugates from Experimental Example 2.

Figure 4 is a graph depicting the plasma stability of compound 47a, described in Example 68.

Figure 5 is a graph depicting the plasma stability of compound 49a, described in Example 70.

Figure 6 is a graph depicting the plasma stability of compound 48a, described in Example 69.

Figure 7 consists of two panels, **Figure 7A** and **Figure 7B**. **Figure 7A** displays a strategy for conjugating a drug to an antibody (DAR2). **Figure 7B** displays a strategy for conjugating a drug to an antibody (DAR4).

Figure 8 shows relative in vitro activities of the DAR2 MMAE-conjugates, with varying PEG length in the linker, against JIMT-1 (HER2 positive) and MCF7 cells (HER2 negative).

Figure 9 shows relative in vitro activities of the DAR4 MMAE-conjugates, which have a different PEG length in linker part, against JIMT-1 (HER2 positive) and MCF7 cells (HER2 negative).

Figure 10 shows human beta-glucuronidase reactivity in DAR4 ADCs, which have the various linker types. 12 μM of ADCs were incubated with 0.01 μg of human beta-glucuronidase (R&D Systems) for 3 hours at 37°C.

Figure 11 shows plasma stability of ADC2 and Kadcyla in mouse or human plasma.

Figure 12 shows human plasma stability of ADC33 and ADC34 for 7 days.

Figure 13 shows Rat PK profile of Herceptin and ADC2.

Figure 14 shows Rat PK profile of ADC23 and ADC34.

Figure 15 shows Rat PK profile improvement of MMAE-based ADCs by replacing linker-toxin from 2g to 11j.

Figure 16 shows Rat PK profile improvement by branched linker unit.

Figure 17 shows impact of polar amino acid on Rat PK profile in MMAE ADC.

Figure 18 shows Rat PK profile improvement by branched linker-toxin with or without polar amino acid in ADC with DAR2

Figure 19 shows effects of Asp in linker-toxin unit on Rat PK profile of ADC with DAR4.

Figure 20 shows effects of Glu in linker-toxin unit on Rat PK profile of ADC with DAR4.

Figure 21 shows in vivo efficacy of representative amine type DAR4 ADC using MMAF (ADC23) or MMAE (ADC24).

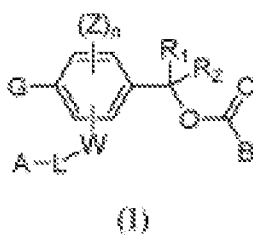
Figure 22 shows in vivo efficacy of representative amide type DAR4 ADC using MMAF (ADC34) or MMAE (ADC33).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION

[0025] Generally described herein are antibody-drug conjugates (ADCs). The antibody-drug conjugate may comprise a self-immolative group, e.g., for use in separating an active agent from the ADC. However, as one of skill in the art would recognize, the antibody portion of such conjugates can be replaced by any suitable ligand, and thus the disclosure relates in equal measure to ligand-drug conjugates. Accordingly, references to and discussions of antibody-drug conjugates herein should be understood, where not contradicted by context, as equally applicable to ligand-drug conjugates and their corresponding intermediates (e.g., ligand-linker conjugates). In all aspects related to the various ligand-drug conjugates disclosed herein, however, the ligand is preferably an antibody.

[0026] In some implementations, the disclosure relates to an antibody-drug conjugate, comprising an antibody, a linker, and an active agent (e.g., a drug). The linker may comprise an O-substituted oxime. In preferred implementations, the oxygen atom of the oxime is substituted with a group that covalently links the oxime to the active agent, and the carbon atom of the oxime is substituted with a group that covalently links the oxime to the antibody. In some implementations, the carbon atom of the oxime is substituted with a group that covalently links the oxime to the active agent, and the oxygen atom of the oxime is substituted with a group that covalently links the oxime to the antibody. In some implementations, the linker does not comprise an oxime. For example, the linker may comprise a heterocycle that results from a cycloaddition, such as substituted triazole, instead of an oxime.

[0027] An ADC may be represented by Formula (I), comprising an antibody (A) having binding specificity for a molecule, a linker, and an active agent (B), such as a drug, a toxin, a ligand, a detection probe, or the like, having a desired function or activity:



wherein

G is a sugar or sugar acid, preferably glucuronic acid or a derivative thereof;

A represents the antibody;

B represents the active agent, such as a drug;

W represents an electron-withdrawing group, preferably -C(O)NR', where C(O) is bonded to the phenyl ring and NR' is bonded to L;

each Z independently represents (C₁-C₆)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, preferably hydrogen;

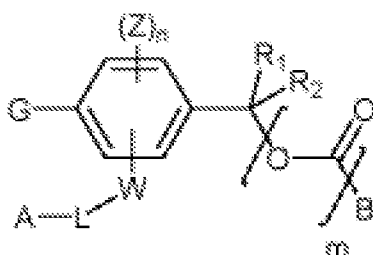
n is an integer from 0 to 3, preferably 3;

L comprises a chain of 3 to 100 atoms that covalently links A to W; and

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring.

The moieties connecting A and B, taken together (*i.e.*, from L to OC(=O)), form the linker.

[0028] In some implementations, the conjugate has the formula:



wherein G represents a sugar, sugar acid, or modified sugar, preferably a sugar or sugar acid, most preferably glucuronic acid:

A represents the ligand:

B represents the active agent;

W represents -C(O)-, -C(O)NR'-, -C(O)O-, -S(O)₂NR'-, -P(O)R''NR'-, -S(O)NR'-, or -PO₂NR'-, in each case where the C(O), S, or P is directly bound to the phenyl ring, and R' and R'' are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₈)alkoxy, (C₁-C₈)alkylthio, mono- or di-(C₁-C₈)alkylamino, (C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl, or (C₆-C₂₀)aryl:

each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), preferably a hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, most preferably hydrogen;

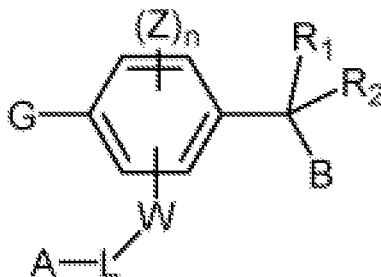
n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3;

m is 0 or 1, preferably 1:

L is a linker (e.g., comprising an oxime) that covalently links A to W;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring.

[0029] In some implementations, the conjugate has the formula:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

A represents the ligand;

B represents the active agent:

G may represent a sugar, sugar acid, or modified sugar, preferably a sugar or sugar acid, most preferably glucuronic acid;

W may represent $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'$, $-C(O)O-$, $-S(O)_2NR'$, $-P(O)R''NR'$, $-S(O)NR'$, or $-PO_2NR'$, in each case where the C(O), S, or P is directly bound to the phenyl ring, and R' and R'' are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₈)alkoxy, (C₁-C₈)alkylthio, mono- or di-(C₁-C₈)alkylamino, (C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl, or (C₆-C₂₀)aryl;

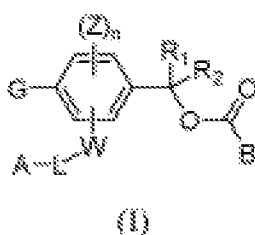
each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), preferably a hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, most preferably hydrogen;

n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3;

L represents a linker, comprising the oxime, that covalently links A to W;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring.

[0030] A ligand-drug conjugate may comprise a ligand; a linker; and an active agent, represented by the following structure:



wherein:

G represents a sugar or sugar acid, preferably glucuronic acid;

A represents a ligand;

B represents the active agent;

W represents an electron withdrawing group, preferably $-C(O)NR'$, where C(O) is bonded to the phenyl ring and NR' is bonded to L;

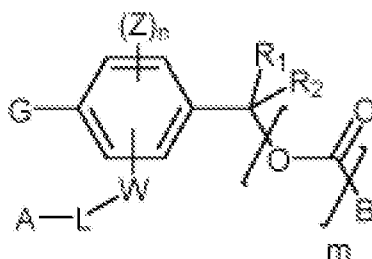
each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), preferably a hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, most preferably hydrogen;

n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3;

L comprises a chain of 3 to 100 atoms that covalently links A to W;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring; and the moieties connecting A and B, taken together (*i.e.*, from L to OC(=O)), form the linker.

[0031] A ligand-drug conjugate may comprise a ligand, a linker, and an active agent, having represented by the following structure:



wherein:

G represents a sugar, sugar acid, or modified sugar, preferably a sugar or sugar acid, most preferably glucuronic acid;

A represents the ligand;

B represents the active agent;

W represents $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'-$, $-C(O)O-$, $-S(O)_2NR'-$, $-P(O)R''NR'-$, $-S(O)NR'-$, or $-PO_2NR'-$, in each case where the C(O), S, or P is directly bound to the phenyl ring, and R' and R'' are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₈)alkoxy, (C₁-C₈)alkylthio, mono- or di-(C₁-C₈)alkylamino, (C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl, or (C₆-C₂₀)aryl

each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), preferably a hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, most preferably hydrogen;

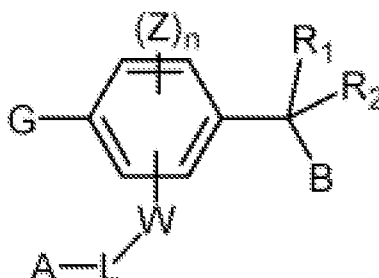
n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3;

m is 0 or 1, preferably 1;

L is a linker that covalently links A to W;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring.

[0032] A ligand-drug conjugate may comprise a ligand, a linker, and an active agent represented by the following structure:



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein

A represents the ligand;

B represents the active agent;

G represents a sugar, sugar acid, or modified sugar, preferably a sugar or sugar acid, most preferably glucuronic acid; W represents $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'-$, $-C(O)O-$, $-S(O)_2NR'-$, $-P(O)R''NR'-$, $-S(O)NR'-$, or $-PO_2NR'-$, in each case where the C(O), S, or P is directly bound to the phenyl ring, and R' and R'' are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₈)alkoxy, (C₁-C₈)alkylthio, mono- or di-(C₁-C₈)alkylamino, (C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl, or (C₆-C₂₀)aryl

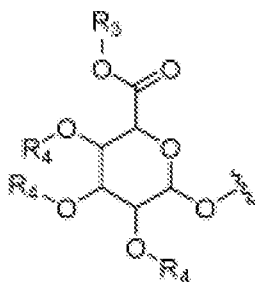
each Z independently represents hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or an electron-withdrawing group (such as an amide, carboxylic acid, carboxylic acid ester, halogen, cyano, or nitro), preferably a hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, most preferably hydrogen;

n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3;

L represents a linker that covalently links A to W;

R₁ and R₂ are each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, or (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, preferably hydrogen, or R₁ and R₂ taken together with the carbon atom to which they are attached form a (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl ring.

[0033] The linker may comprise a sugar or sugar acid, e.g., coupled by a bond susceptible to enzymatic cleavage, such as a glycosidic bond. This sugar or sugar acid is represented by G in Formula (I). The sugar or sugar acid is preferably a monosaccharide. The sugar or sugar acid may be glucuronic acid, or a derivative thereof, which is capable of being cleaved from the ADC by a β -glucuronidase. Glucuronic acid, or a derivative thereof, may be represented by Formula (II):



(II)

wherein R_3 is hydrogen or a carboxyl protecting group, preferably hydrogen, and each R_4 is independently hydrogen or a hydroxyl protecting group, preferably hydrogen.

[0034] A carboxyl protecting group may be any suitable protecting group for masking a carboxylic acid, e.g., in organic synthesis, such as methyl, methoxymethyl, methylthiomethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, benzyloxymethyl, phenacyl, N-phthalimidomethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethyl, 2-haloethyl, 2-(p-toluenesulfonyl)ethyl, t-butyl, cinnamyl, benzyl, triphenylmethyl, bis(o-nitrophenyl)methyl, 9-anthrylmethyl, 2-(9,10-dioxo)anthrylmethyl, piperonyl, 2-trimethylsilylethyl, trimethylsilyl, or t-butyldimethylsilyl. In some implementations, the entire moiety $R_3-OC(=O)-$ is replaced by a carboxyl-masking moiety such as 2-alkyl-1,3-oxazoliny.

[0035] A hydroxyl protecting group may be any suitable protecting group suitable for masking a hydroxyl group, e.g., in organic synthesis, such as acetyl, methyl, ethoxyethyl, benzoyl, benzyl, 4-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, tetrahydropyranyl (THP), tetrahydrofuranyl (THF), tert-butyldimethylsilyl (TBDMS), trimethylsilyl (TMS), triethylsilyl (TES), triisopropylsilyl (TIPS), tert-butyldiphenylsilyl (TBDPS), tri-isopropylsilyloxymethyl (TOM), β -methoxyethoxymethyl (MEM), methoxymethyl (MOM), allyl, or trityl.

[0036] The electron withdrawing group W may be $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'-$, $-C(O)O-$, $-SO_2NR'-$, $-P(O)R''NR'-$, $-SONR'-$, or $-PO_2NR'-$, preferably $-C(O)NR'-$, and R' and R'' may be each independently hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl, (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl, (C_1-C_8) alkoxy, (C_1-C_8) alkylthio, mono- or di- (C_1-C_8) alkylamino, (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl, or (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, preferably hydrogen. In such implementations, W is preferably oriented such that the carbonyl, phosphoryl, sulphonyl, or sulphinyl group is directly bound to the phenyl ring. Where Z represents an electron-withdrawing group, Z may represent any of the moieties described in this paragraph for W.

[0037] The linker may comprise an electron withdrawing group, selected from $-C(O)-$, $-C(O)NR'-$, $-C(O)O-$, $-SO_2NR'-$, $-P(O)R''NR'-$, $-SONR'-$, and $-PO_2NR'-$, preferably $-C(O)NR'-$, wherein R' and R'' may be each independently hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl, (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl, (C_1-C_8) alkoxy, (C_1-C_8) alkylthio, mono- or di- (C_1-C_8) alkylamino, (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl, or (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, preferably hydrogen.

[0038] L and/or the linker may comprise a substituted or unsubstituted alkylene having 1 to 100 carbon atoms, preferably 16 to 50 carbon atoms or 50 to 100 carbon atoms, and satisfy at least one, preferably at least two, of the following (i) to (iv):

- (i) the alkylene includes at least one unsaturated bond, preferably 3 or 4 double bonds and no triple bonds,
- (ii) the alkylene includes at least one heteroarylene,
- (iii) at least one carbon atom of the alkylene is replaced by one or more heteroatoms selected from nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), and sulfur (S), preferably at least one nitrogen and at least one oxygen (e.g., as in an oxime), and
- (iv) the alkylene is substituted with one or more alkyls having 1 to 20 carbon atoms, preferably 2 or 3 methyls.

[0039] For example, L and/or the linker may comprise at least one isoprenyl unit, preferably two isoprenyl units, each represented by Formula (III), which is preferably recognizable by an isoprenoid transferase, e.g., as part of a product or substrate of the isoprenoid transferase.

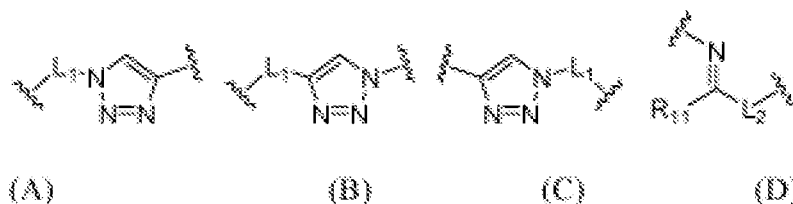


(III)

[0040] In preferred implementations, a cysteine of the antibody forms a thioether bond with a carbon atom of an isoprenyl unit, thereby covalently linking the antibody to the linker.

[0041] L and/or the linker may comprise a binding unit formed by a 1,3-dipolar cycloaddition reaction, hetero-Diels-

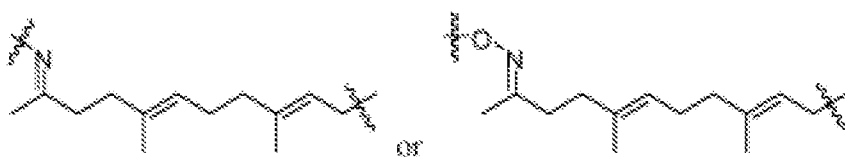
Alder reaction, nucleophilic substitution reaction, non-aldol type carbonyl reaction, addition to a carbon-carbon multiple bond, oxidation reaction, or click reaction. A binding unit may be formed by a reaction between an acetylene and azide, or a non-aldol type carbonyl reaction, such as a reaction between an aldehyde or ketone group and hydrazine or alkoxyamine; such binding units may be represented by Formula (A), (B), (C), or (D).



[0042] L_1 is a single bond or alkylene having 1 to 30 carbon atoms, preferably 12 carbon atoms; R_{11} is hydrogen or an alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, preferably methyl; and L_2 is an alkylene having 1 to 30 carbon atoms, e.g., 10 or 11, preferably 11 carbon atoms. In some implementations, L_1 and/or L_2 may comprise at least one isoprenyl unit, represented by Formula (III), preferably two isoprenyl units. L_2 may consist of at least one isoprenyl unit, represented by Formula (III), preferably two isoprenyl units. In preferred implementations, a carbon atom of an isoprenyl unit forms a thioether bond with the sulfur atom of a cysteine of the antibody, most preferably at a C-terminus of a heavy or light chain, thereby covalently linking the antibody and the linker.

[0043] An antibody-drug conjugate may comprise the binding unit represented by Formula (D) *supra*, wherein L_2 consists of at least one isoprenyl unit, preferably two isoprenyl units. The binding unit may be an O-substituted oxime, *i.e.*, the nitrogen of the binding unit may be covalently bound to a substituted oxygen. A carbon atom of an isoprenyl unit may form a thioether bond with the sulfur atom of a cysteine of the antibody, most preferably at a C-terminus of a heavy or light chain, thereby covalently linking the binding unit and the antibody.

[0044] L and/or the linker may comprise an isoprenyl group represented by



e.g., wherein a carbon atom of the isoprenyl group forms a thioether bond with a sulfur atom of a cysteine of the antibody, thereby covalently linking the isoprenyl group and the antibody. The nitrogen of the isoprenyl group may covalently link the isoprenyl group to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker.

[0045] In some implementations, L and/or the linker may comprise an isoprenyl group represented by



e.g., wherein a carbon atom of the isoprenyl group forms a thioether bond with a sulfur atom of a cysteine of the antibody, thereby covalently linking the isoprenyl group and the antibody. The nitrogen of the isoprenyl group may covalently link the isoprenyl group to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker.

[0046] Click chemistry reactions may be carried out under mild conditions, which can be performed in the presence of an antibody without denaturing the antibody. A click chemistry reaction shows high reaction specificity. Therefore, even though antibodies have various functional groups (for example, amines, carboxyls, carboxamides, and guanidiniums), a click chemistry reaction may be performed, for example, without affecting the amino acid side chains of the antibody. A click chemistry reaction between an azide group and an acetylene group, for example, may occur in the presence of an antibody without modifying the amino acid side chain functional groups of the antibody. Further, a click chemistry reaction may precisely target a specific functional group, such as functional groups rarely found in nature, regardless of the nature of the reactants. In some cases, the reactants are selected to improve overall reaction efficiency. For example, an azide-acetylene click chemistry reaction may produce triazole with a high yield (see, *e.g.*, Hia, RK et

al., Chem. Rev., 109:5620 (2009); Meldal, M & Tornøe, CW, Chem Rev., 108:2952 (2008); Kolb, HC et al., Angew. Chemie Int. Ed. Engl., 40:2004 (2001)).

[0047] Azide and acetylene functional groups do not exist in natural proteins. Thus, none of the amino acid side chains, N-terminal amines, or C-terminal carboxyls should be affected by a click chemistry reaction that utilizes these functional groups.

[0048] The L moiety of Formula I and/or the linker may further include a connection unit represented by $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_q-$ or $-(CH_2CH_2X)_w-$, wherein

V is a single bond, -O-, -S-, $-NR_{21}-$, $-C(O)NR_{22}-$, $-NR_{23}C(O)-$, $-NR_{24}SO_2-$, or $-SO_2NR_{25}-$, preferably -O-;

X is -O-, (C_1-C_8) alkylene, or $-NR_{21}-$, preferably -O-;

R_{21} to R_{25} are each independently hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_6-C_{20}) aryl, or (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl, preferably hydrogen;

r is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably 2 or 3;

p is an integer from 0 to 12, preferably 1 or 2;

q is an integer from 1 to 20; and

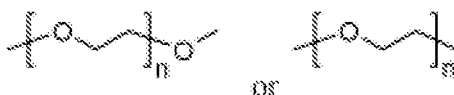
w is an integer from 1 to 20, preferably 1, 3, 6, or 12.

In some implementations, p is an integer of 11 or 12. In some implementations, q is an integer of 11 to 20, such as 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16. In some implementations, w is an integer of 11 to 20, such as 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16.

[0049] In certain preferred implementations, q is an integer from 4 to 20. In other preferred implementations, q is an integer from 2 to 12.

[0050] L and/or the linker preferably comprise the binding unit represented by Formula (A), (B), (C), or (D) and the connection unit represented by $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_q-$ or $-(CH_2CH_2X)_w-$.

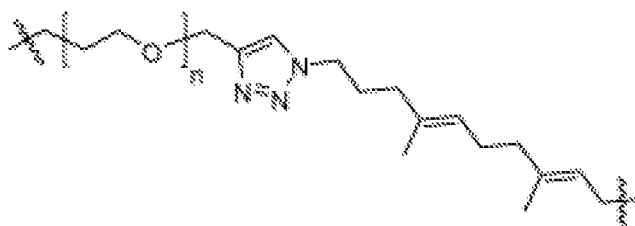
[0051] In preferred implementations, L and/or the linker comprise at least one polyethylene glycol unit represented by either

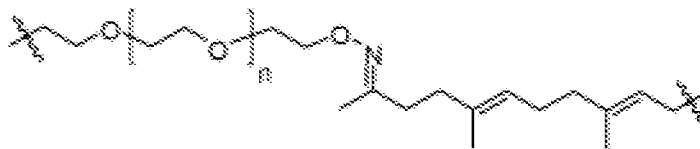


The polyethylene glycol unit may be $-OCH_2CH_2-$. The antibody-drug conjugate may comprise from 1 to 20 polyethylene glycol units, such as 1 to 12 polyethylene glycol units, 5 to 12 polyethylene glycol units, 6 to 12 polyethylene glycol units, 5 to 20 polyethylene glycol units, or 6 to 20 polyethylene glycol units. The antibody-drug conjugate may comprise from 1 to 20 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units, such as 1 to 12 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units, 5 to 12 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units, 6 to 12 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units, 5 to 20 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units, or 6 to 20 $-OCH_2CH_2-$ units. In implementations wherein L and/or the linker comprises an oxime, a polyethylene glycol unit preferentially covalently links the oxime to the active agent. In implementations wherein L and/or the linker comprises an oxime, a polyethylene glycol unit preferentially covalently links the oxime to W, e.g., wherein W is represented by represent $-C(O)NR'-$.

[0052] L and/or the linker preferably comprise a polyethylene glycol group represented by $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, wherein n is 1 to 20, such as 1 to 12, 5 to 12, 6 to 12, 5 to 20, or 6 to 20. In implementations wherein L and/or the linker comprises an oxime, a polyethylene glycol group preferentially covalently links the oxime to the active agent. In implementations wherein L and/or the linker comprises an oxime, a polyethylene glycol group preferentially covalently links the oxime to W, e.g., wherein W is represented by represent $-C(O)NR'-$. A carbon of a polyethylene glycol group may form a covalent bond with an atom of W (e.g., the nitrogen of $-C(O)NR'-$) and/or an oxygen of a polyethylene glycol group may be the oxygen of an oxime.

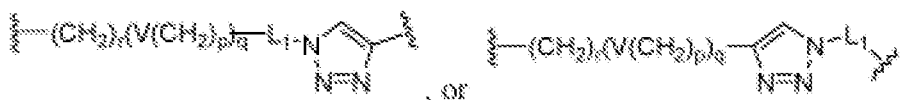
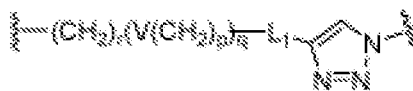
[0053] In some implementations, L is preferably represented by one of the following two structures, and thus, the linker may comprise one of the following two structures:





wherein n is an integer from 1 to 20. For example, n may be an integer from 2 to 20, 3 to 20, 4 to 20, 5 to 20, 6 to 20, 7 to 20, 8 to 20, 9 to 20, 10 to 20, 2 to 16, 3 to 16, 4 to 16, 5 to 16, 6 to 16, 7 to 16, 8 to 16, 9 to 16, or 10 to 16.

[0054] L and/or the linker may comprise



wherein

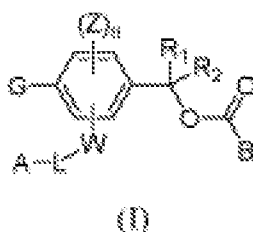
V represents a single bond, -O-, -S-, -NR₂₁-, -C(O)NR₂₂-, -NR₂₃C(O)-, -NR₂₄SO₂-, or -SO₂NR₂₅-, preferably -O-; R₂₁ to R₂₅ represents each independently hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl;
 r is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably 2 or 3;
 p is an integer from 0 to 10, preferably 1 or 2;
 q is an integer from 1 to 20, preferably 1 to 6; and
 L_1 is a single bond.

In some implementations, q is an integer from 11 to 20, such as 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16.

[0055] In some implementations, L and/or the linker comprises a hydrophilic amino acid, *e.g.*, to increase the water solubility of the antibody-drug conjugate, linker, and/or precursors of the antibody-drug conjugate. The hydrophilic amino acid may be located proximal to the active agent, proximal to the antibody, or interposed anywhere along the linker. Specifically, a hydrophilic amino acid may covalently link an oxime of L and/or the linker to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker. A peptide may covalently link an oxime of L and/or the linker to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker.

[0056] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate comprises a peptide, and the peptide comprises at least one hydrophilic amino acid. A peptide may comprise 2 to 20 amino acids. The majority of amino acids of the peptide may be independently selected from alanine, aspartate, asparagine, glutamate, glutamine, glycine, lysine, ornithine, proline, serine, and threonine. For example, each amino acid of the peptide may be independently selected from alanine, aspartate, asparagine, glutamate, glutamine, glycine, lysine, ornithine, proline, serine, and threonine.

[0057] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate has the structure of Formula (I) as described above, or a corresponding structure in which the cleavage group has a structure of any of the cleavage group formulas defined herein.



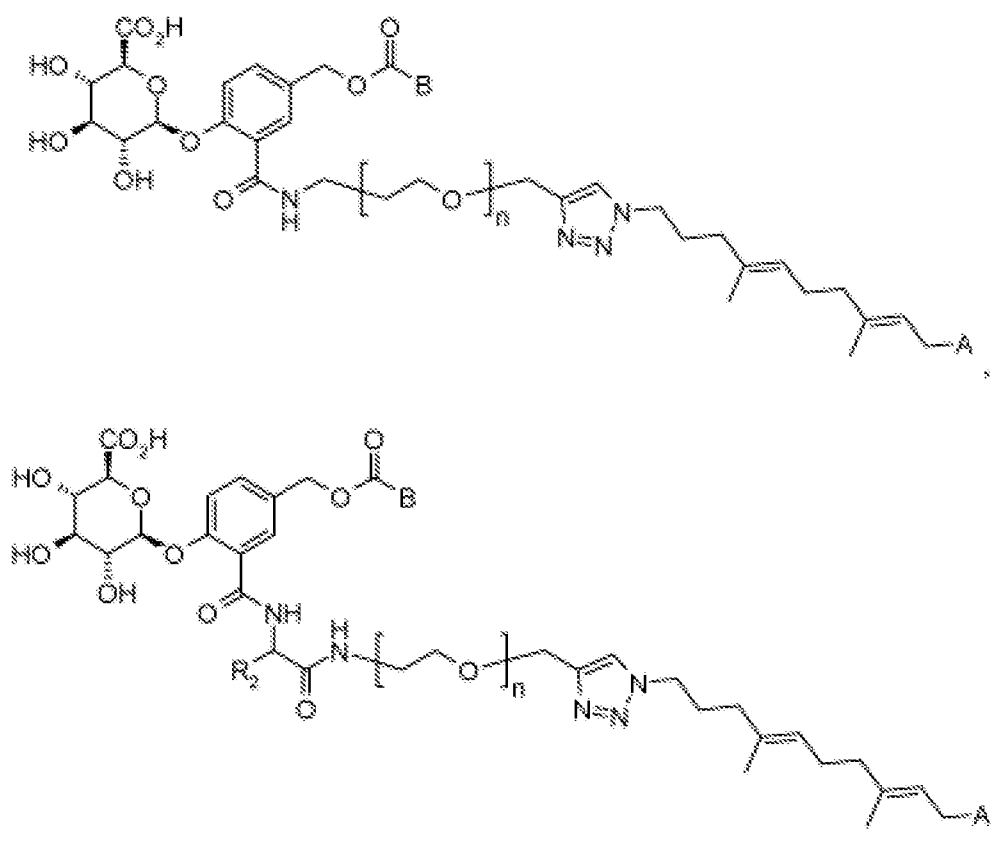
In certain such implementations, W may represent -C(O)NR'-, and the nitrogen of W may be a nitrogen atom of a hydrophilic amino acid. Similarly, W may represent -C(O)NR'-, and the nitrogen of W may be a nitrogen atom of the N-terminal amino acid in the peptide.

[0058] The hydrophilic amino acid may be a naturally-occurring amino acid or a non-naturally-occurring amino acid. The hydrophilic amino acid may be an α -amino acid or a β -amino acid. The hydrophilic amino acid may be arginine, aspartate, asparagine, glutamate, glutamine, histidine, lysine, ornithine, proline, serine, or threonine, and may be a D-amino acid or an L-amino acid. In certain preferred implementations, the hydrophilic amino acid is aspartate or glutamate, such as L-aspartate or L-glutamate. In other preferred implementations, the hydrophilic amino acid is lysine or ornithine, such as L-lysine or L-ornithine. In certain implementations, the hydrophilic amino acid is arginine, such as L-arginine. In certain implementations, the hydrophilic amino acid comprises a side chain having a moiety that bears a charge at neutral pH in aqueous solution (e.g., an amine, guanidine, or carboxyl moiety).

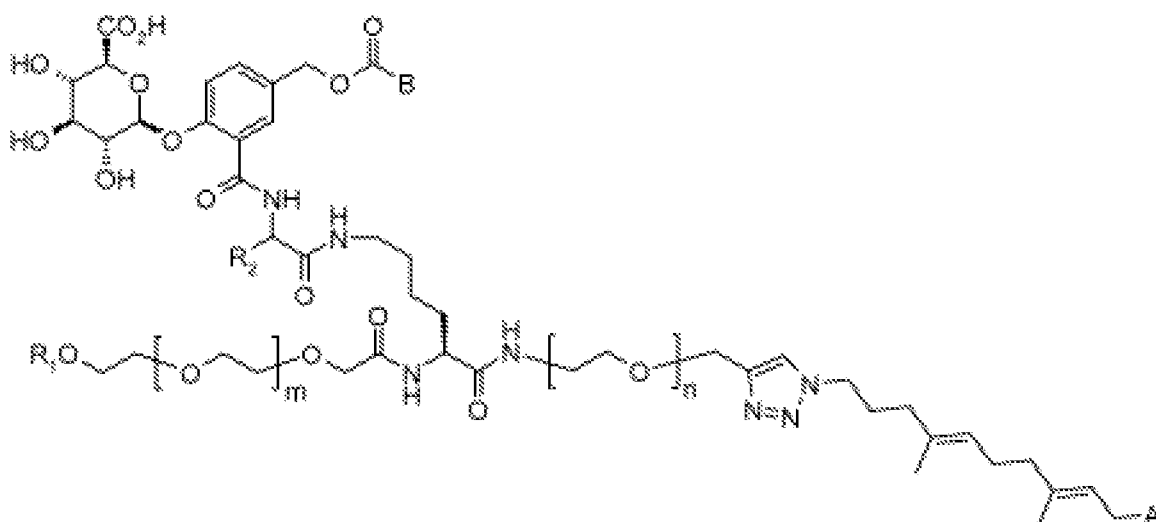
[0059] The peptide may comprise naturally-occurring amino acids and/or non-naturally-occurring amino acids. The peptide may comprise α -amino acids and/or β -amino acids. In some implementations, the peptide consists essentially of α -amino acids. In some implementations, the peptide consists essentially of naturally-occurring amino acids. The peptide may comprise, consist essentially of, or even consist of amino acids selected from alanine, aspartate, asparagine, glutamate, glutamine, glycine, lysine, ornithine, proline, serine, and threonine, any of which may be L-amino acids and/or D-amino acids. In some implementations, the peptide consists essentially of L-amino acids. In certain implementations, the peptide does not comprise a hydrophobic amino acid, such as an amino acid selected from isoleucine, methionine, leucine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, tyrosine, or valine; in other words, in such implementations, the peptide is free or essentially free of these amino acids. In preferred implementations, the peptide does not comprise any one of isoleucine, methionine, leucine, phenylalanine, tryptophan, tyrosine, and valine.

[0060] A hydrophilic amino acid may covalently link an oxime of L and/or the linker to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker. A peptide may covalently link an oxime of L and/or the linker to a polyethylene glycol unit of L and/or the linker.

[0061] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate comprises the structure:

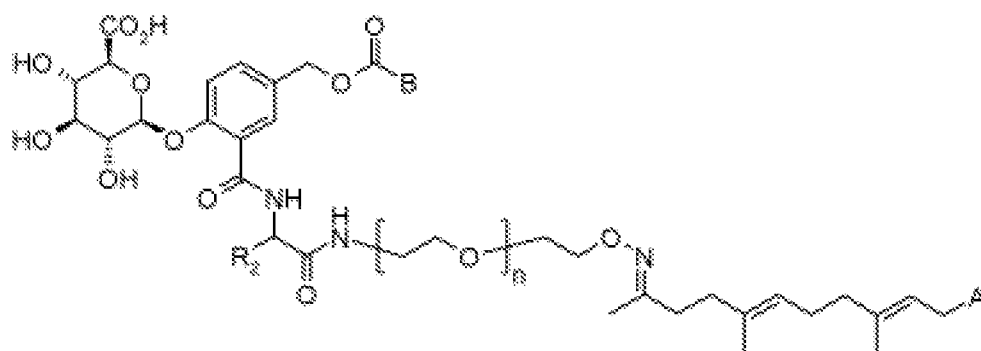
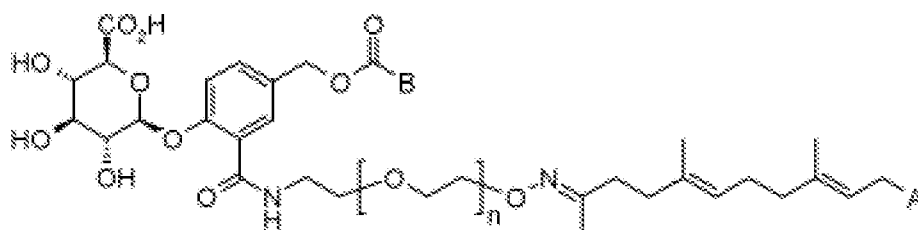


or

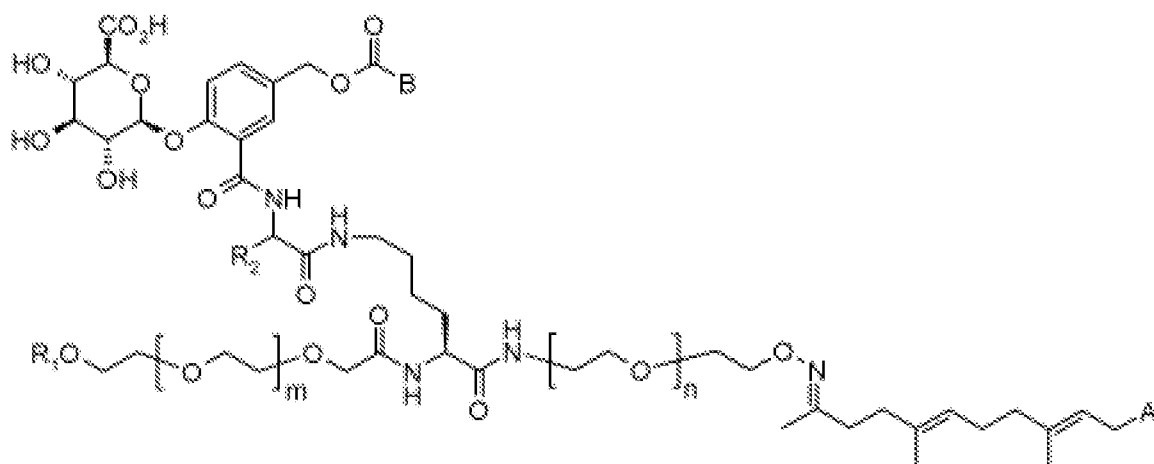


wherein A represents the antibody, B represents the active agent, m is an integer from 0 to 20 (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10), n is an integer from 1 to 20 (preferably from 2 to 20, e.g., 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16), R_1 is hydrogen or a methyl group, and R_2 is the side chain of an amino acid, preferably a hydrophilic amino acid, most preferably aspartate or glutamate.

[0062] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate comprises the structure:

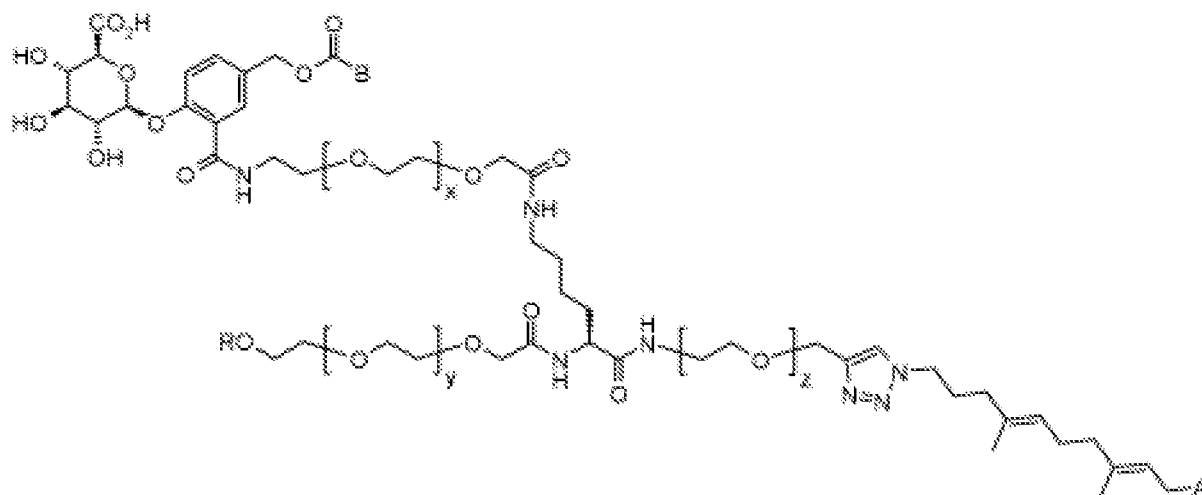


or

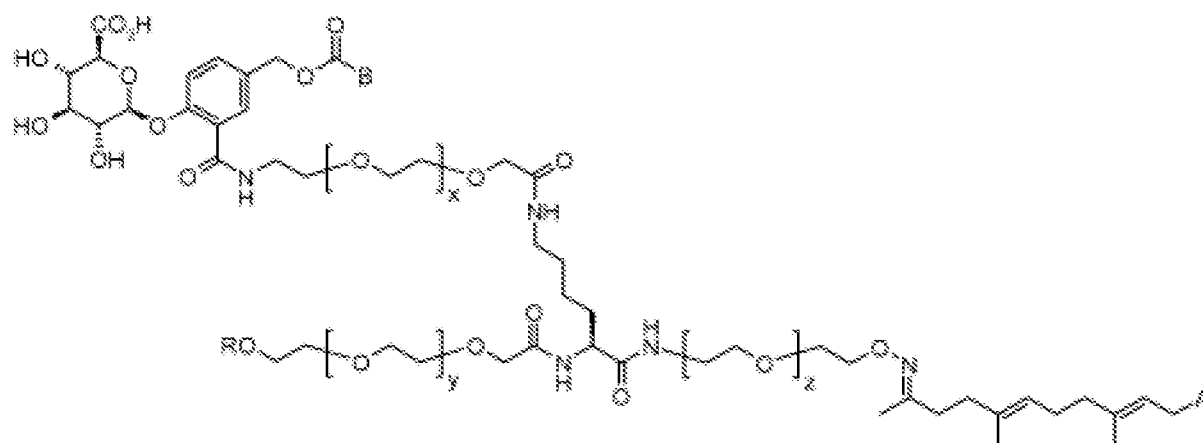


wherein A represents the antibody, B represents the active agent, m is an integer from 0 to 20 (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10), n is an integer from 1 to 20 (preferably from 2 to 20, e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16), R_1 is hydrogen or a methyl group, and R_2 is the side chain of an amino acid, preferably a hydrophilic amino acid, most preferably aspartate or glutamate. In some implementations, n is an integer from 0 to 20, preferably 0 or 2.

[0063] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate comprises the structure:

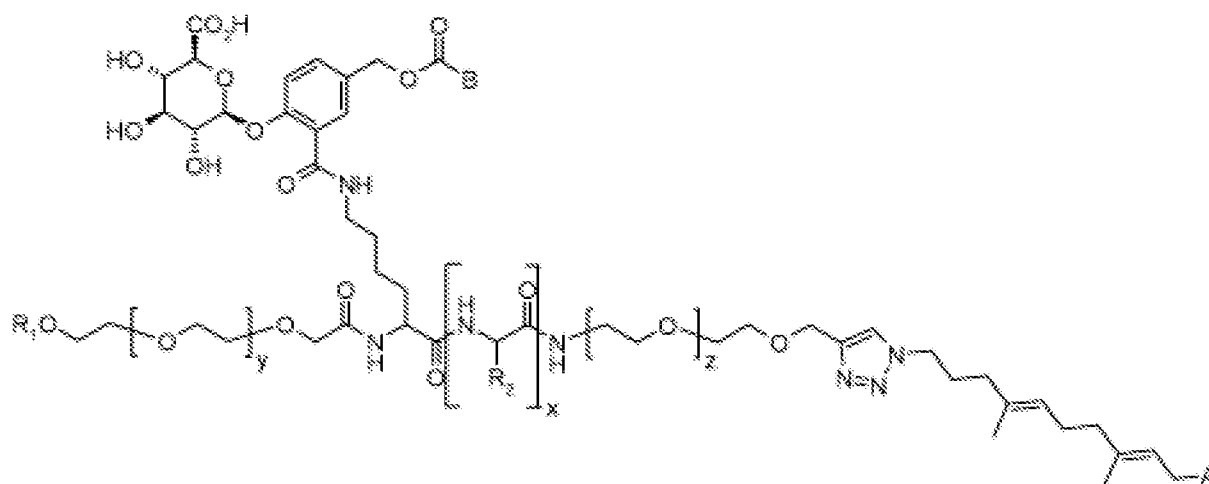


or

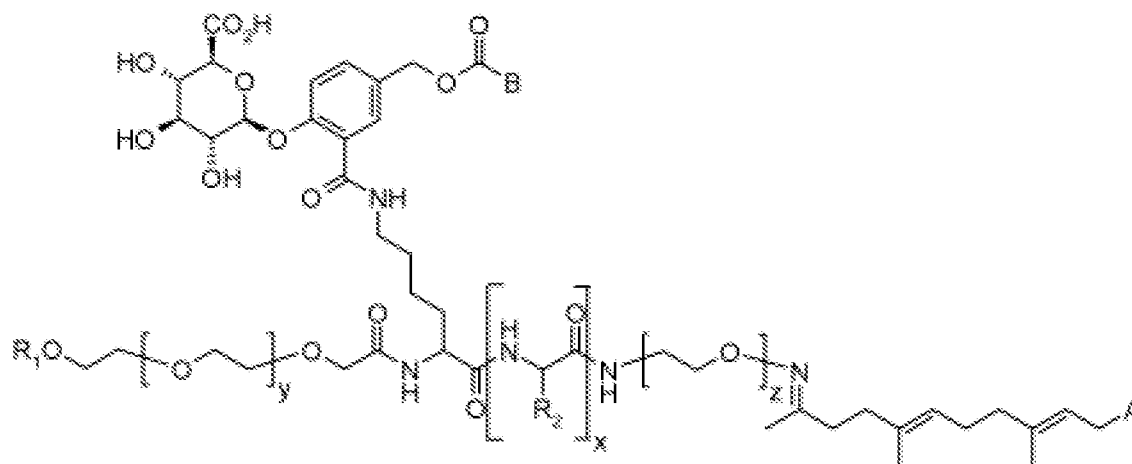


wherein A represents the antibody, B represents the active agent, x is an integer from 1 to 20 (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10), y is an integer from 1 to 20 (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10), z is an integer from 1 to 20 (preferably 2 to 20, e.g., 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16), and R is hydrogen or a methyl group. In some implementations, n is an integer from 0 to 20, preferably 0 or 2.

[0064] In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate comprises the structure:



or



wherein A represents the antibody, B represents the active agent, R_1 is hydrogen or a methyl group, x is an integer from 0 to 20 (e.g., 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, or 5), y is an integer from 0 to 20 (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10), z is an integer from 1 to 20 (preferably 2 to 20, e.g., 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16), and each R_2 is independently selected from an amino acid side chain, preferably a hydrophilic amino acid side chain. For example, in certain preferred implementations, x is 1 and R_2 is the side chain of aspartate or glutamate.

[0065] In preferred implementations, the antibody comprises an amino acid motif capable of being recognized by an isoprenoid transferase. For example, at least one C-terminus of the antibody may comprise an amino acid motif capable of being recognized by an isoprenoid transferase (e.g., as a substrate, for example, prior to forming the antibody-drug conjugate, or as a product of an isoprenoid transferase, for example, after forming the antibody-drug conjugate). The antibody may further comprise a spacer, such as an amino acid or a stretch of amino acids that links a peptide chain of the antibody to the amino acid motif. The spacer may consist of 1 to 20 consecutive amino acids, preferably 7-20 amino acids. In some implementations, glycine and proline are preferred amino acids for the spacer, and may be used in any combination, such as a series of at least about 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 glycines, or a series of about 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, or 10 glycines. In other implementations the amino acid motif are each independently selected from glycine, aspartic acid, arginine, and serine. The antibody may comprise an addition or deletion at a carboxy terminus, e.g., relative to a form of the antibody not included in an ADC.

[0066] Examples of isoprenoid transferases include farnesyl protein transferase (FTase) and geranylgeranyl trans-

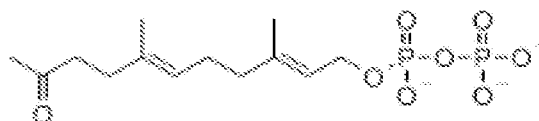
ferase (GGTase), which can catalyze the transfer of a farnesyl or geranyl-geranyl group to at least one C-terminal cysteine of a target protein. A GGTase may be classified as either GGTase I or GGTase II. FTase and GGTase I may recognize a CAAX motif, and GGTase II may recognize a XXCC, XCXC, or CXX motif, wherein C represents cysteine, A represents an aliphatic amino acid (e.g., isoleucine, valine, methionine, leucine), and each X independently represents, for example, glutamine, glutamate, serine, cysteine, methionine, alanine, or leucine (see Nature Rev. Cancer, 5(5):405-12 (2005); Nature Chemical Biology 17:498-506 (2010); Lane KT, Bees LS, J. Lipid Research, 47:681-699 (2006); Kasey PJ, Seabra MC, J. Biological Chemistry, 271(10):5289-5292 (1996)).

[0067] The antibody-drug conjugates according to the present disclosure may comprise an amino acid motif, such as CYYX, XXCC, XCXC, or CXX, preferably CYYX (wherein, C represents cysteine, Y represents an aliphatic amino acid, such as leucine, isoleucine, valine, and/or methionine, and X represents an amino acid that determines a substrate specificity of the isoprenoid transferase, such as glutamine, glutamate, serine, cysteine, methionine, alanine, and/or leucine).

[0068] Isoprenoid transferases from various sources may be used. For example, the isoprenoid transferase may be obtained from a human, animal, plant, bacteria, virus, or other source. In some implementations, a naturally occurring isoprenoid transferase is used. In some implementations, a naturally-modified or artificially-modified isoprenoid transferase may be used. For example, the isoprenoid transferase may comprise one or more amino acid substitutions, additions, and/or deletions, and/or the isoprenoid transferase may be modified by the addition of at least one of Histidine-tag, GST, GFP, MBP, CBP, Isopeptag, BCCP, Myc-tag, Calmodulin-tag, FLAG-tag, HA-tag, Maltose binding protein-tag, Nus-tag, Glutathione-S-transferase-tag, Green fluorescent protein-tag, Thioredoxin-tag, S-tag, Softag 1, Softag 3, Strep-tag, SBP-tag, Ty-tag, and the like.

[0069] Isoprenoid transferases recognize an isosubstrate and/or a substrate. The term isosubstrate refers to a substrate analog comprising a chemical modification. Isoprenoid transferases can alkylate a specific amino acid motif (for example, a CAAX motif) at the C-terminus of an antibody (see, e.g., Duckworth, BP et al., ChemBioChem, 8:98 (2007); Uyen TT et al., ChemBioChem, 8:408 (2007); Labadie, GR et al., J. Org. Chem., 72(24):9291 (2007); Wollack, JW et al., ChemBioChem, 10:2934 (2009)). A functionalized antibody may be produced using an isoprenoid transferase and an isosubstrate, which may alkylate a C-terminal cysteine.

[0070] The isosubstrate may be, for example, the compound of Formula IV.



(IV)

[0071] The cysteine of a C-terminal CAAX motif may be bound to an isosubstrate using an isoprenoid transferase. In some implementations, part of the motif, e.g., AAX, may subsequently be removed by a protease, e.g., leaving only the cysteine to which the isoprenoid is bound. The cysteine may optionally be methylated at the carboxyl terminus, e.g., by an enzyme (see, e.g., Bell, IM, J. Med. Chem., 47(8): 1869 (2004)).

[0072] The antibody-drug conjugates of the disclosure may be prepared using any method known in the art, including molecular biology and cell biology methods. For example, transient or stable transfection methods may be used. Genetic sequences encoding a specific amino acid motif capable of being recognized by an isoprenoid transferase may be inserted into a known plasmid vector using standard PCR and/or ligation technologies so as to express an antibody having the specific amino acid motif at a C-terminus thereof. An antibody having at least one amino acid motif capable of being recognized by the isoprenoid transferase may thus be expressed in a suitable host, e.g., a CHO cell or in *E. coli*.

[0073] The term "antibody" refers to an immunoglobulin molecule that recognizes and specifically binds to a different molecule through at least one antigen recognition site within a variable region of the immunoglobulin molecule. As used herein, the term "antibody" includes intact polyclonal antibodies, intact monoclonal antibodies, antibody fragments (for example, Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, Fd, and Fv fragments), single chain Fv (scFv) mutants, multispecific antibodies such as bispecific antibodies generated from two or more intact antibodies, chimeric antibodies, humanized antibodies, human antibodies, fusion proteins including an antigen determination portion of an antibody, and any other modified immunoglobulin molecule including an antigen recognition site. The antibody may be any of the five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, or subclasses (isotypes) thereof (for example, IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA1, and IgA2), based on the identity of its heavy chain constant domains, referred to as alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma, and mu, respectively. The different classes of immunoglobulins have different and well-known subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations. The term "antibody" does not refer to molecules that do not share homology with an immunoglobulin sequence. For example, the term "antibody" as used herein does not include "repebodies".

[0074] The term "antibody fragment" refers to a portion of an intact antibody and refers to antigenic determining variable regions of an intact antibody. Examples of antibody fragments include Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, Fd, and Fv fragments, linear antibodies, single chain antibodies, and multispecific antibodies formed from antibody fragments.

[0075] The term "monoclonal antibody" refers to a homogeneous antibody population involved in the highly specific recognition and binding of a single antigenic determinant or epitope. This contrasts with polyclonal antibodies that typically include different antibodies directed against a variety of different antigenic determinants. The term "monoclonal antibody" includes antibody fragments (such as Fab, Fab', F(ab')₂, Fd, Fv), single chain (scFv) mutants, fusion proteins including an antibody portion, and any other modified immunoglobulin molecule including an antigen recognition site as well as both intact and full-length monoclonal antibodies, but are not limited thereto. Additionally, "monoclonal antibody" refers to such antibodies made in any number of methods, including but not limited to hybridoma, phage selection, recombinant expression, and transgenic animals.

[0076] The term "humanized antibody" refers to forms of non-human (e.g., murine) antibodies that are specific immunoglobulin chains, chimeric immunoglobulins, or fragments thereof that contain minimal non-human (e.g., murine) sequences. In general, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins in which residues from complementary determining region (CDR) are replaced by residues from CDR of a non-human species (e.g., mouse, rat, rabbit, and hamster) having the desired specificity, affinity, and capability (see, e.g., Jones et al., Nature, 321:522-525 (1986); Riechmann et al., Nature, 332:323-327 (1988); Verhoeyen et al., Science, 239:1534-1536 (1988)). In some instances, Fv framework region (FR) residues of a human immunoglobulin are replaced with the corresponding residues in an antibody from a non-human species having a desired specificity, affinity, and/or binding capability. The humanized antibody may be further modified by the substitution of additional residues either in the Fv framework region and/or within the replaced non-human residues to refine and optimize antibody specificity, affinity, and/or binding capability. In general, a humanized antibody includes substantially all of at least one, and typically two or three, variable domains containing all or substantially all of the CDRs that correspond to the non-human immunoglobulin whereas all or substantially all of the framework regions (FRs) have those of a human immunoglobulin consensus sequence. The humanized antibody may also include at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region or domain (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. Examples of methods used to generate humanized antibodies are described in U.S. Patent No. 5,225,539.

[0077] The term "human antibody" as used herein refers to an antibody encoded by a human nucleotide sequence or an antibody having an amino acid sequence corresponding to an antibody produced by a human using any technique known in the art. This definition of the human antibody includes intact full-length antibodies and/or fragments thereof.

[0078] The term "chimeric antibody" refers to an antibody wherein an amino acid sequence of an immunoglobulin molecule is derived from two or more species, one of which is preferably human. In general, variable regions of both light and heavy chains correspond to variable regions of antibodies derived from one species of mammals (e.g., mouse, rat, rabbit, etc) with the desired specificity, affinity, and capability, while constant regions are homologous to the sequences in antibodies derived from another species (usually human), e.g., to avoid eliciting an immune response in that species.

[0079] The terms "epitope" and "antigenic determinant" are used interchangeably herein and refer to that portion of an antigen capable of being recognized and specifically bound by a particular antibody. When the antigen is or comprises a polypeptide or protein, epitopes may be formed from contiguous and/or non-contiguous amino acids, e.g., juxtaposed by secondary, tertiary, and/or quaternary folding of a protein. Epitopes formed from contiguous amino acids are typically retained upon protein denaturing, whereas epitopes formed by tertiary folding may be lost upon protein denaturing. An epitope typically includes 3 or more, 5 or more, or 8 to 10 or more amino acids in a unique spatial conformation.

[0080] An antibody "specifically binds" to an epitope or antigenic molecule, which means that the antibody interacts or associates more frequently, more rapidly, with greater duration, with greater affinity, or with some combination of the foregoing to an epitope or antigenic molecule than alternative substances, including unrelated proteins. In specific implementations, "specifically binds" means, for instance, that an antibody binds to a protein with a K_D of about 0.1 mM or less, but more usually, less than about 1 μM. In specific implementations, "specifically binds" means that an antibody binds to a protein at times with a K_D of about 0.1 μM or less, and at other times, with a K_D of about 0.01 μM or less. Because of the sequence identity between homologous proteins in different species, specific binding may include an antibody recognizing a particular protein in more than one species. It is understood that an antibody or binding residue that specifically binds to a first target may or may not specifically bind to a second target. As described above, "specific binding" does not necessarily require (although it may include) exclusive binding, that is, binding to a single target. Generally, but not necessarily, the term binding used herein means specific binding.

[0081] The antibodies, including fragments/derivatives thereof and monoclonal antibodies, may be obtained using methods known in the art (see, e.g., McCafferty et al., Nature 348:552-554 (1990); Clackson et al., Nature 352:624-628; Marks et al., J. Mol. Biol. 222:581-597 (1991); Marks et al., Bio/Technology 10:779-783 (1992); Waterhouse et al., Nucleic Acids Res. 21:2265-2266 (1993); Morimoto et al., J Biochemical & Biophysical Methods 24:107-117 (1992); Brennan et al., Science 229:81(1985); Carter et al., Bio/Technology 10:163-167 (1992); Kohler et al., Nature 256:495 (1975); Kilpatrick et al., Hybridoma 16(4):381-389 (1997); Wring et al., J. Pharm. Biomed. Anal. 19(5):695-707 (1999); Bynum et al., Hybridoma 18(5):407-411 (1999), Jakobovits et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 90:2551 (1993); Jakobovits

et al., *Nature*, 362:255-258 (1993); Bruggemann et al., *Year Immuno.* 7:33 (1993); Barbas et al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:3809-3813 (1994); Schier et al., *Gene* 169:147-155 (1995); Yelton et al., *J. Immunol.* 155:1994-2004 (1995); Jackson et al., *J. Immunol.* 154(7):3310-9 (1995); Hawkins et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 226:889-896 (1992), U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,816,567, 5,514,548, 5,545,806, 5,569,825, 5,591,669, 5,545,807; PCT Patent Application Publication No. WO 97/17852).

[0082] The antibody may be muromonab-CD3 abciximab, rituximab, daclizumab, palivizumab, infliximab, trastuzumab, etanercept, basiliximab, gemtuzumab, alemtuzumab, ibritumomab, adalimumab, alefacept, omalizumab, efalizumab, tositumomab, bevacizumab, natalizumab, ranibizumab, eculizumab, rilonacept, certolizumab, romiplostim, AMG-531, golimumab, ustekinumab, ABT-874, belatacept, belimumab, atacicept, an anti-CD20 antibody, canakinumab, tocilizumab, atlizumab, mepolizumab, pertuzumab, HuMax CD20, tremelimumab, ticilimumab, ipilimumab, IDEC-114, inotuzumab, aflibercept, HuMax-CD4, teplizumab, orelizumab, catumaxomab, the anti-EpCAM antibody IGN101, adecatumomab, oregovomab, dinutuximab, girentuximab, denosumab, bapineuzumab, motavizumab, efumgumab, raxibacumab, an anti-CD20 antibody, LY2469298, or veltuzumab.

[0083] In certain preferred implementations, the antibody does not specifically bind to CD 19 or EGFR (epidermal growth factor receptor). In other implementations, the antibody may be an anti-CD19 or EGFR antibody.

[0084] When the antibody comprises at least one light chain and at least one heavy chain, at least one light chain of the antibody, or at least one heavy chain of the antibody, or both may comprise an amino acid region having an amino acid motif capable of being recognized by an isoprenoid transferase. As an antibody may comprise four polypeptide chains (e.g., two heavy chains and two light chains), an antibody may comprise four amino acid motifs, each of which can be used to conjugate an active agent to the antibody via a linker. Thus, an antibody-drug conjugate may comprise 4 linkers, each conjugated to an active agent, e.g., each conjugated to the C-terminus of a different chain of the antibody. Accordingly, an antibody-drug conjugate may comprise at least one linker and at least one active agent. An antibody-drug conjugate may comprise at least two linkers, and an antibody-drug conjugate may comprise at least two active agents. An antibody-drug conjugate may comprise 1, 2, 3, or 4 linkers. An antibody-drug conjugate may comprise 1, 2, 3, or 4 active agents. In an antibody-drug conjugate that includes 2 or more active agents, the active agents may all be the same, may all be different, or may be present in any mixture or ratio.

[0085] The active agent may be a drug, toxin, affinity ligand, detection probe, or combination of any of the foregoing.

[0086] The active agent may be selected from erlotinib; bortezomib; fulvestrant; sutent; letrozole; imatinib mesylate; PTK787/ZK 222584; oxaliplatin; 5-fluorouracil; leucovorin; rapamycin (Sirolimus); lapatinib; lonaferin; sorafenib; gefitinib; AG1478; AG1571; alkylating agents (for example, thiotepa or cyclophosphamide); alkyl sulfonate (for example, busulfan, improsulfan, or piposulfan); aziridine (for example, benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa, or uredopa); ethyleneimine, methylmelamine, altretamine, triethylenemelamine, triethylenephosphoramidate, triethylenethiophosphoramidate, trimethylolmelamine; acetogenins (for example, bullatacin or bullatacinone); camptothecin; a derivative or metabolite of camptothecin (e.g., SN-38); topotecan; bryostatins; callistatin; CC-1065 (including its adozelesin, carzelesin, or bizelesin synthetic analogs); cryptophycins (for example, cryptophycin 1 or cryptophycin 8); dolastatin; duocarmycin (including synthetic analogs, e.g., KW-2189 and CB1-TM1); eleutherobin; pancratistatin; sarcodictyin; spongistatin; nitrogen mustard (for example, chlorambucil, chlornaphazine, chlorophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, or uracil mustard); nitrosourea (for example, carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, or ranimustine); antibiotics (for example, enediyne antibiotics such as calicheamycin selected from calicheamycin gamma 11 and calicheamycin omega 11, or dynemicin including dynemicin A); bisphosphonate (for example, clodronate; esperamicin, neocarzinostatin chromophore, or related chromoprotein enediyne antibiotic chromophores, aclacinomysins, actinomycin, anthramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, carabacin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin (for example, morpholino-doxorubicin, cyanomorpholino-doxorubicin, 2-pyrrolino-doxorubicin, liposomal doxorubicin, or deoxydoxorubicin), epirubicin, esorubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins (for example, mitomycin C, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptomigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, or zorubicin); anti-metabolites (for example, 5-fluorouracil); folic acid analogs (for example, denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, or trimetrexate); purine analogs (for example, fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, or thiguanine); pyrimidine analogs (for example, ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, or floxuridine); androgens (for example, calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitostanol, mepitostane), or testolactone); anti-adrenals (for example, aminoglutethimide, mitotane, or trilostane); folic acid replenisher (for example, folinic acid); aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; eniluracil; amsacrine; bestabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfomithine; elliptinium acetate; epothilone; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidainine; maytansinoids (for example, maytansine or ansamitocins); trichothecenes (particularly T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A, or anguidine); mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidanmol; nitraerine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; losoxantrone; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; polysaccharide K complex; razoxane; rhizoxin; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2,2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; trichothecenes

(particularly, T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A, and anguidine); urethane; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; arabinoside; cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids (for example, paclitaxel), ABRAXANE™ cremophor-free, albumin-engineered nanoparticle formulation of paclitaxel, doxorubicin; chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; platinum analog (for example, cisplatin or carboplatin); vinblastine; platinum; etoposide; ifosfamide; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; novantrone; teniposide; edatrexate; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT-11; topoisomerase inhibitor (RFS 2000); difluoromethylornithine; retinoid (for example, retinoic acid); capecitabine, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, acids, or derivatives thereof, but is not necessarily limited thereto.

[0087] The active agent may be selected from (i) anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens and selective estrogen receptor modulators, including, for example, tamoxifen, raloxifene, droloxifene, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone, and toremifene; (ii) aromatase inhibitors that inhibit aromatase enzyme, which regulates estrogen production in the adrenal glands, for example, 4(5)-imidazoles, aminoglutethimide, megestrol acetate, exemestane, letrozole, and anastrozole; (iii) anti-androgens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide, and goserelin; as well as troxacitabine (a 1,3-dioxolane nucleoside cytosine analog); (iv) aromatase inhibitors; (v) protein kinase inhibitors; (vi) lipid kinase inhibitors; (vii) antisense oligonucleotides, particularly those that inhibit expression of genes in signaling pathways implicated in adherent cells, for example, PKC- α , Raf, H-Ras; (viii) ribozyme, for example, VEGF inhibitor such as ribozyme and HER2 expression inhibitors; (ix) vaccines such as a gene therapy vaccine; ALLOVECTIN® vaccine, LEUVECTIN vaccine, VAXID vaccine; PROLEUKIN® rIL-2; LURTOTECAN® topoisomerase 1 inhibitor; ABARELIX® rmRH; (x) an anti-angiogenic agent such as Bevacizumab; and (xi) pharmaceutically acceptable salts, solvates, acids, or derivatives thereof.

[0088] In addition, cytokines may be used as the active agent. Cytokines are small cell-signaling protein molecules that are secreted by numerous cells and are a category of signaling molecules used extensively in intercellular communication. The cytokines include monokines, lymphokines, traditional polypeptide hormones, and the like. Examples of the cytokines include growth hormone (for example, human growth hormone, N-methionyl human growth hormone, or bovine growth hormone); parathyroid hormone; thyroxine; insulin; proinsulin; relaxin; prorelaxin; glycoprotein hormone (for example, follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), or luteinizing hormone (LH)); hepatic growth factor; fibroblast growth factor; prolactin; placental lactogen; tumor necrosis factor- α , tumor necrosis factor- β ; mullerian-inhibiting substance; mouse gonadotropin-associated peptide; inhibin; activin; vascular endothelial growth factor; integrin, thrombopoietin (TPO); nerve growth factor (for example, NGF- β); platelet-growth factor; transforming growth factor (TGF) (for example, TGF- α or TGF- β); insulin-like growth factor-I, insulin-like growth factor-II; erythropoietin (EPO); osteoinductive factor; interferon (for example, interferon- α , interferon- β , or interferon- γ); colony stimulating factor (CSF) (for example, macrophage-CSF (M-CSF), granulocyte-macrophage-CSF (GM-CSF), or granulocyte-CSF (G-CSF)); interleukin (IL) (for example, IL-1, IL-1 α , IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, or IL-12); tumor necrosis factor (TNF) (for example, TNF- α or TNF- β); and polypeptide factor (for example, LIF or kit ligand), but are not limited thereto. Further, the term "cytokine" also includes cytokines from natural sources or recombinant cell cultures and biologically active equivalents of the native sequence cytokines.

[0089] The term "toxin" refers substances that are poisonous to living cells or organisms. Toxins may be small molecules, peptides or proteins capable of causing cell dysfunction or cell death after contact with or absorption by body tissue, e.g., through an interaction with one or more biological macromolecules such as enzymes or cell receptors. Toxins include plant toxins and animal toxins. Examples of animal toxins include diphtheria toxin, botulinum toxin, tetanus toxin, dysentery toxin, cholera toxin, tetrodotoxin, brevetoxin, and ciguatera toxin, but are not limited thereto. Examples of plant toxins include ricin and AM-toxin, but are not limited thereto.

[0090] Examples of small molecule toxins include auristatin, tubulysin, geldanamycin (Kerr et al., 1997, Bioconjugate Chem. 8(6):781-784), maytansinoid (EP 1391213, ACR 2008, 41, 98-107), calicheamicin (U.S. Patent Publication No. 2009/0105461, Cancer Res. 1993, 53, 3336-3342), daunomycin, doxorubicin, methotrexate, vindesine, SG2285 (Cancer Res. 2010, 70(17), 6849-6858), dolastatin, dolastatin analogs, auristatin (U.S. Patent No. 5,635,483), cryptophycin, camptothecin, a derivative or metabolite of camptothecin, (e.g., SN-38), rhizoxin derivative, CC-1065 analog or derivative, duocarmycin, enediyne antibiotic, esperamicin, epothilone, pyrrolobenzodiazepine (PBD) derivatives, amanitin, derivatives of amanitin, α -amanitin, aplidine, azonafide, and toxoid, but are not limited thereto. Toxins may exhibit cytotoxicity and cell growth-inhibiting activity by tubulin binding, DNA binding, topoisomerase suppression, and the like.

[0091] "Detectable moiety" or a "label" refers to a composition detectable by spectroscopic, photochemical, biochemical, immunochemical, radioactive, or chemical means. For example, useful labels include ^{32}P , ^{35}S , fluorescent dyes, electron-dense reagents, enzymes (for example, enzymes commonly used in an ELISA), biotin-streptavidin, dioxigenin, haptens, and proteins for which antisera or monoclonal antibodies are available, or nucleic acid molecules with a sequence complementary to a target. The detectable moiety often generates a measurable signal, such as a radioactive, chromogenic, or fluorescent signal, that may be used to quantify the amount of bound detectable moiety in a sample. Quantitation of the signal may be achieved, for example, by scintillation counting, densitometry, flow cytometry, ELISA, or direct analysis by mass spectrometry of intact or subsequently digested peptides (one or more peptide may be

assessed).

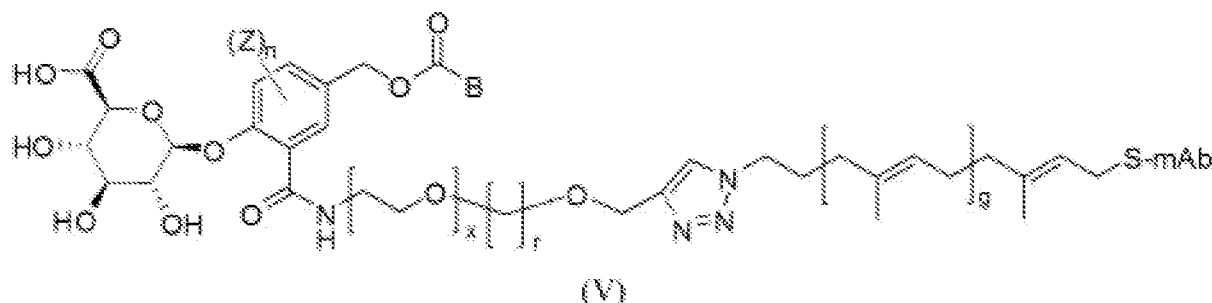
[0092] The term "probe" as used herein refers to a material that may (i) provide a detectable signal, (ii) interact a first probe or a second probe to modify a detectable signal provided by the first or second probe, such as fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET), (iii) stabilize an interaction with an antigen or a ligand or increase binding affinity; (iv) affect electrophoresis mobility or cell-intruding activity by a physical parameter such as charge, hydrophobicity, etc., or (v) control ligand affinity, antigen-antibody binding, or ionic complex formation.

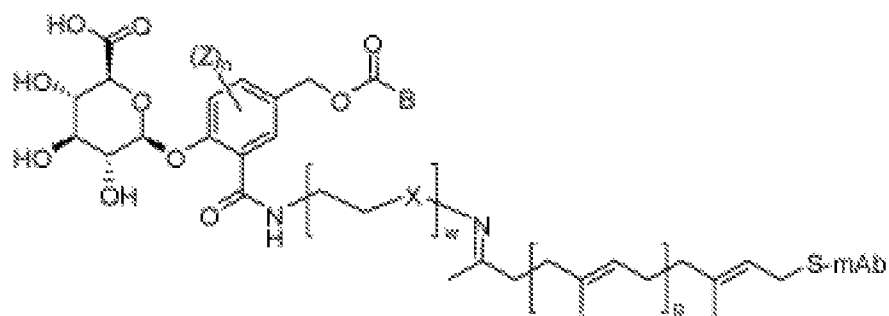
[0093] The active agent may be an immunomodulatory compound, an anticancer agent, an antiviral agent, an antibacterial agent, an antifungal agent, an antiparasitic agent, or a combination thereof.

[0094] An immunomodulatory compound may be selected from aminocaproic acid, azathioprine, bromocriptine, chlorambucil, chloroquine, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporine, cyclosporine A, danazol, dehydroepiandrosterone, dexamethasone, etanercept, hydrocortisone, hydroxychloroquine, infliximab, meloxicam, methotrexate, mycophenylate mofetil, prednisone, sirolimus, and tacrolimus. An anticancer agent may be selected from 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium ion, 5-ethynyl-1-beta-D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR), 5-fluorouracil, 9-aminocamptothecin, actinomycin D, asparaginase, bicalutamide, bis-chloroethylnitrosourea (BCNU), bleomycin, bleomycin A2, bleomycin B2, busulfan, camptothecin, a derivative or metabolite of camptothecin, e.g., SN-38, carboplatin, carmustine, CB1093, chlorambucil, cisplatin, crisnatol, cyclophosphamide, cytarabine, cytosine arabinoside, cytoxan, dacarbazine, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, decarbazine, deferoxamine, demethoxy-hypocrellin A, docetaxel, doxifluridine, doxorubicin, EB1089, epirubicin, etoposide, floxuridine, fludarabine, flutamide, gemcitabine, goserelin, hydroxyurea, idarubicin, ifosfamide, interferon- α , interferon- γ , irinotecan, KH1060, leuprolide acetate, lomustine, lovastatin, megestrol, melphalan, mercaptopurine, methotrexate, mitomycin, mitomycin C, mitoxantrone, mycophenolic acid, nitrogen mustard, nitrosourea, paclitaxel, peplo-mycin, photosensitizer Pe4, phthalocyanine, pirarubicin, plicamycin, procarbazine, raloxifene, raltitrexed, revlimid, rib-avirin, staurosporine, tamoxifen, teniposide, thalomid, thapsigargin, thioguanine, tiazofurin, topotecan, treosulfan, trime-trexate, tumor necrosis factor, velcade, verapamil, verteporfin, vinblastine, vincristine, vinorelbine, and zorubicin. An antiviral agent may be selected from penciclovir, valacyclovir, ganciclovir, foscarnet, ribavirin, idoxuridine, vidarabine, trifluridine, acyclovir, famciclovir, amantadine, rimantadine, cidofovir, antisense oligonucleotide, immunoglobulin, and interferon. An antibacterial agent may be selected from chloramphenicol, vancomycin, metronidazole, trimethoprin, sulfamethazole, quinupristin, dalfopristin, rifampin, spectinomycin, and nitrofurantoin. The antifungal agent may be selected from amphotericin B, candididin, filipin, hamycin, natamycin, nystatin, rimocidin, bifonazole, butoconazole, clot-rimazole, econazole, fenticonazole, isoconazole, ketoconazole, luliconazole, miconazole, omoconazole, oxiconazole, sertaconazole, sulconazole, tioconazole, albaconazole, fluconazole, isavuconazole, itraconazole, posaconazole, ravu-conazole, terconazole, voriconazole, abafungin, amorolfine, butenafine, naftifine, terbinafine, anidulafungin, caspofungin, micafungin, benzoic acid, ciclopirox, flucytosine, griseofulvin, haloprogin, tolnaftate, undecylenic acid, crystal violet, balsam of peru, ciclopirox olamine, piroctone olamine, zinc pyrithione, and selenium sulfide. An antiparasitic agent may be selected from mebendazole, pyrantel pamoate, thiabendazole, diethylcarbamazine, ivermectin, niclosamide, prazi-quantel, albendazole, rifampin, amphotericin B, melarsoprol, eflornithine, metronidazole, tinidazole, and miltefosine.

[0095] The antibody may comprise an amino acid motif selected from Ab-HC-(G)_zCVIM, Ab-HC-(G)_zCVLL, Ab-LC-(G)_zCVIM, and Ab-LC-(G)_zCVLL, Ab-HC-(G)_zCVIM/ LC-(G)_zCVIM, Ab-HC-(G)_zCVLL/LC-(G)_zCVIM, Ab-HC-(G)_zCVIM/LC-(G)_zCVLL, and Ab-HC-(G)_zCVLL/LC-(G)_zCVLL, wherein Ab represents an antibody, -HC- represents a heavy chain, -LC- represents a light chain, G represents a glycine, C represents cysteine, V represents valine, I represents isoleucine, M represents methionine, L represents leucine, and z is an integer from 0 to 20, preferably from 1 to 10.

[0096] An antibody-drug conjugate may have the structure of Formula (V) or (VI).





(VI)

Z is hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano, or nitro, preferably hydrogen;

X is -O-, (C₁-C₈)alkylene, or -NR₂₁-, preferably -O-;

R₂₁ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₆-C₂₀)aryl, or (C₁-C₆)alkyl(C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl;

n is an integer from 1 to 3, preferably 3, and when n is an integer from 2 or more, each of the Z(s) are the same as or different from each other, preferably the same;

r is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably 3;

w is an integer from 1 to 20, preferably from 2-10, most preferably 3;

x is an integer from 0 to 10, preferably 0;

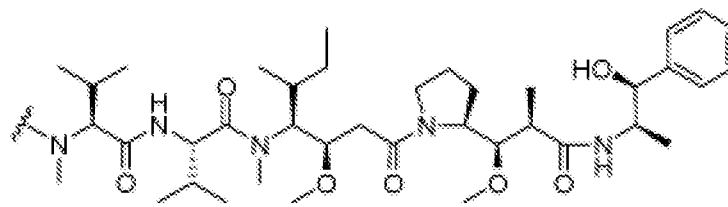
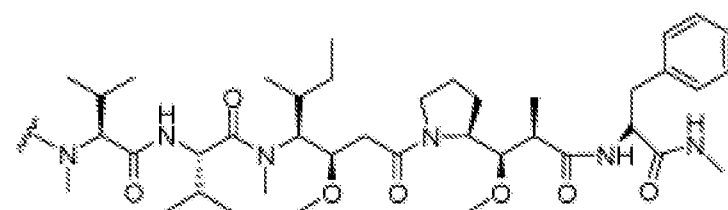
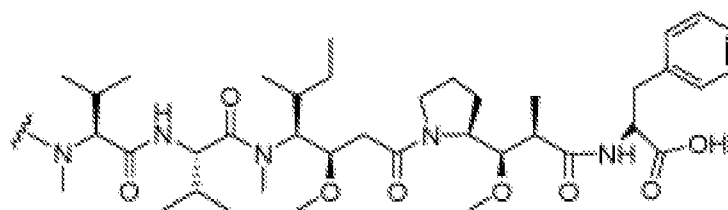
g is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably 1 or 2, most preferably 1;

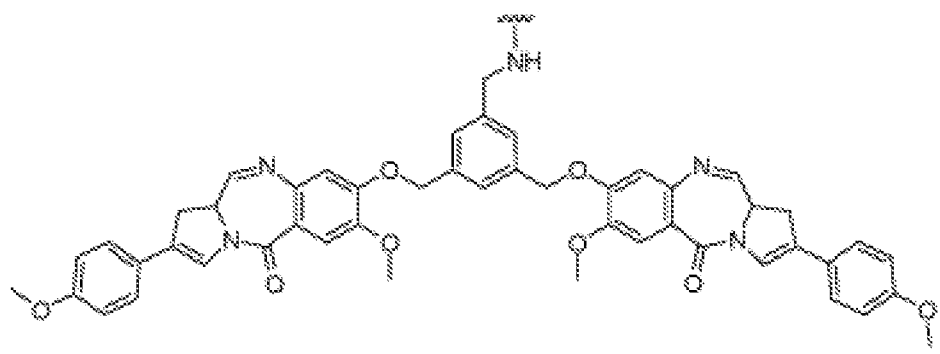
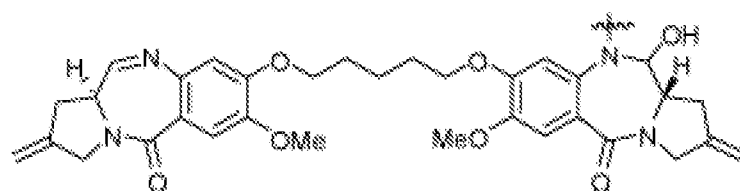
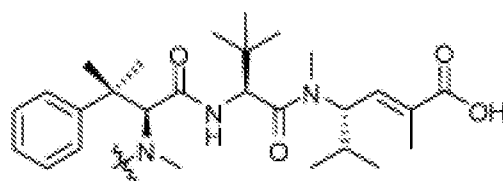
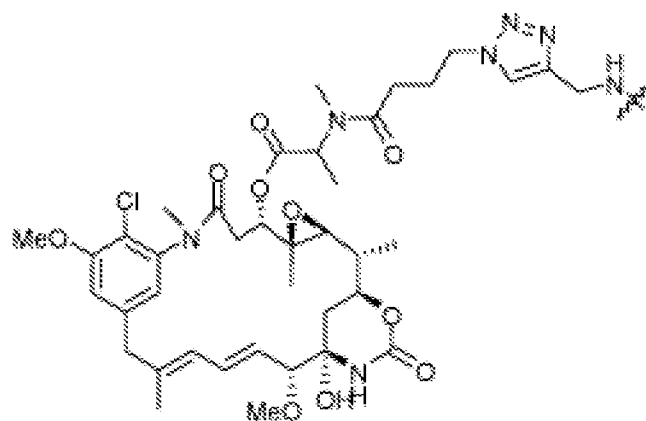
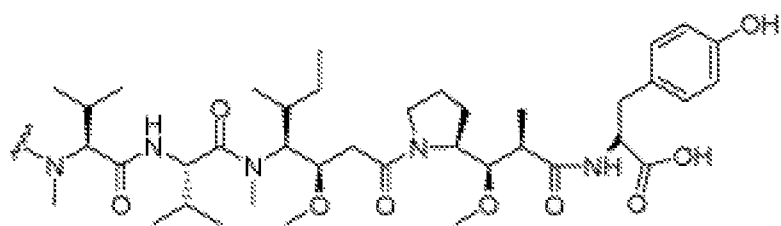
-S-mAb is the antibody; and

B is the active agent.

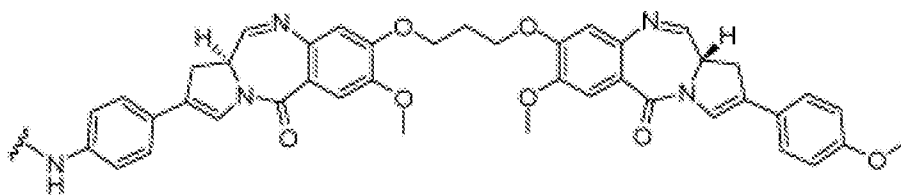
In some implementations, w is an integer from 11 to 20, such as 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, or 16.

[0097] In some implementations, B is selected from any one of the following structures:

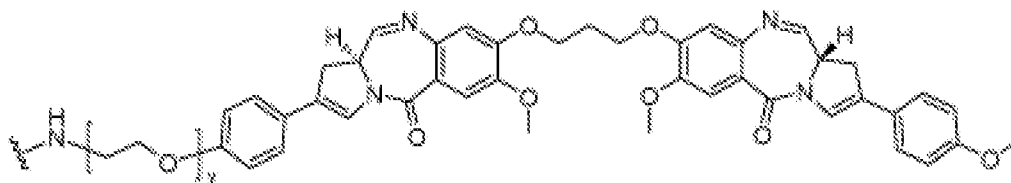




5

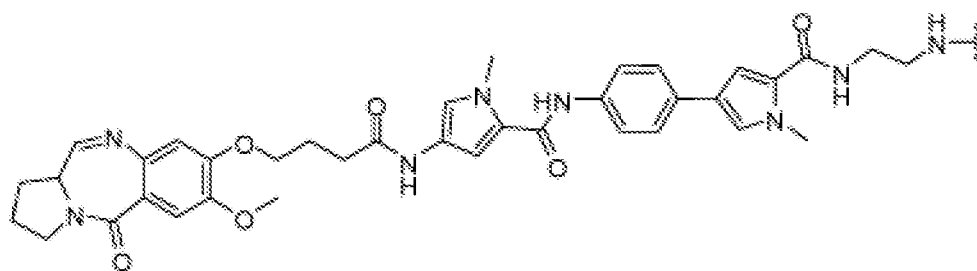


10



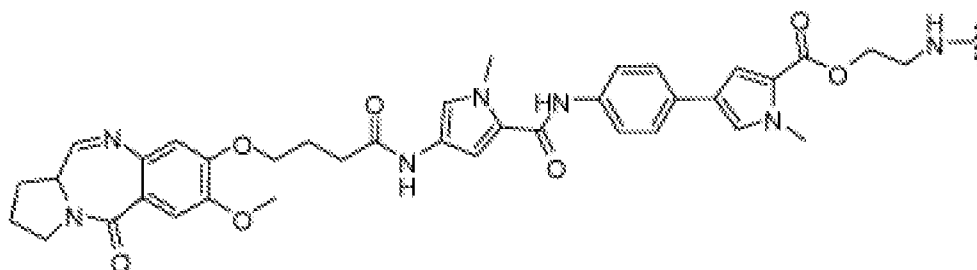
15

20



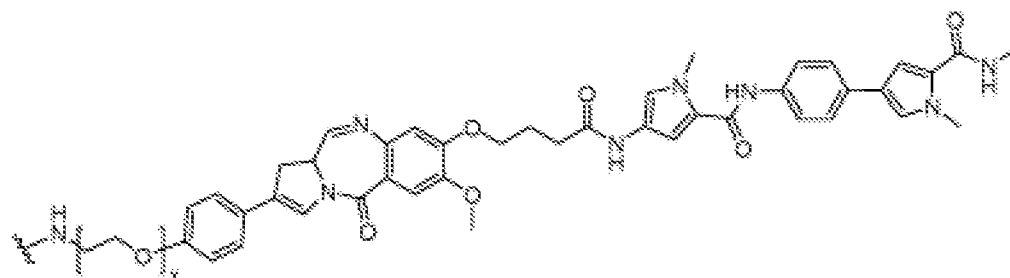
25

30



35

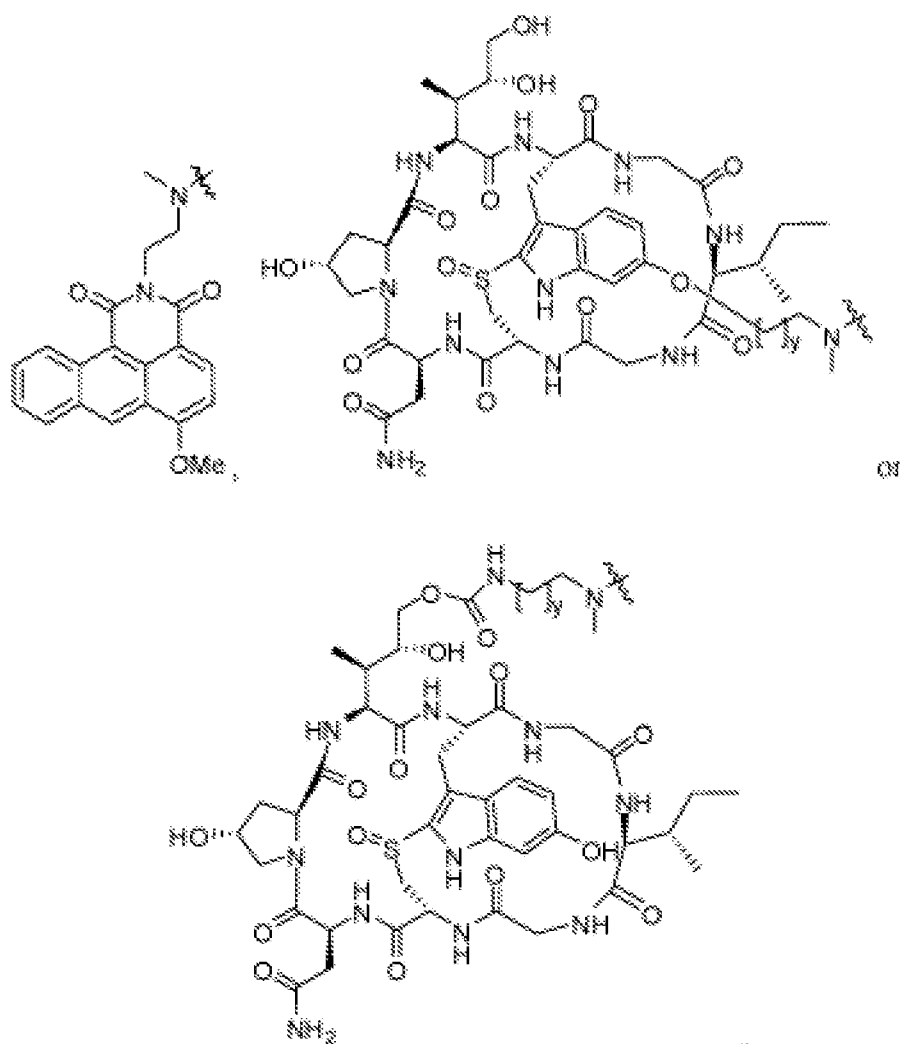
40



45

50

55



wherein y is an integer from 1 to 10.

[0098] The antibody-drug conjugate may be used to transfer the active agent to a target cell of a subject to treat the subject using a method of preparing a composition known to those skilled in the art. In some aspects, the disclosure relates to a composition (e.g., a pharmaceutical composition) comprising an antibody-drug conjugate as described herein.

[0099] Compositions may be prepared in an injectable form, either as a liquid solution or as a suspension. Solid forms suitable for injection may also be prepared, e.g., as emulsions, or with the antibody-drug conjugate encapsulated in liposomes. Antibody-drug conjugates may be combined with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, which includes any carrier that does not induce the production of antibodies harmful to the subject receiving the carrier. Suitable carriers typically comprise large macromolecules that are slowly metabolized, for example, proteins, polysaccharides, polylactic acids, polyglycolic acids, polymeric amino acids, amino acid copolymers, lipid aggregates, and the like.

[0100] The compositions may also contain diluents, for example, water, saline, glycerol, and ethanol. Auxiliary substances, for example, wetting or emulsifying agents, pH buffering substances, and the like may also be present therein. The compositions may be parenterally administered by injection, wherein such injection may be either subcutaneous or intramuscular injection. In some implementations, a composition may be administered into a tumor. The composition may be inserted (e.g., injected) into a tumor. Additional formulations are suitable for other forms of administration, such as suppository or oral administration. Oral compositions may be administered as a solution, suspension, tablet, pill, capsule, or sustained release formulation.

[0101] The compositions may be administered in a manner compatible with a dose and a formulation. The composition preferably comprises a therapeutically effective amount of the antibody-drug conjugate. The term "therapeutically effective amount" means a single dose or a composition administered in a multiple dose schedule that is effective for the treatment or prevention of a disease or disorder. A dose may vary, depending on the subject to be treated, the subject's health and physical conditions, a degree of protection to be desired, and other relevant factors. The exact amount of an active ingredient (e.g., the antibody-drug conjugate) may depend on the judgment of a doctor. For example, a therapeutic

tically effective amount of the antibody-drug conjugate or composition containing the same may be administered to a patient suffering from a cancer or tumor to treat the cancer or tumor.

[0102] The antibody-drug conjugate according to the present disclosure or the composition containing the same may be administered in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate thereof. In some implementations, the antibody-drug conjugate according to the present disclosure or the composition containing the same may be administered with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, and/or a pharmaceutically acceptable additive. The effective amount and the type of the pharmaceutically acceptable salt or solvate, excipient and additive may be measured using standard methods (see, e.g., Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA, 18th Edition, 1990).

[0103] The term "therapeutically effective amount" with regard to cancer or tumor means an amount that may decrease the number of cancer cells; decrease a size of cancer cells; inhibit cancer cells from intruding into peripheral systems or decrease the intrusion; inhibit cancer cells from spreading to other systems or decrease the spreading; inhibit cancer cells from growing; and/or ameliorate at least one symptom related to the cancer. In the treatment of cancer, the effectiveness of a drug may be assessed by time to tumor progression (TTP) and/or response rate (RR).

[0104] The term "pharmaceutically acceptable salts" used herein includes organic salts and inorganic salts. Examples thereof include hydrochloride, hydrobromide, hydroiodide, sulfate, citrate, acetate, oxalate, chloride, bromide, iodide, nitrate, bisulfate, phosphate, acidic phosphate, isonicotinate, lactate, salicylate, acidic citrate, tartrate, oleate, tannate, pantonate, bitartrate, ascorbate, succinate, maleate, gentisinate, fumarate, gluconate, glucuronate, saccharate, formate, benzoate, glutamate, methane sulfonate, ethane sulfonate, benzene sulfonate, p-toluene sulfonate, and pamoate (that is, 1,1'-methylenebis-(2-hydroxy-3-naphthoate)). The pharmaceutically acceptable salt may include another molecule (for example, acetate ions, succinate ions, and/or other counter ions).

[0105] Exemplary solvates that may be used for pharmaceutically acceptable solvates of the antibody-drug conjugates described herein include water, isopropanol, ethanol, methanol, dimethyl sulfoxide, ethyl acetate, acetic acid, and ethanol amine.

[0106] As used herein, a therapeutic that "prevents" a disorder or condition refers to a compound that, in a statistical sample, reduces the occurrence of the disorder or condition in the treated sample relative to an untreated control sample, or delays the onset or reduces the severity of one or more symptoms of the disorder or condition relative to the untreated control sample.

The term "treating" includes prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatments. The term "prophylactic or therapeutic" treatment is art-recognized and includes administration to the host of one or more of the subject compositions. If it is administered prior to clinical manifestation of the unwanted condition (e.g., disease or other unwanted state of the host animal) then the treatment is prophylactic (i.e., it protects the host against developing the unwanted condition), whereas if it is administered after manifestation of the unwanted condition, the treatment is therapeutic, (i.e., it is intended to diminish, ameliorate, or stabilize the existing unwanted condition or side effects thereof).

[0107] In some implementations, the disclosure relates to a method of treating cancer in a subject, comprising administering a pharmaceutical composition comprising an antibody-drug conjugate as described herein to the subject. In preferred implementations, the subject is a mammal. For example, the subject may be selected from rodents, lagomorphs, felines, canines, porcines, ovines, bovines, equines, and primates. In certain preferred implementations, the subject is a human.

[0108] Hereinafter, configurations of the present invention will be described in detail through Examples, but the following Examples are only to assist in understanding of the present invention. The scope of the present invention is not limited thereto. Further, unless specifically described otherwise, the reagent, solvent, and starting material described in the specification can be easily obtained from a commercial supplier.

EXEMPLIFICATION

[0109] The table below lists the abbreviations used throughout the following Examples:

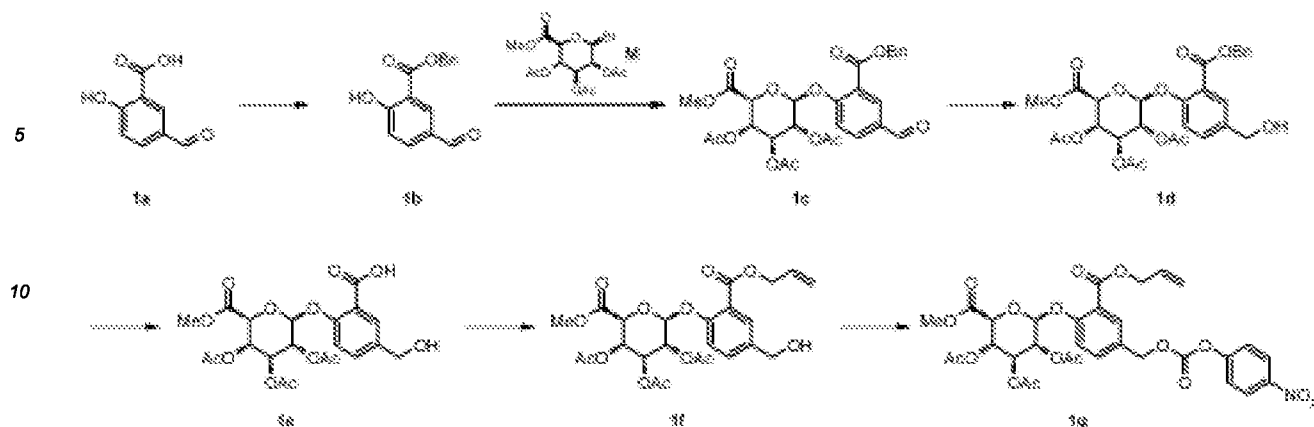
Abbreviation	Reference
Ac	acetyl
AcOH	acetic acid
aq.	aqueous
Bn	benzyl
brine	saturated aqueous sodium chloride solution

(continued)

Abbreviation	Reference
Boc	<i>t</i> -butoxycarbonyl
Cbz	benzyloxycarbonyl
DBU	1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene
DCM	dichloromethane
DIC	<i>N,N'</i> -diisopropylcarbodiimide
DIPEA	<i>N,N</i> -diisopropylethylamine
DMAP	4-(dimethylamino)pyridine
DMF	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
DMSO	dimethyl sulfoxide
EDC	<i>N</i> -(3-dimethylaminopropyl)- <i>N'</i> -ethylcarbodiimide
Et	ethyl
Et ₂ O	diethyl ether
EtOAc	ethyl acetate
EtOH	ethanol
HBTU	O-(benzotriazol-1-yl)- <i>N,N,N',N'</i> -tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate
Hex	<i>n</i> -hexane
HOBt	1-hydroxybenzotriazole
HPLC	high performance liquid chromatography
Me	Methyl
MeCN	acetonitrile
MeOH	methanol
MMAE	monomethyl auristatin E
MMAF	monomethyl auristatin F
MMAF-OMe	monomethyl auristatin F methyl ester
<i>i</i> -PrOH	isopropanol
PyBOP	(benzotriazol-1-yloxy)tripyrrolidinophosphonium hexafluorophosphate
TBAF	tetrabutylammonium fluoride
TBS	<i>t</i> -butyldimethylsilyl
THF	tetrahydrofuran
TFA	trifluoroacetic acid
Ts	<i>p</i> -toluenesulfonyl
wt	weight

Example 1. Preparation of Compound 11

[0110]



Preparation of Compound 1b

[0111] To a suspension of 5-formylsalicylic acid **1a** (10.0 g, 60.1 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added DIPEA (29.8 mL, 180 mmol) and benzyl bromide (7.15 mL, 60.1 mmol) at room temperature. Then the reaction mixture was heated under reflux. After 18 hours under reflux, the reaction mixture diluted with 2 N aq. HCl (100 mL). The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1b** (12.9 g, 83 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 11.38 (s, 1H), 9.86 (s, 1H), 8.40 (s, 1H), 8.01 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.44 (m, 5H), 7.12 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.42 (s, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 1c

[0112] To a solution of compound **1b** (5.0 g, 19.5 mmol) and compound **M** (8.5 g, 21.4 mmol, see Example 66) in MeCN (100 mL) were added 4 Å molecular sieve (10 g) and Ag₂O (18.0 g, 78.0 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 12 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was concentrated. Then the concentrated reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 200 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1c** (8.63 g, 77 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.94 (s, 1H), 8.28 (s, 1H), 8.02 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.46-7.28 (m, 6H), 5.41-5.32 (m, 6H), 4.27 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 2.05 (m, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 1d

[0113] To a solution of compound **1c** (3.10 g, 5.41 mmol) in *i*-PrOH/CHCl₃ (9 mL/45 mL) was added silica gel (3 g) and NaBH₄ (0.41 g, 10.82 mmol) at 0 °C. After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was quenched with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1d** (2.73 g, 87 %) as white solid. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.74 (s, 1H), 7.48-7.34 (m, 6H), 7.16 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.35-5.26 (m, 5H), 5.15 (m, 1H), 4.17 (m, 1H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 2.04 (s, 9H), 1.73 (t, 1H).

Preparation of Compound 1e

[0114] To a solution of compound **1d** (2.40 g, 4.17 mmol) in EtOH (150 mL) Pd/C (10 wt. %, 240 mg) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes under hydrogen. Then the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with EtOH (100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to provide the crude product **1e** as white solid (2.10 g), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.06 (s, 1H), 7.61 (dd, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.23 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 5.43-5.29 (m, 5H), 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.32 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 2.11-2.08 (t, 9H), 1.24 (t, 1H).

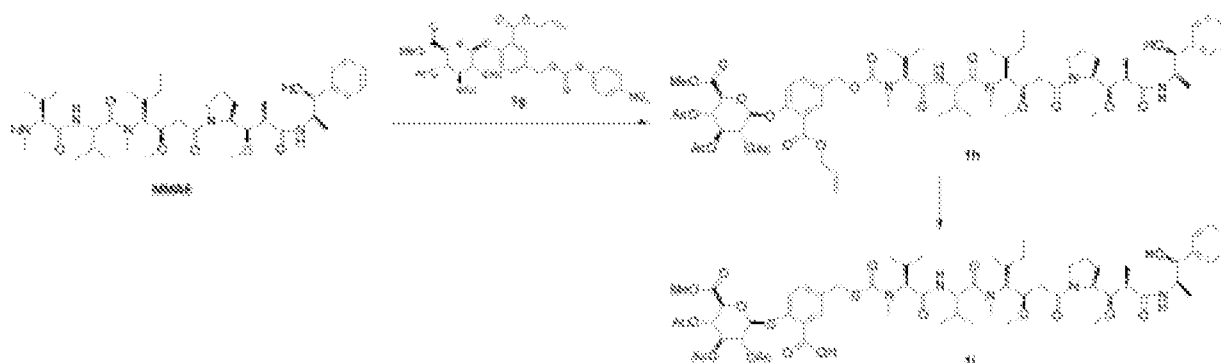
Preparation of Compound 1f

[0115] To a solution of the crude compound **1e** (2.10 g, 4.33 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) were added K₂CO₃ (1.79 g, 13.01 mmol) and allyl bromide (0.41 mL, 4.76 mmol) at room temperature. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with 2 N aq. HCl (100 mL). The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The

organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1f** (1.55 g, 70 % for 2 steps). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.74 (s, 1H), 7.45 (dd, $J = 8.0$ Hz, 2.0 Hz, 1H), 7.16 (d, $J = 8.8$ Hz, 1H), 6.02 (m, 1H), 5.40-5.26 (m, 5H), 5.16 (m, 1H), 4.76 (m, 2H), 4.66 (s, 2H), 4.19 (m, 1H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 2.07-2.05 (m, 9H), 1.68 (t, 1H).

Preparation of Compound **1g**

[0116] To a solution of compound **1f** (2.50 g, 4.77 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) were added bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (1.30 g, 4.29 mmol) and DIPEA (0.80 mL 4.77 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 min and allowed to warm to room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (200 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 . After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1g** (2.80 g, 85 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.28 (d, $J = 15.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.85 (d, $J = 2.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.55 (dd, $J = 3.2$ Hz, 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.38 (d, $J = 15.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.20 (d, $J = 8.8$ Hz, 1H), 6.03 (m, 1H), 5.42-5.19 (m, 8H), 4.78 (d, $J = 5.2$ Hz, 2H), 4.12 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H).



Preparation of Compound **1h**

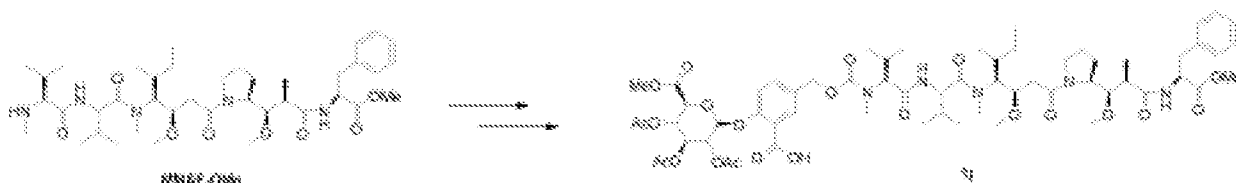
[0117] Compound **1g** (528 mg, 0.77 mmol), MMAE (500 mg, 0.7 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (19 mg, 0.14 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.7 mL) and DIPEA (0.24 mL, 1.39 mmol) were added. After stirring at room temperature for 24 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O /saturated aqueous NH_4Cl solution (100 mL/50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **1h** (600 mg, 67 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1269.5, $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 1291.5.

Preparation of Compound **1i**

[0118] To a solution of compound **1h** (600 mg, 0.47 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (31 mg, 0.12 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) were added pyrrolidine (0.047 mL, 0.57 mmol) and $\text{Pd}(\text{PPh}_3)_4$ (27 mg, 0.02 mmol) at room temperature. After stirring for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O /1 N aq. HCl (50 mL/50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (Hex/EtOAc 1/1 to EtOAc) to produce the compound **1i** (480 mg, 82 %) as a white solid. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1228.4, $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 1250.4.

Example 2. Preparation of Compound **1j**

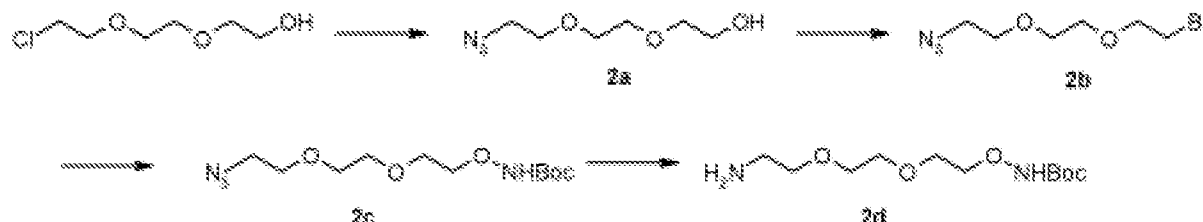
[0119]



[0120] Compound **1j** was prepared from MMAF-OMe by a similar method of preparing compound **1i** in Example 1.

Example 3. Preparation of Compound **2g**

[0121]



Preparation of Compound **2a**

[0122] 2-(2-(2-Chloroethoxy)ethoxy)ethanol (10 g, 59.3 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (90 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then NaN₃ (5.78 g, 88.9 mmol) was added thereto. After stirring at 100 °C for 13 hours, chloroform (200 mL) and distilled water (300 mL) were added thereto to extract an organic layer, and the extracted organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **2a** (10.3 g, 99 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.75-3.73 (m, 2H), 3.70-3.68 (m, 6H), 3.63-3.61 (m, 2H), 3.40 (t, *J* = 5.4 Hz, 2H), 2.20 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 1H).

Preparation of Compound **2b**

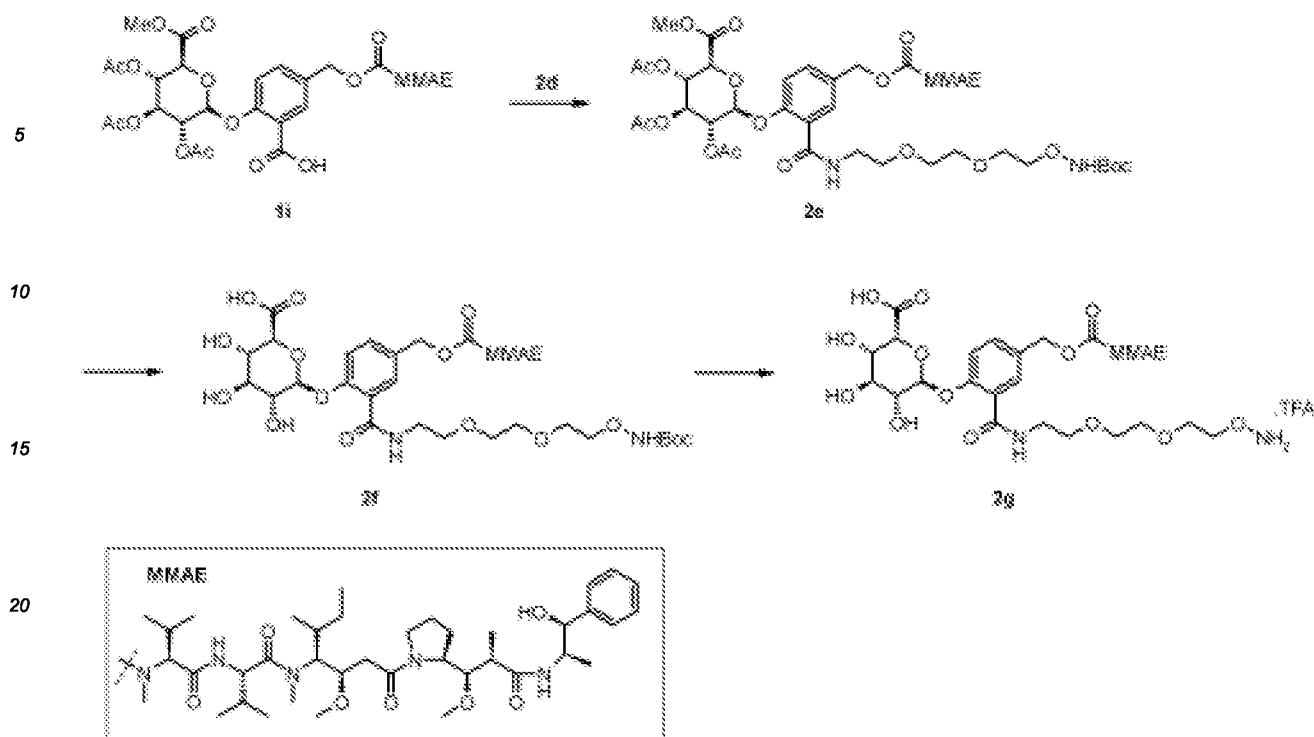
[0123] CBr₄ (21.4 g, 64.6 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (100 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then triphenylphosphine (16.9 g, 64.6 mmol) in DCM (100 mL) and compound **2a** (10.3 g, 58.7 mmol) were added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 13 hours. After the reaction was completed, DCM (300 mL) and distilled water (300 mL) were added thereto to extract an organic layer, and the extracted organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **2b** (12 g, 85 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.83 (t, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.72-3.67 (m, 6H), 3.48 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 3.40 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **2c**

[0124] Compound **2b** (1g, 4.20 mmol) was dissolved in MeCN at room temperature under nitrogen, and then *N*-Boc-hydroxylamine (643 mg, 4.82 mmol) and DBU (0.66 mL, 4.41 mmol) were added thereto. After stirring at 60 °C for 13 hours, DCM (300 mL) and distilled water (300 mL) were added thereto to extract an organic layer, and the extracted organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **2c** (748 mg, 70 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.55 (s, 1H), 4.05-4.03 (m, 2H), 3.76-3.74 (m, 2H), 3.74-3.69 (m, 6H), 3.42 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2H), 1.49 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound **2d**

[0125] Compound **2c** (200 mg, 0.688 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (5 mL), and then Pd/C (10% wt., 70 mg) was added thereto and stirred under hydrogen for 3 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was celite-filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure, which produced the compound **2d** (180 mg, 98 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.04-4.01 (m, 2H), 3.74-3.62 (m, 7H), 3.55 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 2.88 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 2.81 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 1.64 (s, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H).



Preparation of Compound 2e

[0126] DIPEA (0.042 mL, 0.32 mmol) and PyBOP (126 mg, 0.24 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 1i (200 mg, 0.16 mmol) and compound 2d (51 mg, 0.19 mmol) in DMF (4 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound 2e (142 mg, 60 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1474.7.

Preparation of Compound 2f

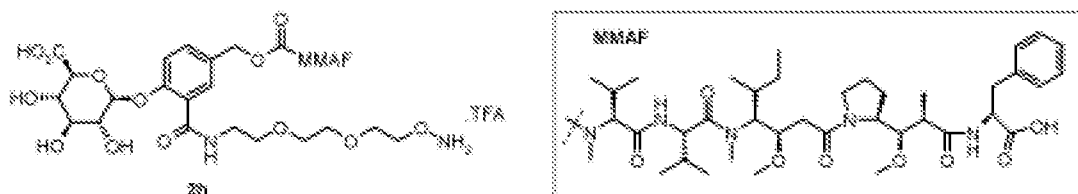
[0127] To a solution of compound 2e (142 mg, 0.096 mmol) in MeOH (2 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (36 mg, 0.86 mmol) in H₂O (2 mL) at -20 °C. After stirred at 0 °C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O/2 N aq. HCl solution (50 mL/2 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to yield the crude compound 2f (128 mg), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1334.5.

Preparation of Compound 2g

[0128] To a solution of crude compound 2f (105 mg, 0.08 mmol) in DCM (3 mL) HCl (4 M in 1,4-dioxane, 1 mL) was added at 0 °C. After 1 hour, the solvent and excess HCl were removed by N₂ flow and then the residue was purified by HPLC, which produced the compound 2g (47 mg, 46 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1234.4.

Example 4. Preparation of Compound 2h

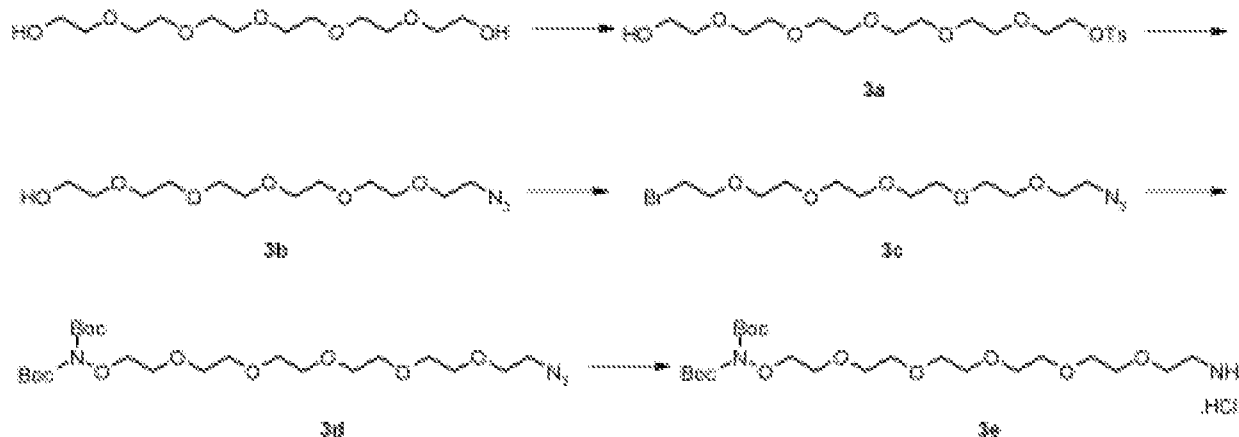
[0129]



[0130] Compound **2h** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **2d** by a similar method of preparing compound **2g** in Example 3. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1248.9.

Example 5. Preparation of Compound **3f**

[0131]



Preparation of Compound **3a**

[0132] A mixture of hexaethylene glycol (1.0 g, 3.54 mmol), Ag_2O (1.23 g, 5.31 mmol) and KI (117 mg, 0.71 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was sonicated for 15 min. The suspension was cooled to $-30\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ and a solution of *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (688 mg, 3.61 mmol) in DCM (13 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was then gradually warmed up to $0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ and kept for 15 minutes at this temperature. Then the reaction mixture was dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated to produce the syrupy residue. Then, the syrupy residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1). The pure fractions were evaporated *in vacuo* to yield the compound **3a** (1.18 g, 77 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.80 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 2H), 7.34 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 2H), 4.16 (m, 2H), 3.72-3.58 (m, 22H), 2.97 (br, 1H), 2.45 (s, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **3b**

[0133] Compound **3a** (1.18 g, 2.71 mmol) and NaN_3 (264 mg, 4.07 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 mL). And then the reaction mixture was heated at $100\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$. After 15 hours at $100\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1) to yield the compound **3b** (728 mg, 87 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 3.75-3.70 (m, 2H), 3.69-3.63 (m, 18H), 3.62-3.60 (m, 2H), 3.39 (d, $J = 5.2$ Hz, 2H), 3.07 (br, 1H).

Preparation of Compound **3c**

[0134] To a stirred solution of compound **3b** (728 mg, 2.36 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at $0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ were added triethylamine (0.73 mL, 5.21 mmol) and methanesulfonic anhydride (619 mg, 3.55 mmol). After 2 hours, LiBr (1.03 g, 11.8 mmol) was added to a stirred solution and the resulting reaction mixture was refluxed for 5 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1) to yield the compound **3c** (810 mg, 92 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 3.81 (t, $J = 6.4$ Hz, 2H), 3.69-3.65 (m, 18H), 3.47 (t, $J = 6.4$ Hz, 2H), 3.39 (t, $J = 5.2$ Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **3d**

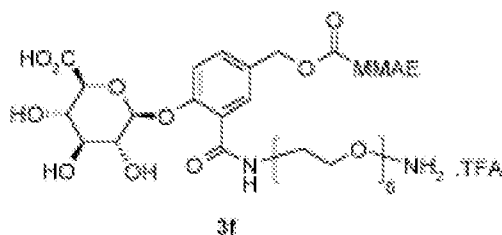
[0135] NaH (60 % in oil, 564 mg, 12.9 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **3c** (3.42 g, 9.24 mmol) and *N,N*-diBoc-hydroxylamine (2.80 g, 12.0 mmol, synthesized by the procedures in PCT publication No. WO2004/018466A2) in DMF (20 mL) at $0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and kept for 2 hours at this temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc/Hex 1/20 to 1/5), which produced the compound **3d** (3.51 g, 73 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 4.08 (t, $J = 4.8$ Hz, 2H), 3.73 (t, $J = 4.8$ Hz, 2H), 3.69-3.62 (m, 18H), 3.39 (t, $J = 5.6$ Hz, 2H), 1.53 (s, 18H).

Preparation of Compound 3e

[0136] To a stirred mixture of compound **3d** (123 mg, 0.23 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 25 mg) in MeOH (5 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.05 mL, 0.21 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **3e** (118 mg, 95 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 3.98 (t, *J* = 4.4 Hz, 2H), 3.61-3.51 (m, 22H), 2.95 (br, 3H), 1.46 (s, 18H). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺497.6.

Preparation of Compound 3f

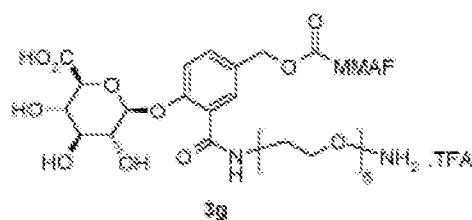
[0137]



[0138] Compound **3f** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **3e** by a similar method of preparing compound **2g** in Example 3. EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1366.6, [M+Na]⁺ 1389.6.

Example 6. Preparation of Compound 3g

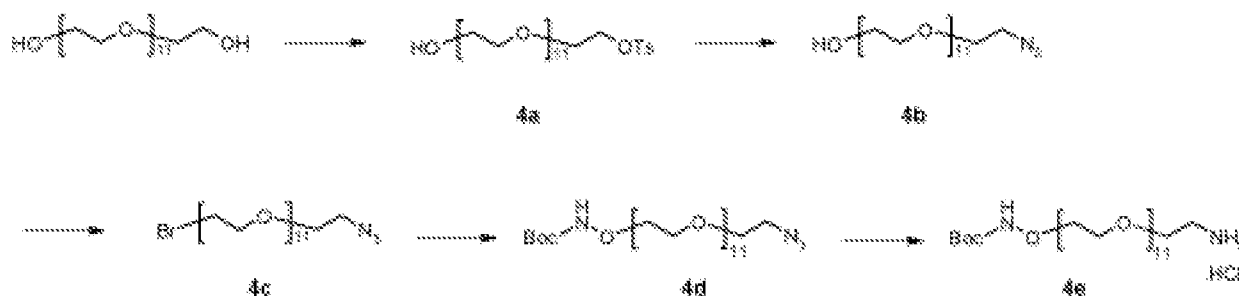
[0139]



[0140] Compound **3g** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **3e** by a similar method of preparing compound **2g** in Example 3. EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1380.6, [M+Na]⁺ 1403.6.

Example 7. Preparation of Compound 4f

[0141]

Preparation of Compound 4a

[0142] To a stirred solution of dodecaethylene glycol (1.8 g, 3.2 mmol) in DCM (18 mL) was added *p*-toluenesulfonyl

chloride (656 mg, 3.4 mmol), Ag₂O (1.13 g, 4.9 mmol) and KI (108 mg, 0.65 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with DCM (50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **4a** (490 mg, 21 %) as light yellowish oil. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.81 (d, 2H), 7.35 (d, 2H), 4.16 (t, 2H), 3.72-3.58 (m, 46H), 2.82 (br s, 1H), 2.45 (s, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **4b**

[0143] Compound **4a** (490 mg, 0.69 mmol) and NaN₃ (68 mg, 1.04 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (16 mL) and the reaction mixture was heated at 100 °C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **4b** (267 mg, 67 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.72-3.60 (m, 46H), 3.39 (t, 2H), 2.84 (t, 1H), 3.40 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **4c**

[0144] To a stirred solution of compound **4b** (265 mg, 0.46 mmol) in THF (10 mL) at 0 °C were added 4-methylmorpholine (0.066 mL, 0.60 mmol) and methanesulfonic anhydride (121 mg, 0.69 mmol). After 2 hours, LiBr (120 mg, 1.38 mmol) was added to a stirred solution and the resulting reaction mixture was refluxed for 6 hours. After cooling to room temperature, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1) to yield the compound **4c** (178 mg, 60 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.81 (t, 2H), 3.65 (m, 42H), 3.47 (t, 2H), 3.39 (t, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **4d**

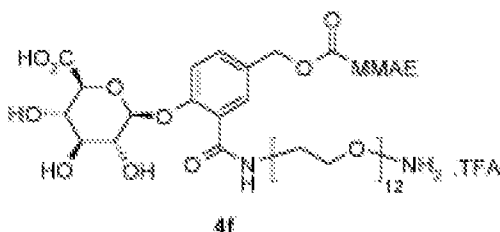
[0145] NaH (60 % in oil, 14 mg, 0.33 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **4c** (175 mg, 0.27 mmol), and *N*-Boc-hydroxylamine (47 mg, 0.35 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was warmed up to room temperature and kept for 12 hours at this temperature. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by column chromatography (MeOH/CHCl₃ 1/20 to 1.5/20), which produced the compound **4d** (148 mg, 78 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.00 (t, 2H), 3.66 (m, 44H), 3.39 (t, 2H), 1.47 (d, 9H).

Preparation of Compound **4e**

[0146] To a stirred mixture of compound **4d** (148 mg, 0.21 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 28 mg) in MeOH (5 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.053 mL, 0.21 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **4e** (142 mg, 96 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 4.00 (t, 2H), 3.92 (t, 2H), 3.76-3.64 (m, 42H), 3.18 (t, 2H), 1.47 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound **4f**

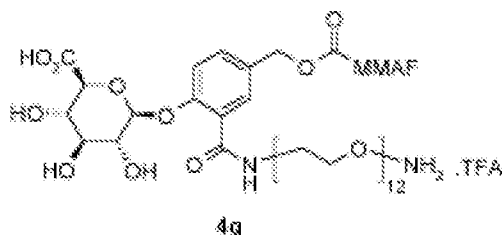
[0147]



[0148] Compound **4f** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **4e** by a similar method of preparing compound **2g** in Example 3. ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1631.9.

Example 8. Preparation of Compound **4g**

[0149]



[0150] Compound **4g** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **4e** by a similar method of preparing compound **2g** in Example 3. ELMS m/z : ELMS m/z $[M+H]^+$ 1645.3.

Example 9. Preparation of Compound **5e**

[0151]



Preparation of Compound **5a**

[0152] To a solution of 2-aminoethanol (10 g, 164 mmol) in DCM (70 mL) were added triethylamine (3.9 mL, 28.1 mmol) and benzyl chloroformate (30 mL, 213 mmol) in DCM (30 mL) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 24 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated. The resulting residue was diluted with H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **5a** (17 g, 53 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.40-7.27 (m, 5H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 3.72 (s, 2H), 3.56 (s, 2H), 2.13 (br s, 1H).

Preparation of Compound **5b**

[0153] To a solution of compound **5a** (5.0 g, 25.6 mmol) in DCM (70 mL) triethylamine (3.9 mL, 28.1 mmol) were added DMAP (100 mg, 5.12 mmol) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (5.4 g, 28.1 mmol) in DCM (30 mL) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aq. NH_4Cl (100 mL) and extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **5b** (8.29 g, 92 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.77 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 2H), 7.40-7.28 (m, 7H), 5.07 (s, 3H), 4.09 (s, 2H), 3.45 (s, 2H), 2.43 (s, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **5c**

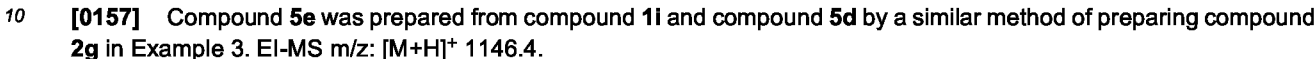
[0154] To a solution of compound **5b** (2.0 g, 7.23 mmol) in THF (20 mL) was added *N,N*-diBoc-hydroxylamine (1.7 g, 7.44 mmol) and NaH (300 mg, 6.86 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After stirring at room temperature for 17 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **5c** (375 mg, 16 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.45-7.27 (m, 5H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.01 (br s, 2H), 3.44 (d, J = 4.8 Hz, 2H), 1.52 (s, 18H). ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 410.7.

Preparation of Compound **5d**

[0155] To a solution of compound **5c** (187 mg, 0.45 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL) Pd/C (10 % wt. %, 20 mg) was added and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (20 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **5d** (120 mg) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification.

Preparation of Compound **5e**

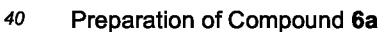
[0156]



15 [0158]



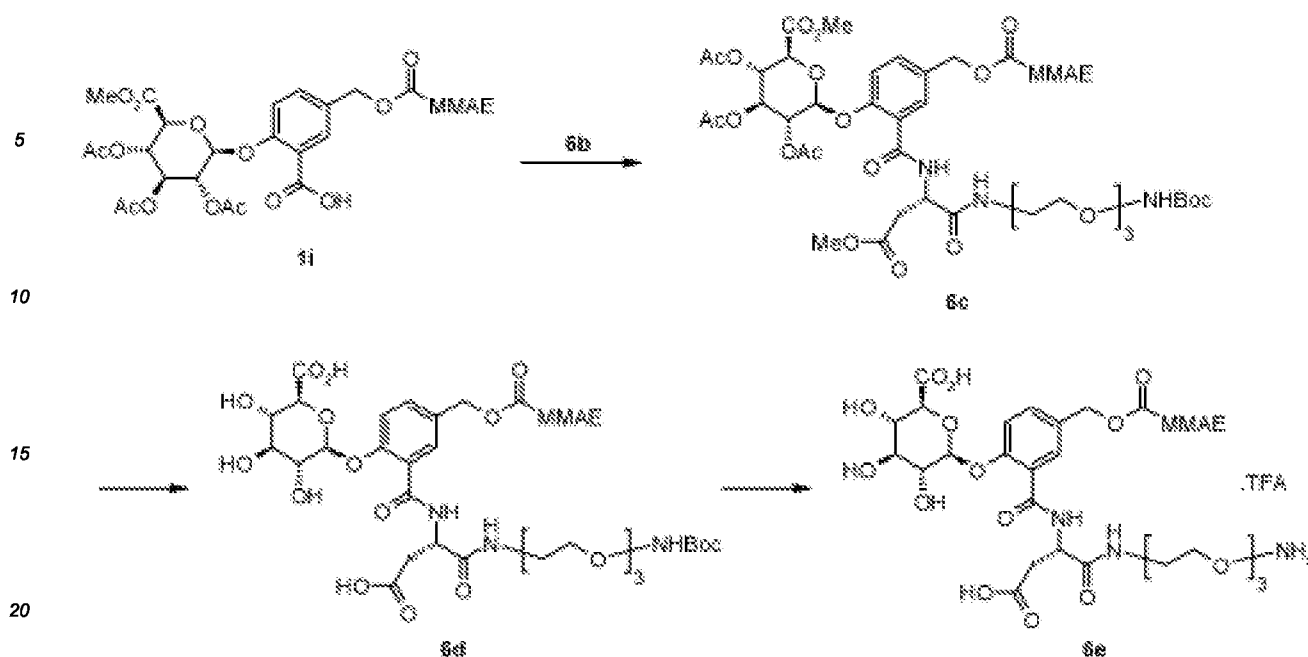
30 [0160]



[0161] DIPEA (1.2 mL, 9.96 mmol) and HBTU (1.69 g, 6.22 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of Z-Asp(OMe)-OH (500 mg, 1.78 mmol) and compound **2d** (642 mg, 2.98 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 22 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **6a** (368 mg, 40 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.85-7.70 (m, 1 H), 7.45-7.28 (m, 5H), 7.04 (s, 1H), 6.02 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (s, 2H), 4.65-4.50 (m, 1H), 4.00 (d, *J* = 3.6 Hz, 2H), 3.72-3.30 (m, 10H), 2.80 (dd, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 2H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

50 Preparation of Compound 6b

38



Preparation of Compound 6c

[0163] DIPEA (0.022 mL, 0.12 mmol) and HBTU (20 mg, 0.05 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 11 (50 mg, 0.04 mmol) and compound 6b (22 mg, 0.05 mmol) in DMF (1 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂. Then, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound 6c (38 mg, 60 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1604.5.

Preparation of Compound 6d

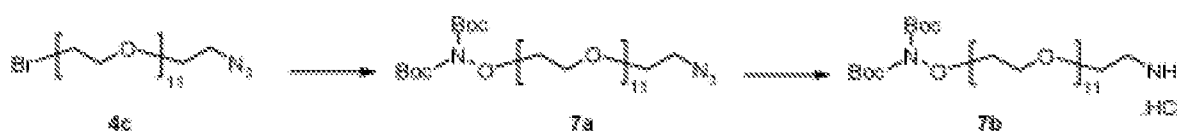
[0164] To a solution of compound 6c (38 mg, 0.023 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (5 mg, 0.118 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted with AcOH to 4-5 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC to produce the compound 6d (26 mg, 78 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1450.5.

Preparation of Compound 6e

[0165] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound 6d (26 mg, 0.018 mmol) in DCM (1.5 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound 6e (19.5 mg, 80 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1350.6.

Example 12. Preparation of Compound 7e

[0166]



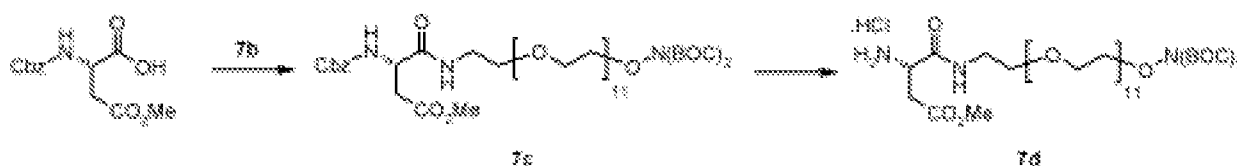
Preparation of Compound 7a

[0167] NaH (60 wt. %, 500 mg, 12.49 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound 4c (6.10 g, 9.61 mmol) and

N,N-diBoc-hydroxylamine (2.69 g, 11.53 mmol) in DMF (90 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was heated up to room temperature and kept for 12 hours at this temperature. The reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure and the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography. Pure fractions were evaporated *in vacuo* to yield the compound **7a** (5.70 g, 75 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.05 (t, 2H), 3.71 (t, 2H), 3.64 (m, 42H), 3.37 (t, 2H), 1.51 (d, 18H).

Preparation of Compound **7b**

[0168] To a stirred mixture of compound **7a** (5.70 g, 7.21 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 570 mg) in MeOH (100 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 1.9 mL, 7.2 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **7b** (5.10 g, 87 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 4.21 (t, 2H), 4.07 (s, 2H), 3.95-3.78 (m, 42H), 3.32 (s, 2H) 1.63 (s, 18H).



Preparation of Compound **7c**

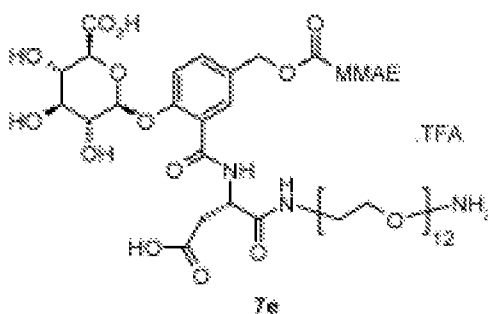
[0169] DIPEA (0.25 mL, 1.42 mmol) and HBTU (337g, 0.89mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of Z-Asp(OMe)-OH (100 mg, 0.36 mmol) and compound **7b** (340 mg, 0.43 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours under N₂. Then, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **7c** (123 mg, 58 %). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1024.2.

Preparation of Compound **7d**

[0170] To a stirred mixture of compound **7c** (120 mg, 0.12 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 20 mg) in MeOH (5 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.03 mL, 0.12 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (20 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **7d** (120 mg) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification.

Preparation of Compound **7e**

[0171]



[0172] Compound **7e** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **7d** by a similar method of preparing compound **6e** in Example 11. ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1747.1.

Example 13. Preparation of Compound **8f**

[0173]



15

25

30

35

40



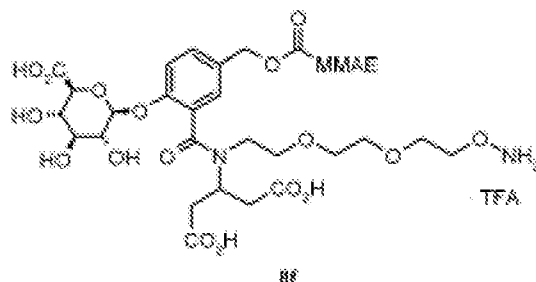
50

55

41

Preparation of Compound 8f

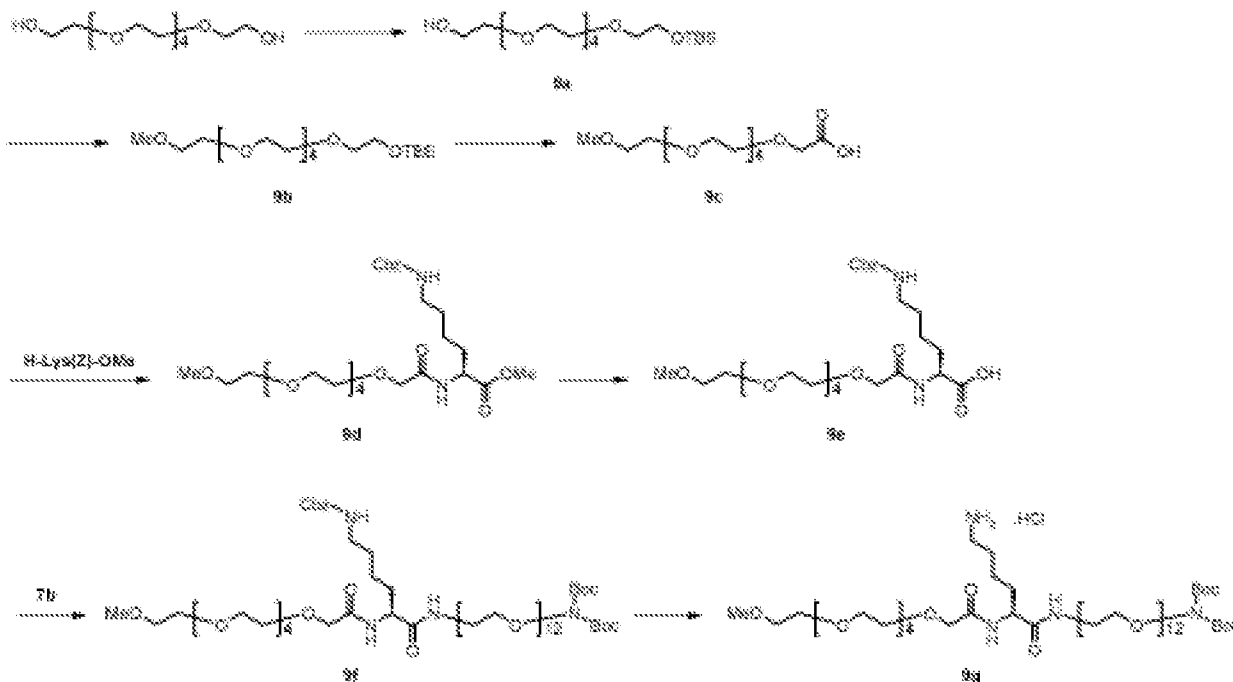
[0179]



[0180] Compound **8f** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **8e** by a similar method of preparing compound **6e** in Example 11. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1365.0.

Example 14. Preparation of Compound 9j

[0181]

Preparation of Compound 9a

[0182] To a solution of hexaethylene glycol (10.48 g, 37.12 mmol) in DCM (400 mL) was added imidazole (3.20 g, 44.54 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 5 minutes, the reaction mixture was added dropwise to the solution of TBSCl (5.60 g, 37.12 mmol) in DCM (50 mL) at the same temperature under N_2 atmosphere. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C and warmed to room temperature for 21 hours under N_2 . After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was diluted with water (200 mL) and extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography. The pure fractions were evaporated *in vacuo* to yield the compound **9a** (6.70 g, 46 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 3.77-3.71 (m, 4H), 3.66-3.60 (m, 18H), 3.56-3.54 (t, 2H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.06 (s, 6H).

Preparation of Compound 9b

[0183] To a solution of compound **9a** (3.32 g, 8.37 mmol) in dry THF (40 mL) was added NaH (55 % in oil, 438 mg, 10.05 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. After 30 minutes, MeI (0.78 mL, 12.56 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture at the same temperature under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred and warmed to room temperature for 18 hours under N₂. After the reaction was completed, quenched with H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EA (3 x 10 mL). The organic layers were combined, washed with saturated aq. NH₄Cl (5 mL) and brine (10 mL), dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography. Pure fractions were evaporated *in vacuo* to yield the compound **9b** (3.16 g, 92 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.78-3.75 (t, 2H), 3.65 (s, 20H), 3.57-3.54 (t, 4H), 3.38 (s, 3H), 0.89 (s, 9H), 0.06 (s, 6H).

Preparation of Compound 9c

[0184] To a solution of compound **9b** (3.16 g, 7.69 mmol) in acetone (100 mL) was added Jones reagent (10 mL) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred and warmed to room temperature for 17 hours under N₂. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was filtered and evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting crude compound **9c** (2.28 g, 95 %) was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.75 (t, 2H), 3.69-3.67 (m, 16H), 3.57-3.55 (t, 2H), 3.38 (s, 3H).

Preparation of Compound 9d

[0185] DIPEA (3.8 mL, 22.03 mmol), HOBt (1.29 g, 9.55 mmol) and EDC·HCl (1.83 g, 9.55 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **9c** (2.28 g, 7.34 mmol) and H-Lys(Z)-OMe hydrochloride (2.91 g, 8.81 mmol) in DMF (30 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was concentrated. Purification by column chromatography gave the compound **9d** (1.23 g, 72 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.38-7.31 (m, 5H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 5.00 (s, 1H) 4.68-4.62 (m, 1H), 4.03 (s, 2H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.68-3.64 (m, 16H), 3.56 (t, 2H), 3.39 (s, 3H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 1.89 (m, 1H), 1.74 (m, 1H), 1.55 (m, 1H), 1.40 (m, 1H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 586.8, [M+Na]⁺ 608.9.

Preparation of Compound 9e

[0186] To a solution of compound **9d** (2.16 g, 3.68 mmol) in THF/MeOH/H₂O (18 mL/6 mL/6 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (307 mg, 7.31 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Then the pH of the solution was adjusted to 2-3 with 1 N aq. HCl. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (20 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **9e** (2.28 g, 99 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.34-7.30 (m, 5H), 5.08 (s, 2H), 4.66-4.60 (q, 1H), 4.01 (s, 2H), 3.67-3.55 (m, 18H), 3.37 (s, 3H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 1.72 (m, 1H), 1.53 (m, 1H), 1.38 (m, 1H).

Preparation of Compound 9f

[0187] DIPEA (0.45 mL, 2.63 mmol), HOBt (154 mg, 0.11 mmol) and EDC·HCl (218 mg, 0.11 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **9e** (502 mg, 0.88 mmol) and compound **7b** (700 mg, 0.88 mmol) in DMF (8 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with aq. NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and brine (20 mL) and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **9f** (499 mg, 43 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.35-7.30 (m, 5H), 6.83 (s, 1H), 5.15 (s, 1H), 5.08 (s, 2H), 4.43 (q, 1H) 4.07 (t, 1H), 3.65-3.60 (m, 54H), 3.55-3.53 (m, 4H), 3.37 (s, 3H), 3.16 (m, 2H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 1.53-1.52 (d, 19H), 1.38 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1337.5.

Preparation of Compound 9g

[0188] To a stirred mixture of compound **9f** (499 mg, 0.37 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 50 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.1 mL, 0.37 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 90 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (10 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **9g** (458 mg, 98 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1218.6.

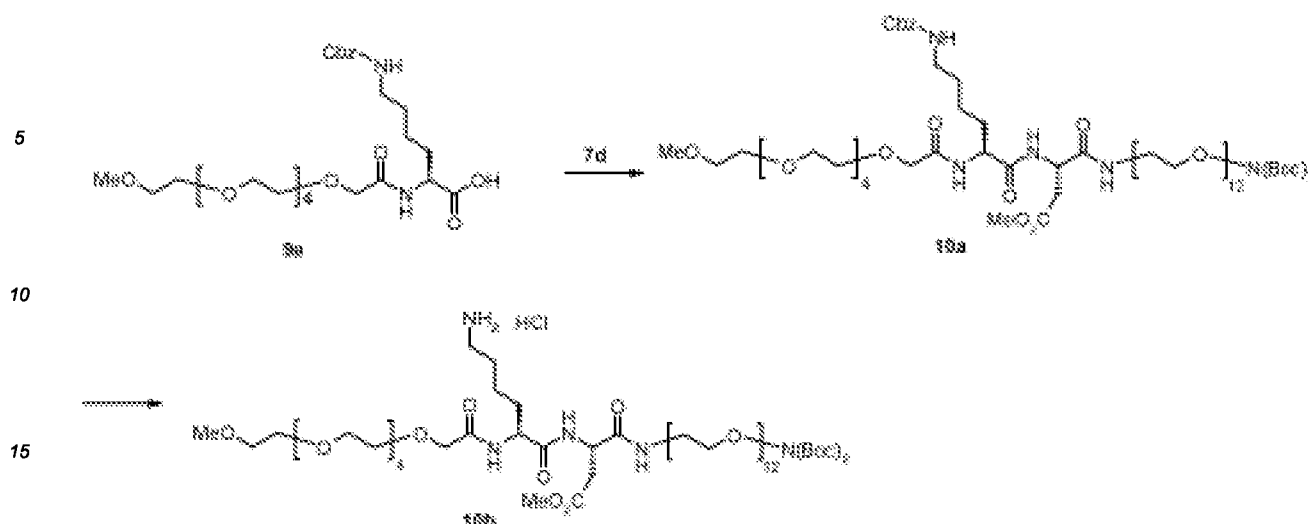


Preparation of Compound 9i

Preparation of Compound 9j

Example 15. Preparation of Compound 10c

44



Preparation of Compound 10a

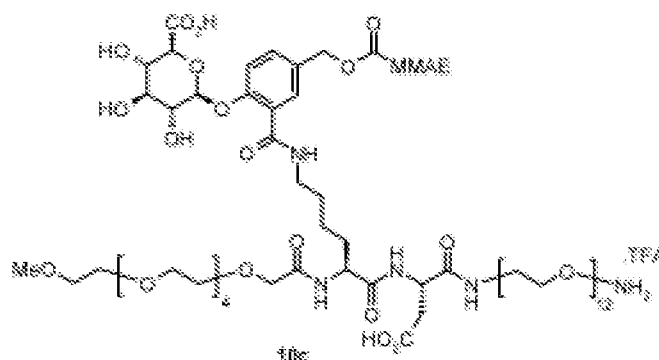
[0193] DIPEA (0.03 mL, 0.17 mmol), HOBT (10 mg, 0.075 mmol) and EDCI-HCl (14 mg, 0.075 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 9e (33 mg, 0.058 mmol) and compound 7d (54 mg, 0.058 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (8 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (8 mL) and brine (8 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 10a (61 mg, 73 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1445.0, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 1344.9.

Preparation of Compound 10b

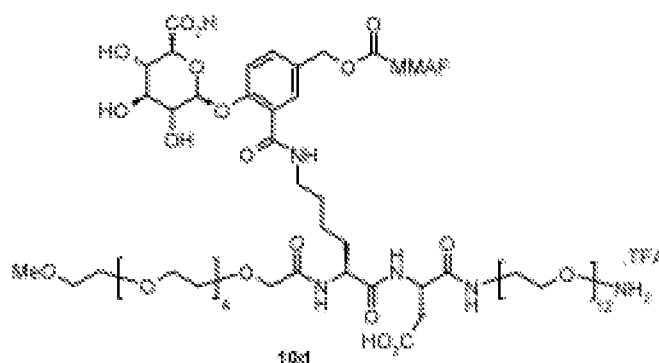
[0194] To a stirred mixture of compound 10a (60 mg, 0.04 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 30 mg) in MeOH (10 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.01 mL, 0.01 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound 10b (56 mg, 100 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1311.0, [M+Na]⁺ 1332.9.

Preparation of Compound 10c

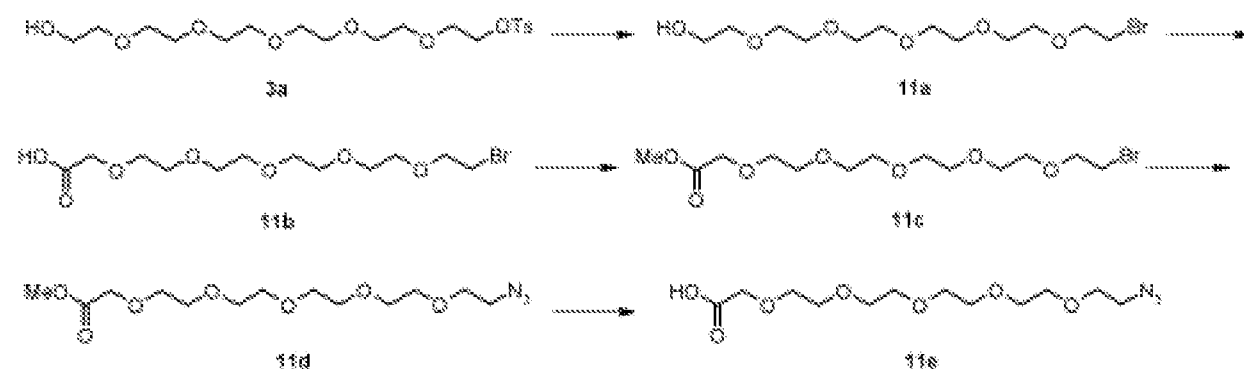
[0195]



Compound 10c was prepared from compound 11 and compound 10b by a similar method of preparing compound 9j in Example 14. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1083.8.

Example 16. Preparation of Compound 10d**[0196]**

[0197] Compound **10d** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **10b** by a similar method of preparing compound **9j** in Example 14. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 2181.3, $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1091.3.

Example 17. Preparation of Compound 11j**[0198]****Preparation of Compound 11a**

[0199] To a solution of compound **3a** (8.0 g, 18.3 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added LiBr (7.9 g, 91.6 mmol) at room temperature. After stirring for 17 hours under reflux, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **11a** (3.2 g, 50 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 3.95-3.50 (m, 24H).

Preparation of Compound 11b

[0200] To a solution of compound **11a** (3.2 g, 12.3 mmol) in acetone (20 mL) at 0 °C was added Jones reagent (20 mL). After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **11b** (3.2 g, 72 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.95-3.30 (m, 20H).

Preparation of Compound 11c

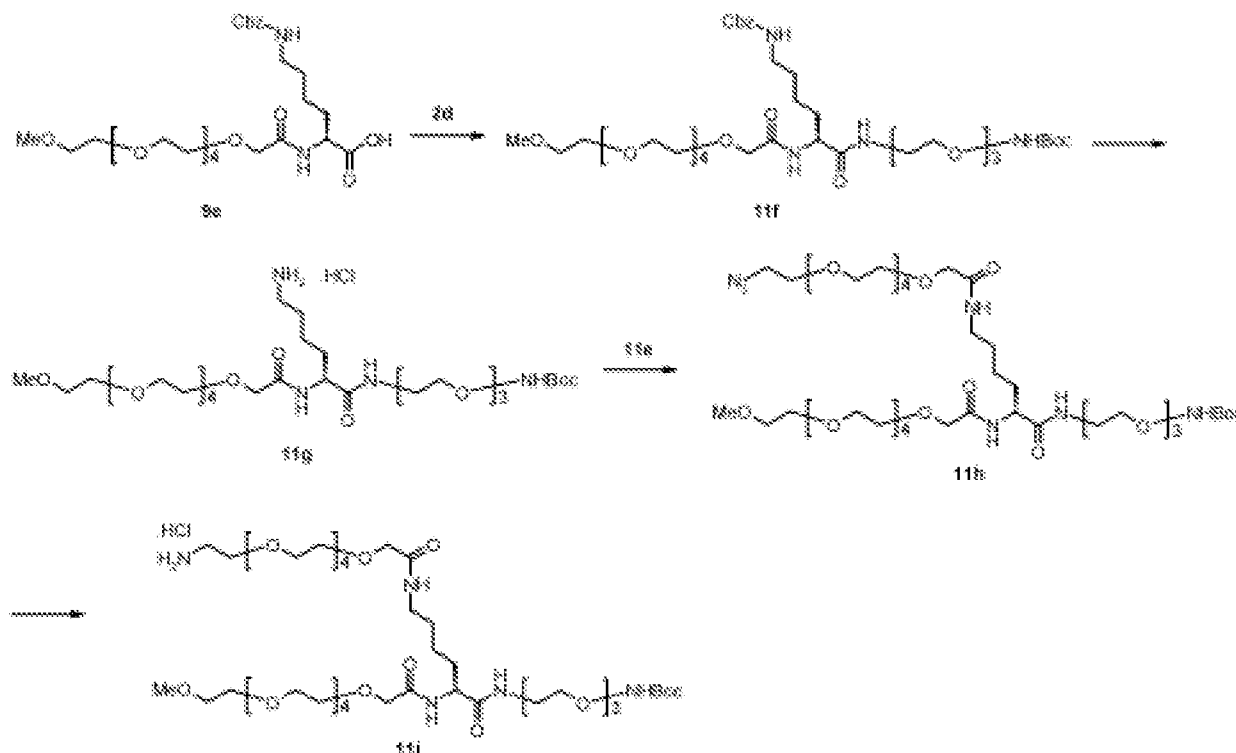
[0201] To a solution of compound **11b** (3.2 g, 8.90 mmol) in MeOH (30 mL) was added oxalyl chloride (1.15 mL, 13.3 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **11c** (2.7 g, 81 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.60 (m, 21H), 3.47 (t, $J = 6.4$ Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 11d

[0202] Compound **11c** (1.0 g, 2.67 mmol) and NaN_3 (261 mg, 4.01 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 100 °C for 5 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **11d** (854 mg, 95 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.64 (m, 21H), 3.39 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 11e

[0203] To a stirred solution of compound **11d** (854 mg, 2.54 mmol) in MeOH (25 mL) at 0 °C was added 2 M aq. NaOH (6.3 mL, 12.64 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting suspension was acidified with aqueous 2 N HCl while cooling at 0 °C. The residue was extracted by CHCl_3 (8 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over Na_2SO_4 and concentrated to produce the compound **11e** (783 mg, 96 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.65 (m, 18H), 3.40 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 11f

[0204] DIPEA (0.47 mL, 2.72 mmol), HOBt (160 mg, 1.18 mmol) and EDC·HCl (226 mg, 1.18 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **9e** (520 mg, 0.91 mmol) and compound **2d** (270 mg, 0.91 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was poured into H_2O (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (15 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO_3 (15 mL) and brine (15 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **11f** (631 mg, 85 %).

ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 819.1, $[\text{M}+\text{H-Boc}]^+$ 719.1 $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 841.1.

Preparation of Compound 11g

[0205] To a stirred mixture of compound **11f** (300 mg, 0.36 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 70 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.08 mL, 0.08 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **11g** (200 mg, 99 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 685.1, $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 707.1.

Preparation of Compound 11h

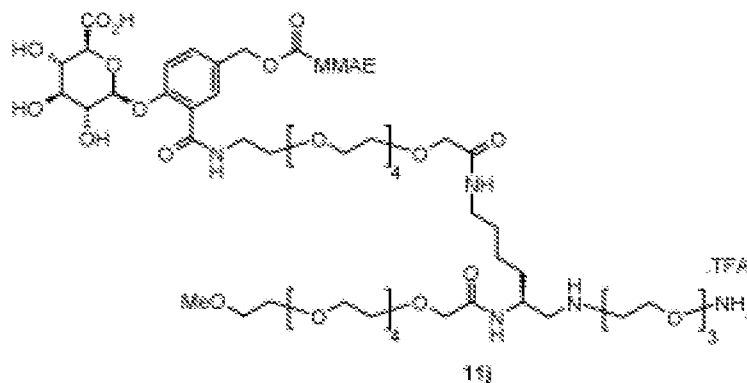
[0206] DIPEA (0.024 mL, 0.41 mmol), HOBt (24 mg, 0.18 mmol) and EDC-HCl (34 mg, 0.18 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 11g (100 mg, 0.14 mmol) and compound 11e (44 mg, 0.14 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 11h (73 mg, 53 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 988.4, [M+Na-Boc]⁺ 888.2, [M+Na]⁺ 1010.4.

Preparation of Compound 11i

[0207] To a stirred mixture of compound 11h (73 mg, 0.07 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 10 mg) in MeOH (7 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.018 mL, 0.018 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound 11i (72 mg, 99 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 962.4, [M+Na]⁺ 984.4.

Preparation of Compound 11j

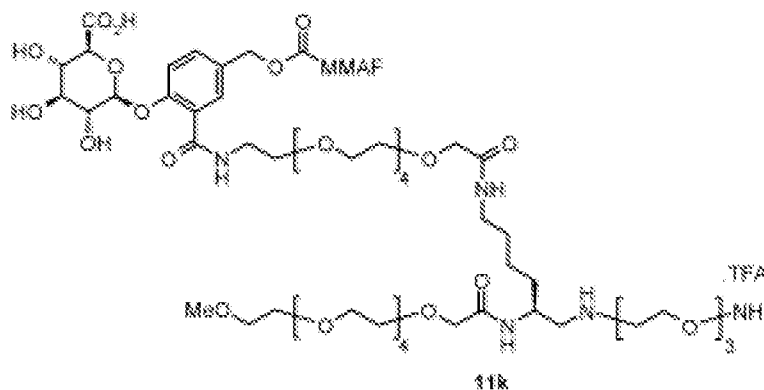
[0208]



[0209] Compound 11j was prepared from compound 1i and compound 11i by a similar method of preparing compound 9j in Example 14. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1932.5.

Example 18. Preparation of Compound 11k

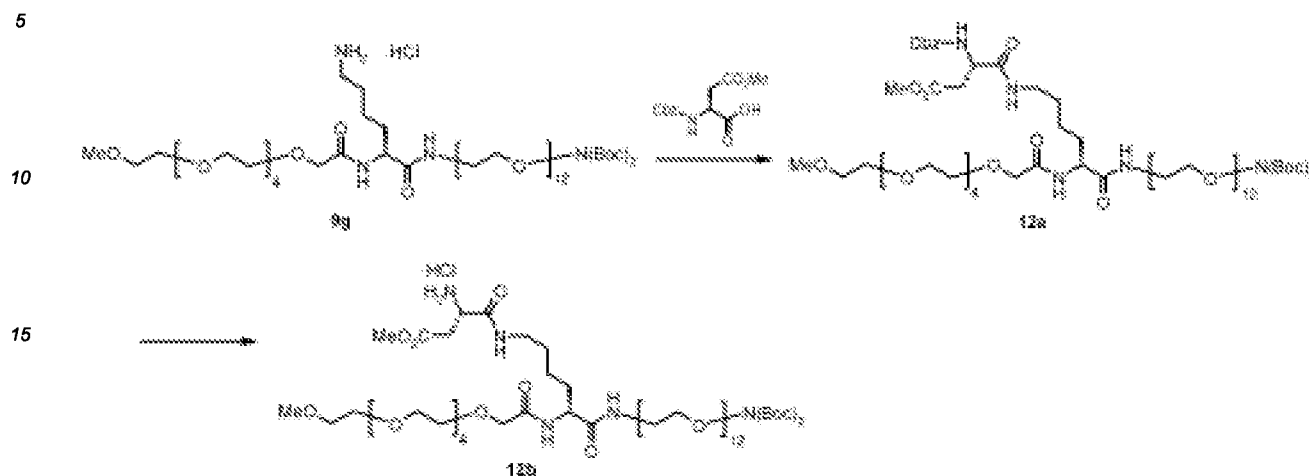
[0210]



[0211] Compound 11k was prepared from compound 1j and compound 11i by a similar method of preparing compound 9j in Example 14. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1947.1.

Example 19. Preparation of Compound 12c

[0212]

Preparation of Compound 12a

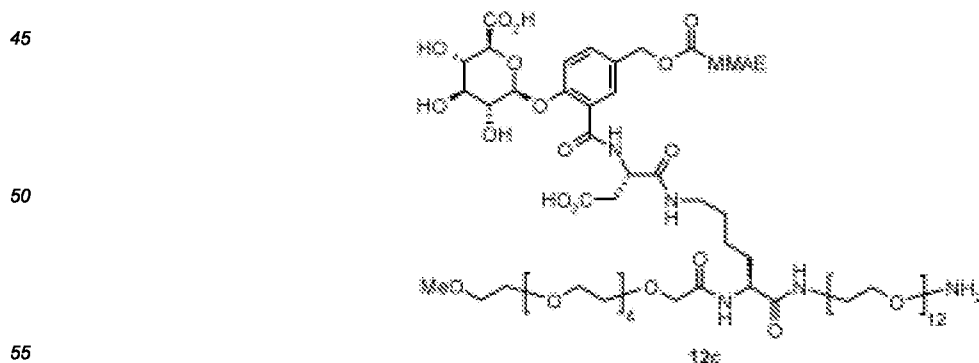
[0213] DIPEA (0.13 mL, 0.77 mmol) and HBTU (110 mg, 0.35 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **9g** (235 mg, 0.1929 mmol) and Z-Asp(OMe)-OH (54 mg, 0.212 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (7 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (7 mL) and brine (7 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **12a** (260 mg, 93 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.07 (t, 1H), 7.62 (t, 1H), 7.54-7.52 (m, 1H), 5.73 (s, 2H), 4.27-4.25 (q, 1H), 3.96 (t, 2H), 3.88 (s, 2H), 3.82 (s, 2H), 3.58-3.48 (m, 52H), 3.19-3.18 (m, 3H), 3.04-3.03 (m, 3H), 1.44 (s, 18H), 1.39-1.37 (m, 3H), 1.21-1.19 (m, 3H). ELMS m/z: [M+H-2Boc]⁺ 1031.6.

Preparation of Compound 12b

[0214] To a stirred mixture of compound **12a** (260 mg, 0.179 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 72 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.040 mL, 0.179 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **12b** (242 mg, 100 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 625.0, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 525.0, [M+H-2Boc]⁺ 424.9.

Preparation of Compound 12c

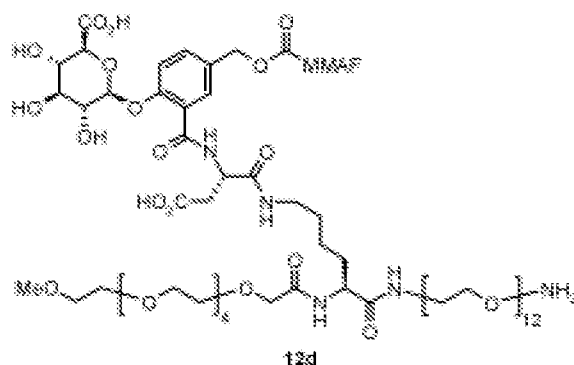
[0215]



[0216] Compound **12c** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **12b** by a similar method of preparing compound **9j** in Example 14. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1083.5.

Example 20. Preparation of Compound 12d

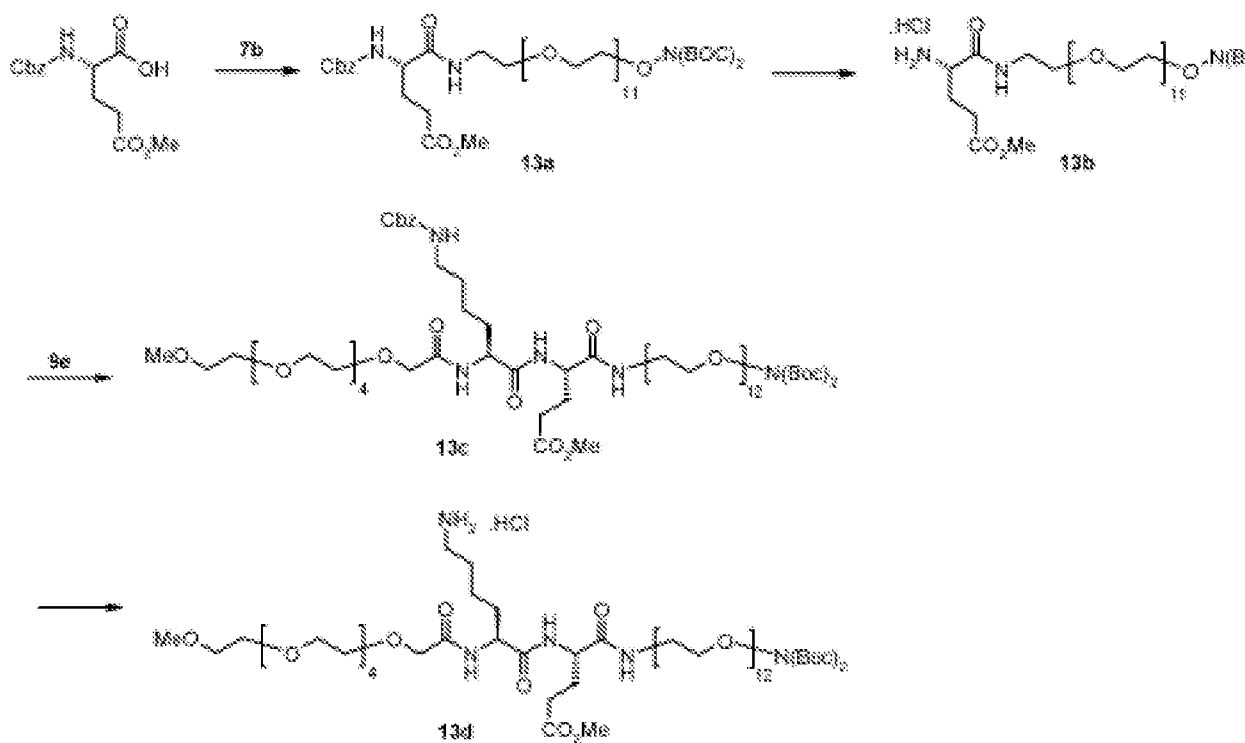
[0217]



[0218] Compound 12d was prepared from compound 1j and compound 12b by a similar method of preparing compound 9j in Example 14. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1090.5.

Example 21. Preparation of Compound 13e

[0219]



Preparation of Compound 13a

[0220] DIPEA (0.22 mL, 1.25 mmol) and HBTU (356 mg, 0.94 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of Z-Glu(OMe)-OH (222 mg, 0.75 mmol) and compound 7b (500 mg, 0.62 mmol) in DMF (5.0 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 . The reaction mixture was diluted with water (200 mL) and extracted with EA (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound 13a (370 mg, 57 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.34 (br, 5H), 6.73 (br, 1H), 5.72 (d, $J=7.6$ Hz, 1H), 5.06 (br, 2H), 4.28-4.18 (m, 1H), 4.07 (t, $J=4.4$ Hz, 2H), 3.76-3.71 (m, 2H), 3.70-3.50 (m, 45H), 3.48-3.42 (m, 2H), 2.53-2.36 (m, 2H), 2.20-2.08 (m, 1H), 2.00-1.88 (m, 1H),

1.53 (s, 18H). EI-MS m/z : $[M+Na]^+$ 1061.2.

Preparation of Compound 13b

[0221] 4N HCl in 1,4-dioxane (0.08 mL, 0.32 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of the compound **13a** (370 mg, 0.35 mmol), and Pd/C (38 mg) in MeOH (8 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring at room temperature for 20 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (400 mL). The filtrate was concentrated, producing compound **13b** (301 mg, 90 %) as yellow liquid, which was used without further purification. ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 8.41 (br, 1H), 8.09 (br, 3H), 4.13 (br, 1H), 3.85-3.56 (m, 51H), 2.55 (br, 2H), 2.38-2.18 (m, 2H), 1.53 (s, 18H). EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 905.0.

Preparation of Compound 13c

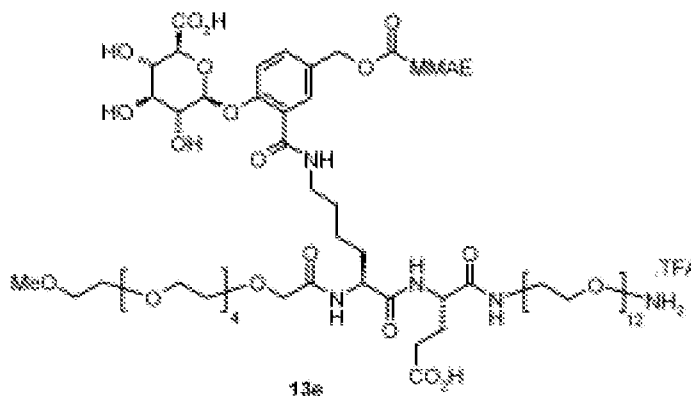
[0222] DIPEA (0.165 mL, 0.96 mmol) and HBTU (279 mg, 0.74 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture compound **13b** (300 mg, 0.32 mmol) and compound **9e** (366 mg, 0.64 mmol) in DMF (5.0 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 . The reaction mixture was diluted with water (200 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **13c** (290 mg, 62 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.40-7.32 (m, 7H), 7.00 (br, 1H), 6.73 (br, 1H), 5.07 (br, 2H), 4.44-4.36 (m, 2H), 4.07 (t, $J=4.8$ Hz, 2H), 4.02 (br, 2H), 3.73 (t, $J = 5.2$ Hz, 2H), 3.71-3.52 (m, 68H), 3.24-3.14 (m, 2H), 2.52-2.34 (m, 3H), 2.18-2.06 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.82 (m, 4H), 1.76-1.64 (m, 3H), 1.53 (s, 18H). EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1459.7.

Preparation of Compound 13d

[0223] Pd/C (21 mg) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **13c** (290 mg, 0.19 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring at room temperature for 20 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (400mL). The filtrate was concentrated, producing compound **13d** (247 mg, 94 %) as yellow liquid, which was used without further purification. ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 8.20 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 1H), 7.74 (br, 1H), 7.30 (br, 1H), 4.66-4.48 (m, 2H), 4.07 (t, $J = 5.2$ Hz, 2H), 4.01 (br, 2H), 3.74-3.62 (m, 70H), 3.57-3.53 (m, 2H), 3.04-2.98 (m, 2H), 2.24-2.15 (m, 2H), 2.14-2.06 (m, 2H), 1.99-1.86 (m, 4H), 1.84-1.74 (m, 2H), 1.53 (s, 18H). ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1325.5.

Preparation of Compound 13e

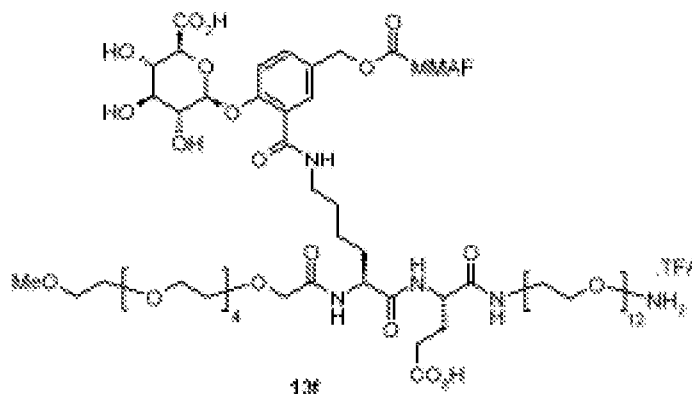
[0224]



[0225] Compound **13e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **13d** by a similar method of preparing compound **9j** in Example 14. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 2181.5.

Example 22. Preparation of Compound 13f

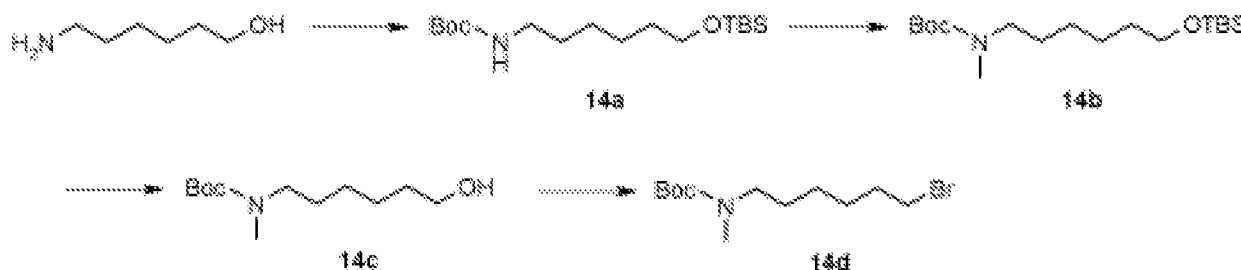
[0226]



[0227] Compound **13f** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **13d** by a similar method of preparing compound **9j** in Example 14. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 2195.5.

Example 23. Preparation of Compound **14m**

[0228]



Preparation of Compound **14a**

[0229] To a solution of 6-amino-1-hexanol (5.0 g, 42.6 mmol) in DCM (30 mL) was added di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (9.3 g, 42.6 mmol) at room temperature. After stirring for 18 hours, triethylamine (8.7 mL, 63.9 mmol) and *t*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (7.7 g, 51.2 mmol) were added to the reaction mixture at 0 °C. After 24 hours at room temperature, the reaction mixture diluted with saturated aq. NH_4Cl (200 mL). The resulting mixture was extracted with EtOAc (100 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (100 mL) and dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14a** (12 g, 84 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.50 (br s, 1H), 3.58 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 3.10 (d, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 1.72-1.20 (m, 17H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.04 (s, 6H).

Preparation of Compound **14b**

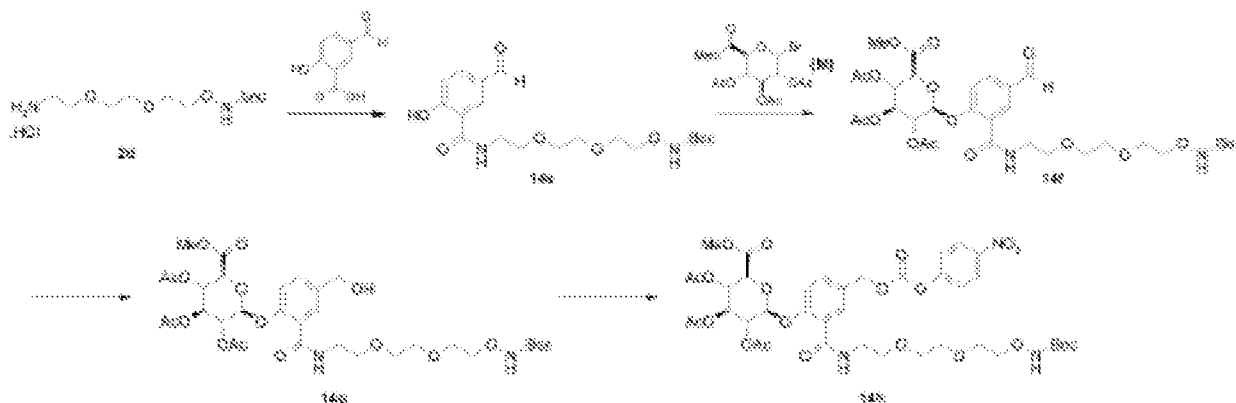
[0230] To a solution of compound **14a** (6.0 g, 18.1 mmol) in THF (30 mL) were added NaH (60 % in oil, 2.4 g, 54.2 mmol) and methyl iodide (3.4 mL, 54.2 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 14 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14b** (4.3 g, 69 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 3.59 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.17 (br s, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 1.62-1.21 (m, 17H), 0.88 (s, 9H), 0.04 (s, 6H).

Preparation of Compound **14c**

[0231] To a solution of compound **14b** (4.3 g, 12.4 mmol) in THF (15 mL) was added TBAF (1 M in THF, 15 mL, 14.9 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 5 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14c** (3.0 g, 98 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 3.63 (br s, 2H), 3.20 (br s, 2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 1.65-1.23 (m, 17H).

Preparation of Compound 14d

[0232] To a solution of compound **14c** (3.0 g, 12.9 mmol) in THF (30 mL) was added carbon tetrabromide (6.4 g, 19.4 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (5.1 g, 19.4 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. After 2 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered through silica gel and washed diethyl ether (100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated and purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14d** (3.3 g, 86 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.40 (t, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 2H), 3.19 (br s, 2H), 2.83 (s, 3H), 1.90-1.70 (m, 2H), 1.65-1.40 (m, 13H), 1.38-1.25 (m, 2H).



Preparation of Compound 14e

[0233] DIPEA (53.0 mL, 302.5 mmol) and EDC.HCl (35.7 g, 186.2 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **2d** (35.0 g, 116.4 mmol) and 5-formylsalicylic acid (21.3 g, 128.0 mmol) in DCM (1.6 L) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was diluted with saturated aq. NH₄Cl solution (1.5 L) and extracted DCM (2 x 1.5 L). The combined organic layers washed with brine (1.5 L) and dried anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14e** (28.2 g, 59 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 13.37 (br s, 1H), 9.86 (s, 1H), 8.20 (s, 1H), 8.07 (br s, 2H), 7.90 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 7.07 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.06-4.01 (m, 2H), 3.79-3.66 (m, 10H), 1.47 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 14f

[0234] To a solution of compound **14e** (28.0 g, 67.9 mmol) in MeCN (500 mL) were added compound **M** (29.7 g, 74.7 mmol), 4 Å molecular sieve (30 g) and Ag₂O (62.9 g, 272 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 12 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was concentrated, diluted with H₂O (800 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (1 L). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14f** (30.1 g, 61 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.99 (s, 1H), 8.54 (s, 1H), 7.99 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.68 (s, 1H), 7.44 (br s, 1H), 7.18 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.45-5.30 (m, 4H), 4.26 (d, *J* = 9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.02-3.97 (m, 2H), 3.80-3.55 (m, 13H), 2.06 (s, 9H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

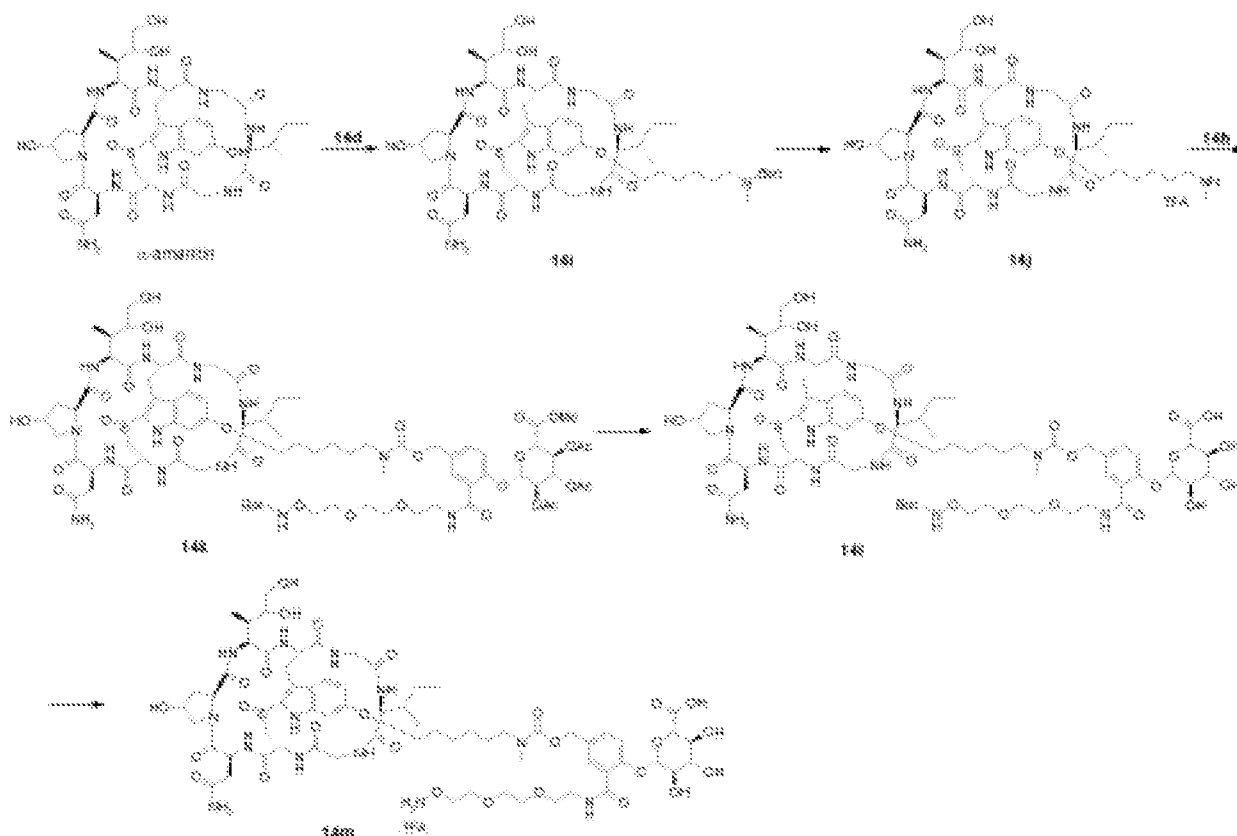
Preparation of Compound 14g

[0235] To a solution of compound **14f** (29.0 g, 39.8 mmol) in *i*-PrOH/CHCl₃ (90 mL/450 mL) was added silica gel (16.7 g) and NaBH₄ (3.70 g, 99.5 mmol) at 0 °C. After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was quenched with H₂O (500 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (1 L). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14g** (24.1 g, 83 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.98 (s, 1H), 7.72 (s, 1H), 7.46 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 7.41 (br, 1H), 7.04 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 5.41-5.24 (m, 4H), 4.67 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 4.19 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 3.99-3.93 (m, 2H), 3.79-3.65 (m, 12H), 3.59-3.50 (m, 1H), 2.08-2.00 (m, 10H), 1.46 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 14h

[0236] To a solution of compound **14g** (23.7 g, 31.5 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) were added bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (8.9 g, 29.3 mmol) and DIPEA (5.65 mL, 31.5 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (500 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (500 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 200 mL), dried over anhydrous MgSO₄,

filtered, and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **14h** (22.4 g, 77 %) as white foam. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.28 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 7.68 (br s, 1H), 7.52 (d, $J = 8.8$ Hz, 1H), 7.47 (br, 1H), 7.38 (d, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 7.08 (d, $J = 8.8$ Hz, 1H), 5.44-5.24 (m, 6H), 4.21 (d, $J = 9.6$ Hz, 1H), 4.00 (br s, 2H), 3.80-3.64 (m, 12 H), 3.64-3.54 (m, 1H), 2.06 (s, 9H), 1.47 (s, 9H).



Preparation of Compound **14i**

[0237] α -Amanitin (60.0 mg, 0.065 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (2 mL) and compound **14d** (114 mg, 0.39 mmol) and potassium tert-butoxide (0.065 mL, 0.065 mmol) were added at 0 °C under N_2 . After 4 hours at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with acetic acid. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **14i** (29 mg, 39 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M-Boc}]^+$ 1032.4.

Preparation of Compound **14j**

[0238] To a solution of compound **14i** (29 mg, 0.026 mmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added TFA (0.5 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N_2 flow and the resulting residue was purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **14j** (26 mg, 99 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1032.3, $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 1054.3.

Preparation of Compound **14k**

[0239] Compound **14j** (13 mg, 0.011 mmol), compound **14h** (10 mg, 0.011 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (0.3 mg, 0.002 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.2 mL) and DIPEA (0.004 mL, 0.023 mmol) were added. After stirring at room temperature for 24 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **14k** (11 mg, 54 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1788.1.

Preparation of Compound **14l**

[0240] To a solution of compound **14k** (11 mg, 0.006 mmol) in MeOH (0.2 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (1.3 mg, 0.03 mmol) in H_2O (0.2 mL) at -20 °C. After 1 hour at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with acetic acid. The resulting solution was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **14l**

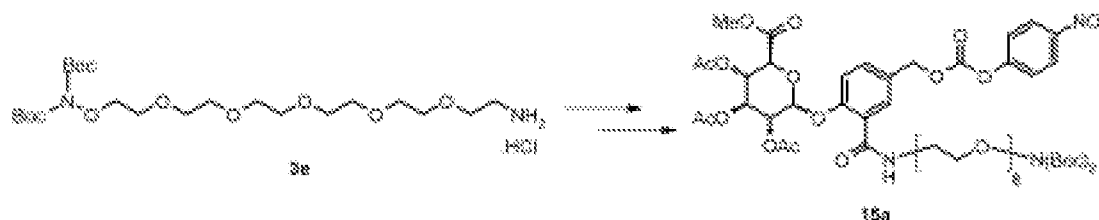
(7.5 mg, 75 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1648.6.

Preparation of Compound 14m

[0241] To a solution of compound **14l** (7.5 mg, 0.0045 mmol) in DCM (3 mL) was added TFA (0.5 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N_2 flow. Then the residue was purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **14m** (6.2 mg, 85 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$: 1548.5.

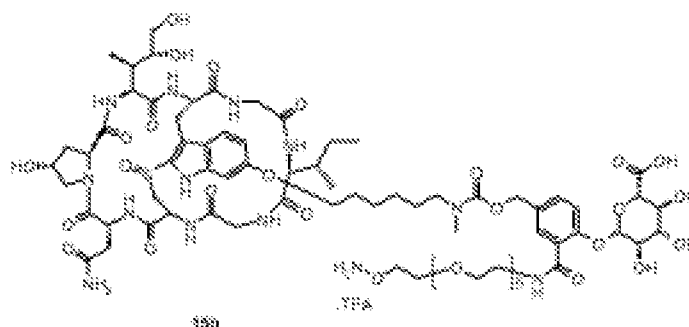
Example 24. Preparation of Compound 15b

[0242]



Preparation of Compound 15a

[0243] Compound **15a** was prepared from compound **3e** by a method similar to method of preparing compound **14h** of Example 23. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1128.3, $[M+H-Boc]^+$ 1028.3, $[M+H-2Boc]^+$ 928.2.

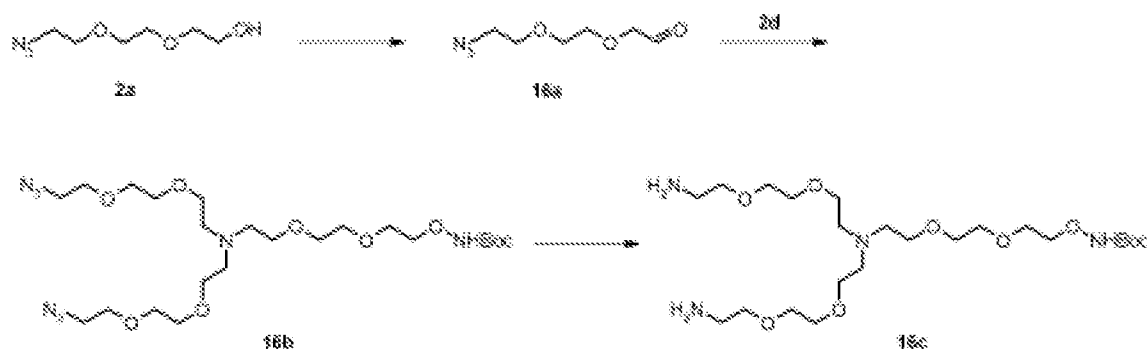


Preparation of Compound 15b

[0244] Compound **15b** was prepared from compound **14j** and compound **15a** by a method similar to method of preparing compound **14m** of Example 23. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1681.6.

Example 25. Preparation of Compound 16f

[0245]



Preparation of Compound 16a

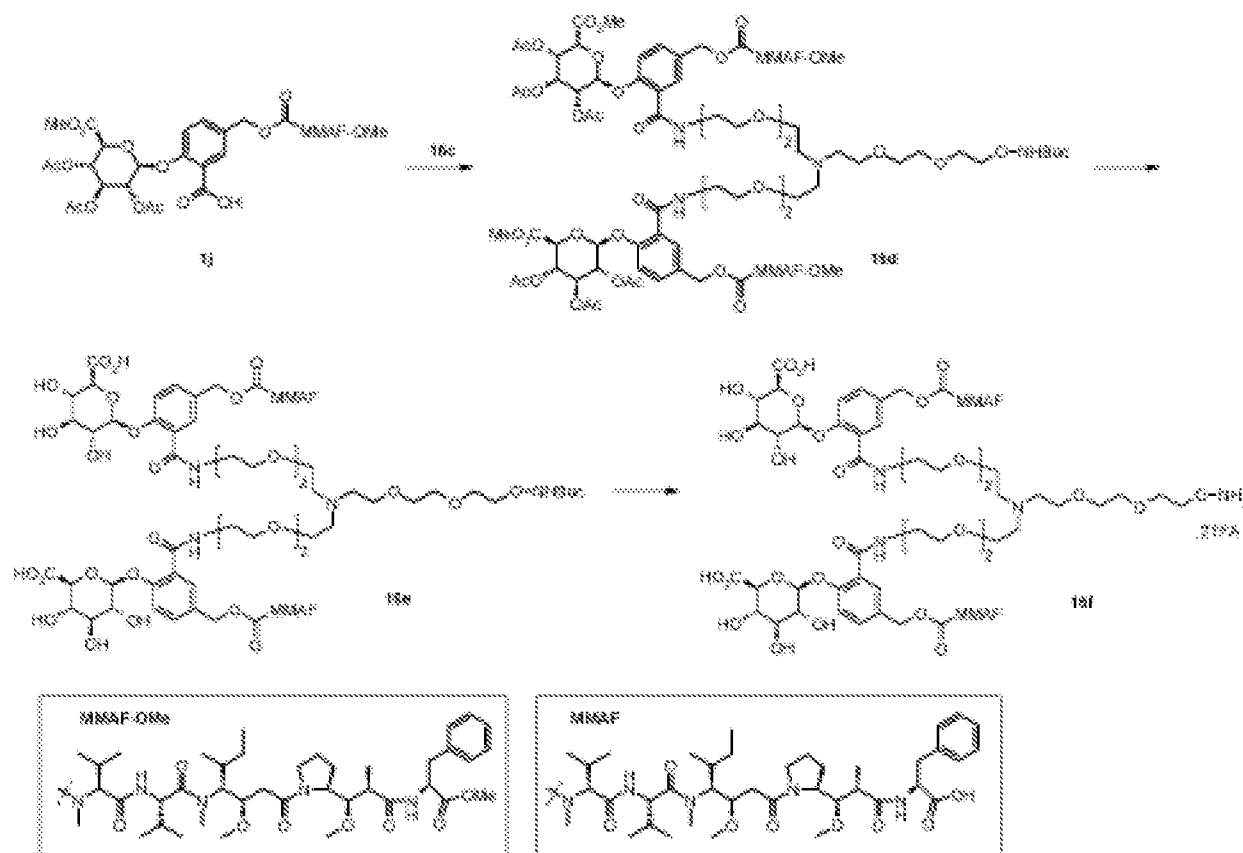
[0246] To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (2.8 mL, 32.5 mmol) in DCM (5 mL) DMSO (3.08 mL, 43.4 mmol) was added in DCM (15 mL) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 30 minutes. To this solution was added compound **2a** (3.8 g, 21.7 mmol) at -78 °C and stirred for 1 hour. Triethylamine (15.1 mL, 108 mmol) in DCM (20 mL) was added and then the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature, diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with DCM (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **16a** (1.8 g, 48 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.74 (s, 1H), 4.19 (s, 2H), 3.77-3.69 (m, 6H), 3.42 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 16b

[0247] To a solution of compound **16a** (1.0 g, 3.32 mmol) and compound **2d** (1.72 g, 9.96 mmol) in MeOH (15 mL) AcOH (0.19 mL, 3.32 mmol) was added at 0 °C. After stirring for 30 minutes at 0 °C, NaCNBH₃ (658 mg, 9.96 mmol) was added and allowed to warm to room temperature over 2 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and then extracted with DCM (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **16b** (800 mg, 41 %) as light yellowish oil. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.78 (brs, 1H), 4.01 (m, 2H), 3.69-3.65 (m, 24H), 3.39 (m, 4H), 3.04 (m, 6H), 1.47 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 16c

[0248] To a solution of compound **16b** (350 mg, 0.60 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) Pd/C (10 wt. %, 300 mg) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 8 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). Concentration provided compound **16c** as colorless oil (300 mg, 94 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.02 (m, 2H), 3.71 (m, 2H), 3.65-3.55 (m, 22H), 2.92 (m, 4H), 2.76 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 6H), 1.47 (s, 9H). ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 527.6.



Preparation of Compound 16d

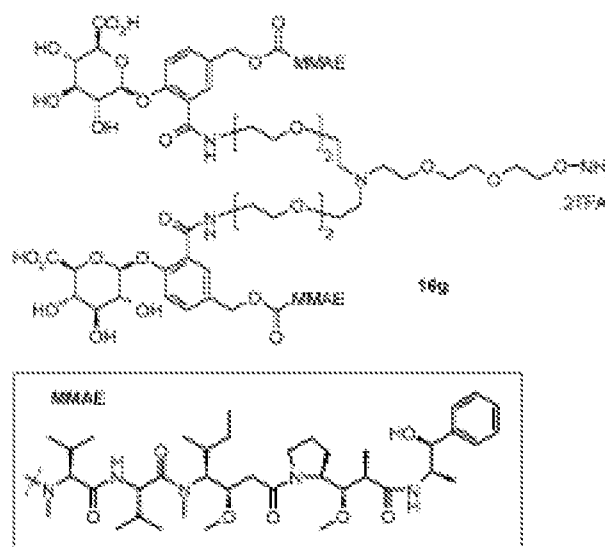
[0249] DIPEA (0.40 mL, 2.24 mmol) and PyBOP (711 mg, 1.34 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 1j (1.57 g, 1.23 mmol) and compound 16c (300 mg, 0.56 mmol) in DMF (15 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted H₂O (200 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (5 mL/5 mL) and purified by HPLC produced the compound 16d (1.57 g, 91.8 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1502.7.

Preparation of Compound 16f

[0250] To a solution of compound 16d (1.10 g, 0.36 mmol) in MeOH/THF (5 mL/10 mL) NaOH (175 mg, 4.32 mmol) was added dropwise in H₂O (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 3 hours at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted to pH 4 using 2 N aq. HCl and concentrated. The residue was diluted with DCM (12 mL) and TFA (3 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. The residue was dissolved in H₂O/MeCN (7.5 mL/7.5 mL) and purified by HPLC produced the compound 16f (432 mg, 46 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1298.5.

Example 26. Preparation of Compound 16g

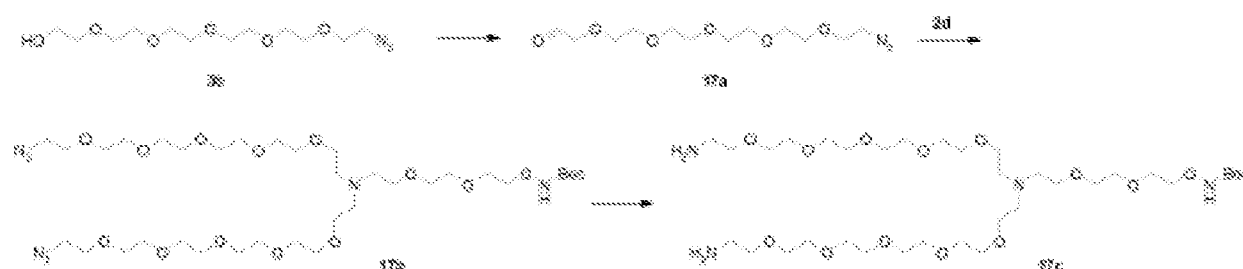
[0251]



[0252] Compound 16g was prepared from compound 1i and compound 16c by a similar method of preparing compound 16f in Example 25. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1284.5.

Example 27. Preparation of Compound 17d

[0253]



Preparation of Compound 17a

[0254] To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (0.62 mL, 7.3 mmol) in DCM (4 mL) DMSO (1.04 mL, 14.6 mmol) was added in DCM (10 mL) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 30 minutes. To this solution was added compound **3b** (1.5 g, 4.88 mmol) at -78 °C and stirred for 1 hour. Triethylamine (2.72 mL, 19.50 mmol) in DCM (7 mL) was added and then the reaction mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature. After concentration under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **17a** (1.23 g, 82 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.73 (s, 1H), 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.75-3.61 (m, 18H), 3.39 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 17b

[0255] NaCNBH₃ (257 mg, 4.09 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **17a** (1.30 g, 4.25 mmol) and compound **2d** (492 mg, 1.63 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was then gradually heated up to room temperature over 2 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/ MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **17b** (620 mg, 45 %).

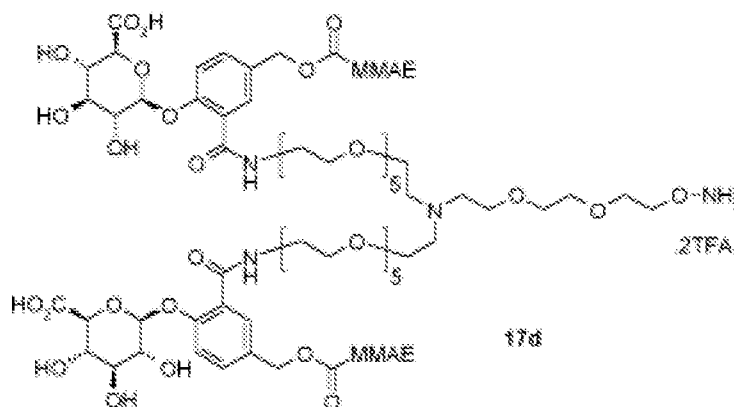
¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.96 (br, 1H), 3.79 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2H) 3.59 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 4H), 3.56-3.46 (m, 38H), 3.44-3.37 (m, 10H), 2.66-2.56 (m, 6H), 1.39 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 17c

[0256] To a solution of compound **17b** (300 mg, 0.35 mmol) in MeOH (7 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 38 mg). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (400 mL). Concentration provided compound **17c** as colorless oil (253 mg, 90 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 3.79 (t, *J*=4.4Hz, 2H), 3.55-3.45 (m, 38H), 3.42 (t, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 10H), 2.66-2.56 (m, 10H), 1.39 (s, 9H). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 791.0.

Preparation of Compound 17d

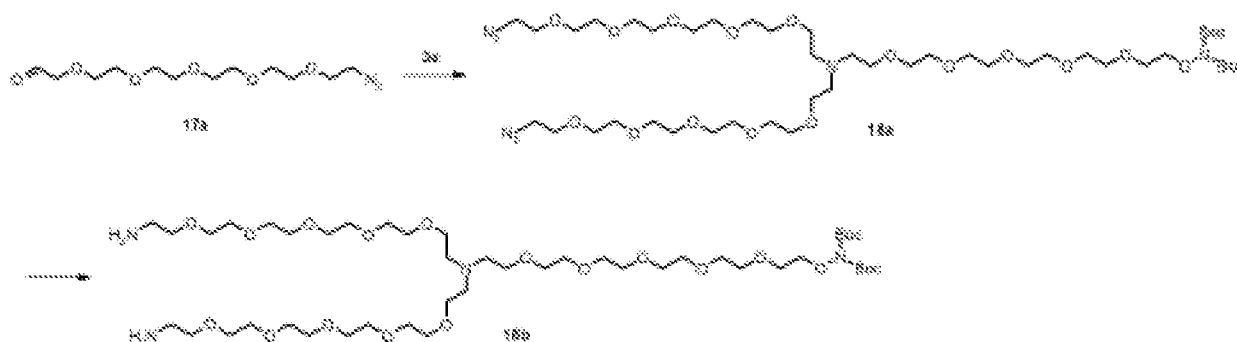
[0257]



[0258] Compound **17d** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **17c** by a similar method of preparing compound **16f** in Example 25. ELMS *m/z*: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1415.6.

Example 28. Preparation of Compound 18c

[0259]

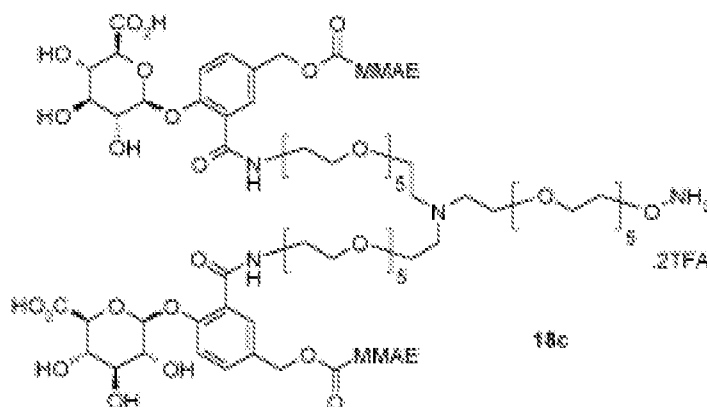


Preparation of Compound 18a

[0260] NaCNBH₃ (197 mg, 3.14 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **17a** (998 mg, 3.26 mmol) and compound **3e** (670 mg, 1.25 mmol) in MeOH (4 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was then gradually heated up to room temperature over 2 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **18a** (668 mg, 49%). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 3.97 (m, 2H), 3.63-3.57 (m, 6H), 3.56-3.44 (m, 46H), 3.44-3.36 (m, 12H), 2.66-2.61 (m, 6H), 1.45 (s, 18H).

Preparation of Compound 18b

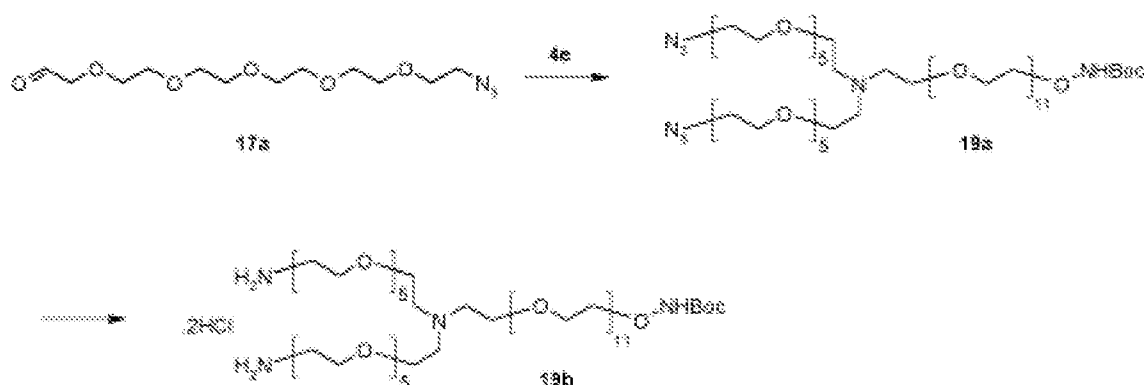
[0261] To a solution of compound **18a** (60 mg, 0.055 mmol) in MeOH (1.2 mL) Pd/C (10 wt. %, 6 mg) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (400 mL). Concentration provided compound **18b** (55 mg, 96 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 3.97 (m, 2H), 3.62-3.57 (m, 4H), 3.54-3.45 (m, 50H), 3.45-3.39 (m, 10H), 2.66-2.61 (m, 10H), 1.46 (s, 18H). ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1023.3.



[0262] Compound **18c** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **18b** by a similar method of preparing compound **16f** in Example 25. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1481.7.

Example 29. Preparation of Compound 19c

[0263]



Preparation of Compound **19a**

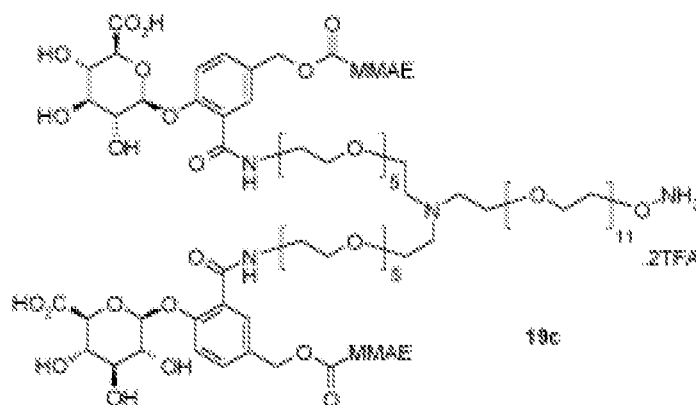
[0264] NaCNBH₃ (197 mg, 3.14 mmol) was added to a stirred mixture of compound **17a** (118 mg, 0.16 mmol) and compound **4e** (232 mg, 0.76 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was then gradually heated up to room temperature over 2 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/ MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **19a** (135 mg, 68 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 7.72 (br s, 1H) 4.02 (t, 2H), 3.72-3.53 (m, 86H), 3.39 (t, 4H), 2.77 (bs, 4H), 1.47 (s, 9H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1239.6.

Preparation of Compound **19b**

[0265] To a solution of compound **19a** (133 mg, 0.107 mmol) in MeOH (2 mL) Pd/C (10 wt. %, 26 mg) was added and HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.054 mL, 0.21 mmol) at 0 °C. After stirring at room temperature for 40 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). Concentration provided compound **19b** (132 mg, 97 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 7.79 (s, 1H), 4.06-4.02 (m, 8H), 3.88 (m, 2H), 3.73-3.64 (m, 80H), 3.22 (s, 4H), 1.47 (s, 9H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺: 1187.5.

Preparation of Compound **19c**

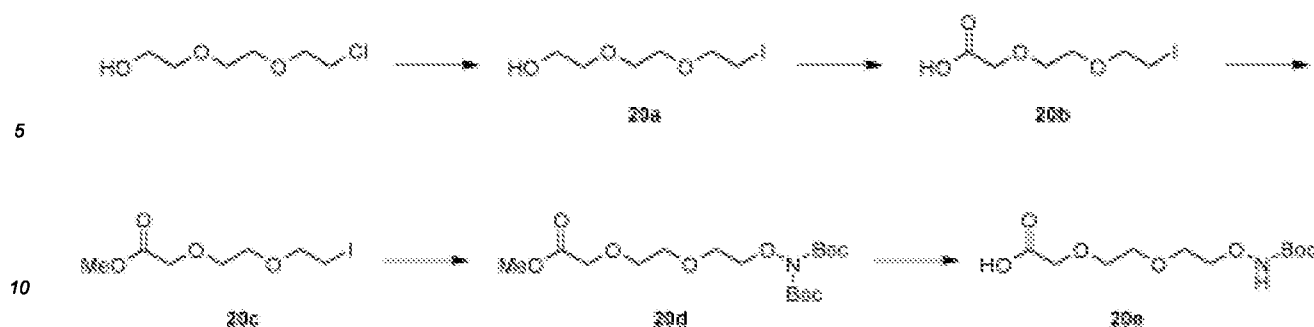
[0266]



[0267] Compound **19c** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **19b** by a similar method of preparing compound **16f** in Example 25. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1614.5.

Example 30. Preparation of Compound **20q**

[0268]



Preparation of Compound 20a

[0269] To a solution of 2-(2-(2-chloroethoxy)ethoxy)ethanol (5.0 g, 29.6 mmol) in acetone (30 mL) was added NaI (13.3 g, 88.9 mmol). The reaction mixture was refluxed for 12 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20a** (7.0 g, 91 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.80-3.73 (m, 4H), 3.72-3.65 (m, 4H), 3.63-3.61 (m, 2H), 3.27 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 20b

[0270] To a solution of compound **20a** (7.0 g, 26.9 mmol) in acetone (200 mL) at 0 °C Jones reagent (20 mL) was added. After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H₂O (150 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20b** (7.0 g, 94 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.22 (s, 2H), 3.85-3.70 (m, 6H), 3.35-3.25 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 20c

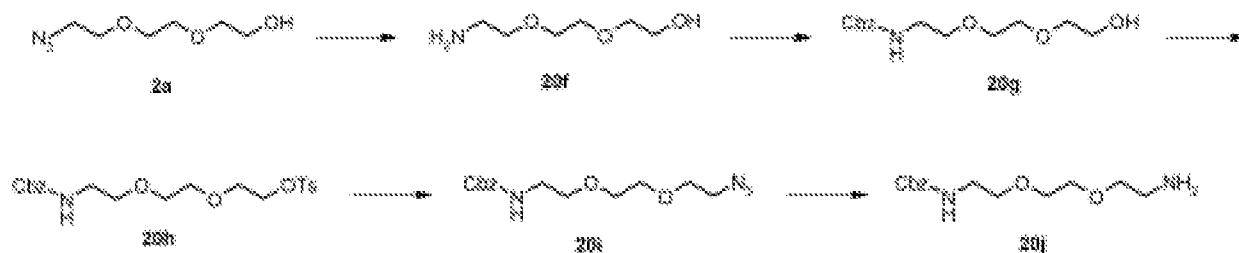
[0271] To a solution of compound **20b** (7.0 g, 25.5 mmol) in MeOH (70 mL) oxalyl chloride (3.2 mL, 38.3 mmol) was added at 0 °C under N₂. After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **20c** (5.7 g, 77 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.19 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.67 (m, 9H), 3.27 (t, J = 6.8 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 20d

[0272] To a solution of compound **20c** (2.5 g, 8.67 mmol) and N,N-diBoc-hydroxylamine (2.6 g, 11.2 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) was added NaH (60 % in oil, 454 mg, 10.4 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. After 15 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20d** (1.87 g, 73 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.08 (m, 2H), 3.78-3.65 (m, 9H), 1.53 (s, 18H).

Preparation of Compound 20e

[0273] To a solution of compound **20d** (1.87 g, 6.38 mmol) in THF/MeOH/H₂O (45 mL/15 mL/15 mL) NaOH (600 mg, 15.9 mmol) was added at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. Then the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with 1 N aqueous HCl. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The compound **20e** (1.6 g, 90 %) was produced as colorless oil, and it was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.08-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.80-3.67 (m, 6H), 1.48 (s, 9H).



Preparation of Compound **20f**

[0274] Pd/C (10 wt. %, 1.0 g) was added to a solution of compound **2a** (6.7 g, 38.2 mmol) in MeOH (38 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 8 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). Concentration provided compound **20f** (5.6 g, 99 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.95-3.25 (m, 12H), 2.90 (s, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **20g**

[0275] Benzyl chloroformate (6 mL, 42.2 mmol) were slowly added to a solution of compound **20f** (5.6 g, 38.2 mmol) and triethylamine (8 mL, 57.6 mmol) in THF (200 mL) at 0 °C for 30 minutes under N₂. After stirring for 1 hour at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was concentrated and the crude product was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **20g** (5.7 g, 53 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.20 (m, 5H), 5.61 (br s, 1H), 5.07 (s, 2H), 3.85-3.20 (m, 12H).

Preparation of Compound **20h**

[0276] To a solution of compound **20g** (2.7 g, 9.53 mM) in DCM (30 mL) were added triethylamine (1.9 mL, 12.3 mmol) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (2.3 g, 10.4 mmol) at room temperature under N₂. After 8 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20h** (3.51 g, 84 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.78 (d, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 7.45-7.25 (m, 7H), 5.20 (br s, 1H), 5.09 (s, 2H), 4.20-4.05 (m, 2H), 3.75-3.25 (m, 10H), 2.43 (s, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **20i**

[0277] A solution of compound **20h** (3.51 g, 8.02 mmol) and NaN₃ (3.8 g, 57.6 mmol) in DMF (27 mL) was heated at 100 °C for 15 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20i** (2.05 g, 83 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 5H), 5.20 (br s, 1H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 12H).

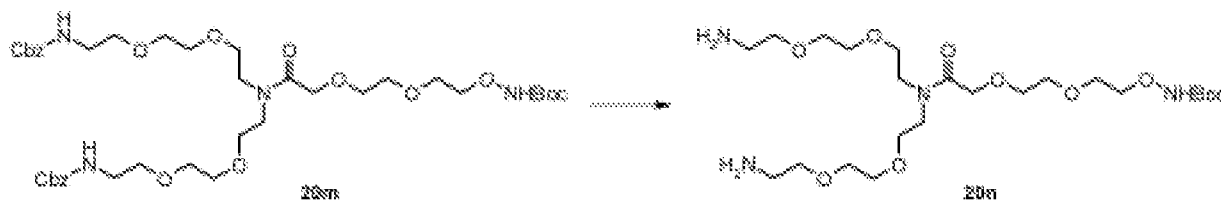
Preparation of Compound **20j**

[0278] Triphenylphosphine (2.09 g, 7.97 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **20i** (2.05 g, 6.64 mmol) in THF (27 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 2 hours under N₂, H₂O (0.6 mL, 33.2 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was refluxed for 3 hours. Then the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **20j** (1.78 g, 95 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 5H), 5.63 (br s, 1H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 10H), 2.88 (s, 2H).

1)



2)



Preparation of Compound 20k

[0279] To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (1.4 mL, 15.9 mmol) in DCM (14 mL) was added DMSO (2.3 mL, 31.9 mmol) in DCM (28 mL) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 30 minutes. To this solution was added compound **20g** (3.01 g, 10.6 mmol) at -78°C . After stirring for 1 hour at -78°C to 0°C , triethylamine (7.4 mL, 53.1 mmol) was added and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into H_2O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO_4 . Filtration and concentration produced the compound **20k** (2.6 g), which was used without further purification. $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.70 (s, 1H), 7.45-7.25 (m, 5H), 5.25 (br s, 1H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 10H).

Preparation of Compound 20l

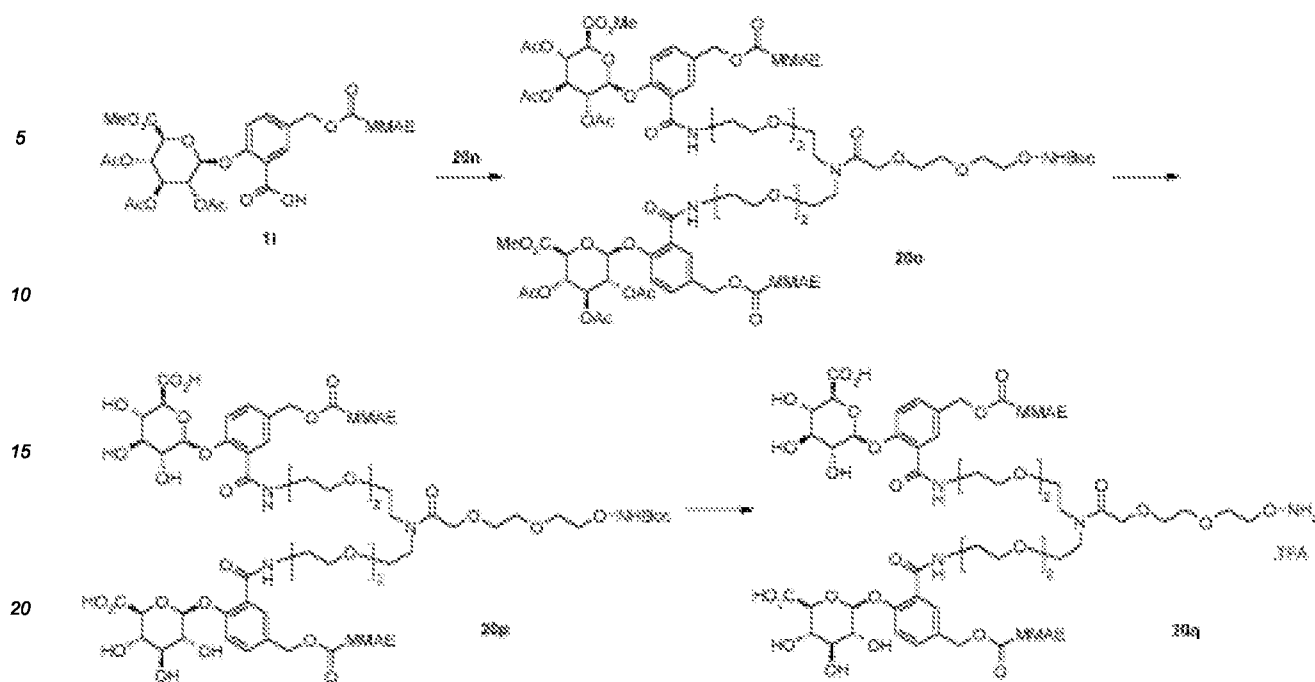
[0280] To a solution of compound **20j** (1.78 g, 6.30 mmol) and compound **20k** (2.13 g, 7.56 mmol) in MeOH (63 mL) was added NaCNBH_3 (674 mg, 10.7 mmol) at room temperature under N_2 . After 3 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20l** (2.01 g, 58 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 10H), 5.60 (br s, 2H), 5.03 (s, 4H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 20H), 2.81 (s, 4H).

Preparation of Compound 20m

[0281] DIPEA (0.4 mL, 2.28 mmol) and PyBOP (713 mg, 1.36 mmol) were added to a stirred solution of compound **20l** (500 mg, 0.91 mmol) and compound **20e** (306 mg, 1.09 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 6 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **20m** (318 mg, 43 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 10H), 5.47 (br s, 1H), 5.37 (br s, 1H), 5.09 (s, 4H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 34H), 1.46 (s, 9H). ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 808.9.

Preparation of Compound 20n

[0282] To a solution of compound **20m** (318 mg, 0.39 mmol) in MeOH (30 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 1.0 g). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). Concentration provided compound **20n** (180 mg) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 541.2.



Preparation of Compound 20o

[0283] DIPEA (0.034 mL, 0.19 mmol) and PyBOP (63 mg, 0.12 mmol) were added to a stirred solution of compound **11** (130 mg, 0.10 mmol) and compound **20n** (26 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring at 0 °C for 30 minutes, the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature over 20 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The organic layers were combined, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **20o** (28 mg, 10 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1481.5, 1/2[M+Na]⁺ 1503.8.

Preparation of Compound 20p

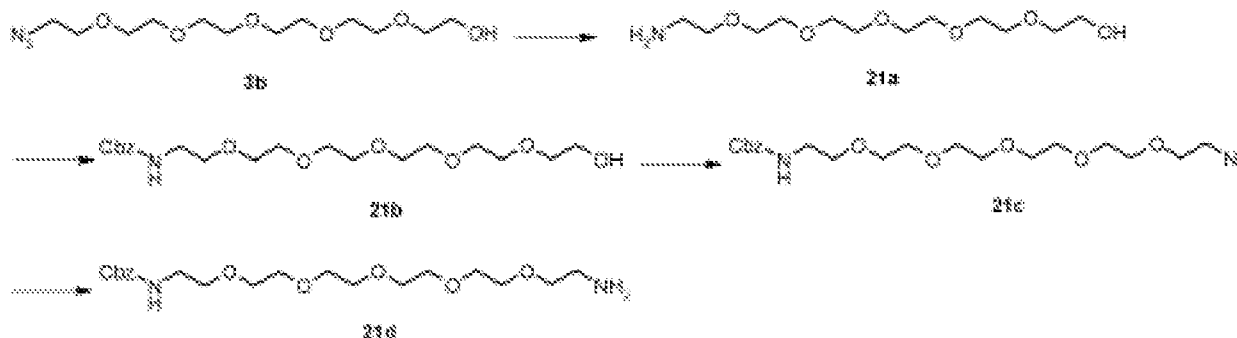
[0284] To a solution of compound **20o** (28 mg, 0.009 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (2 mg, 0.047 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at -5 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at -5 °C for 1 hour. After the reaction was completed, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with acetic acid. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **20p** (16 mg, 67 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺: 1341.4.

Preparation of Compound 20q

[0285] To a solution of compound **20p** (16 mg, 0.0059 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added TFA (0.2 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **20q** (8.5 mg, 56 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ : 1291.3.

Example 31. Preparation of Compound 21i

[0286]



Preparation of Compound **21a**

[0287] To a solution of compound **3b** (9.0 g, 29.2 mmol) in MeOH (146 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 3.0 g) and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours under hydrogen. Then the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). Concentration provided compound **21a** (8.2 g, 100 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.80-3.60 (m, 24H), 3.01 (t, *J* = 4.8 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **21b**

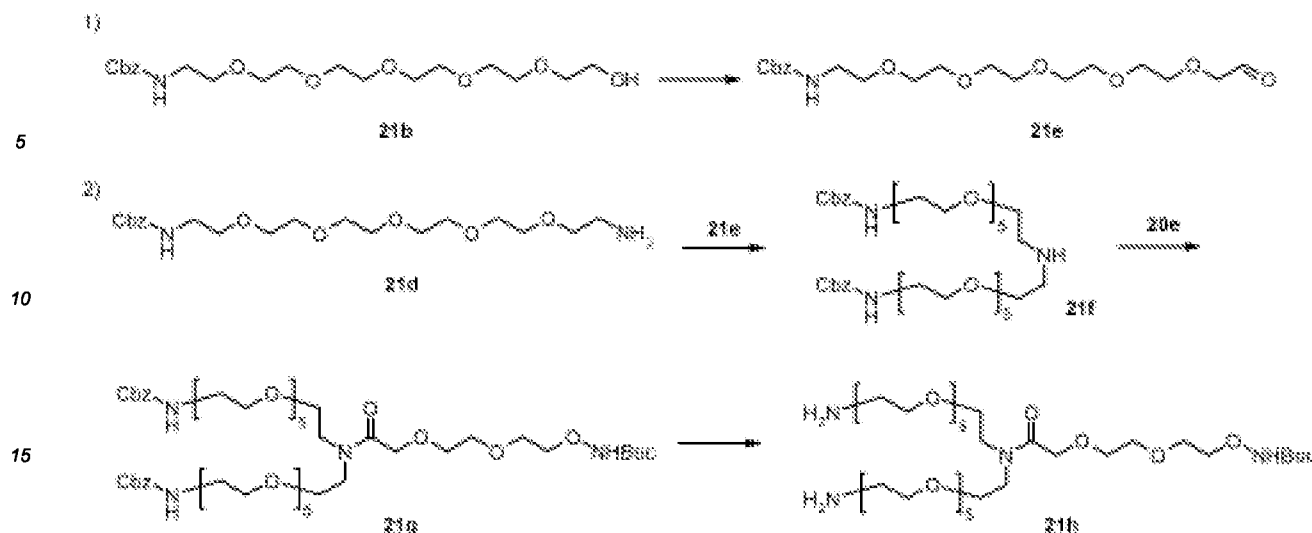
[0288] To a solution of compound **21a** (8.24 g, 29.2 mmol) in THF (190 mL) was added triethylamine (6.1 mL, 43.9 mmol) and benzyl chloroformate (4.6 mL 32.2 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **21b** (5.59 g, 46 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.20 (m, 5H), 5.61 (br s, 1H), 5.09 (s, 2H), 3.85-3.50 (m, 22H), 3.39 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **21c**

[0289] To a solution of compound **21b** (3.09 g, 7.43 mmol) in THF (75 mL) were added 4-methylmorpholine (1.1 mL, 9.66 mmol) and methanesulfonic anhydride (1.43 g, 8.18 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. After 5 hours at 0 °C, NaN₃ (969 mg, 14.9 mmol) and DMF (20 mL) were added. After 16 hours under reflux, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **21c** (2.62 g, 80 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.20 (m, 5 H), 5.45 (br s, 1 H), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.85-3.25 (m, 24 H).

Preparation of Compound **21d**

[0290] Triphenylphosphine (1.87 g, 7.13 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **21c** (2.62 g, 5.94 mmol) in THF (30 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 2 hours under N₂, H₂O (0.54 mL, 29.7 mmol) was added and the reaction mixture was refluxed for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **21d** (2.47 g, 95 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 5 H), 5.63 (br s, 1 H), 5.09 (s, 2 H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 22 H), 3.00-2.80 (m, 2 H).



Preparation of Compound 21e

[0291] To a stirred solution of oxalyl chloride (0.78 mL, 9.02 mmol) in DCM (14 mL) was added DMSO (1.3 mL, 18.1 mmol) in DCM (6 mL) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 30 minutes. To this solution was added compound **21b** (2.5 g, 6.01 mmol) at -78 °C. After stirred for 1 hour at -78 °C, triethylamine (4.2 mL, 30.1 mmol) was added and the reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **21e** (2.29 g), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.70 (s, 1H), 7.45-7.25 (m, 5H), 5.25 (br s, 1H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 24H).

Preparation of Compound 21f

[0292] To a solution of compound **21d** (2.47 g, 5.95 mmol) and compound **21e** (2.29 g, 5.52 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was added NaCNBH₃ (530 mg, 8.44 mmol) at room temperature under N₂. After 3 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **21f** (2.05 g, 51 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 10H), 5.47 (br s, 1H), 5.37 (br s, 1H), 5.09 (s, 4H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 48H).

Preparation of Compound 21g

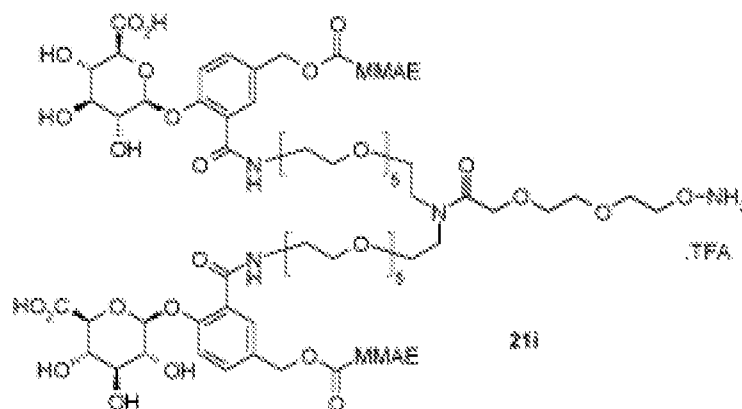
[0293] DIPEA (0.27 mL, 1.53 mmol) and HBTU (350 mg, 0.92 mmol) were added to a stirred solution of compound **21f** (380 mg, 0.61 mmol) and compound **20e** (206 mg, 0.73 mmol) in DMF (6 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 6 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted water (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **21g** (210 mg, 42 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.45-7.25 (m, 10 H), 5.47 (br s, 1 H), 5.37 (br s, 1 H), 5.09 (s, 4 H), 3.80-3.25 (m, 34 H), 1.46 (s, 9 H).

Preparation of Compound 21h

[0294] To a solution of compound **21g** (210 mg, 0.19 mmol) in MeOH (30 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 1.0 g) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (50 mL). Concentration provided compound **21h** (30 mg) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 805.2, [M+Na]⁺ 827.2.

Preparation of Compound 21i

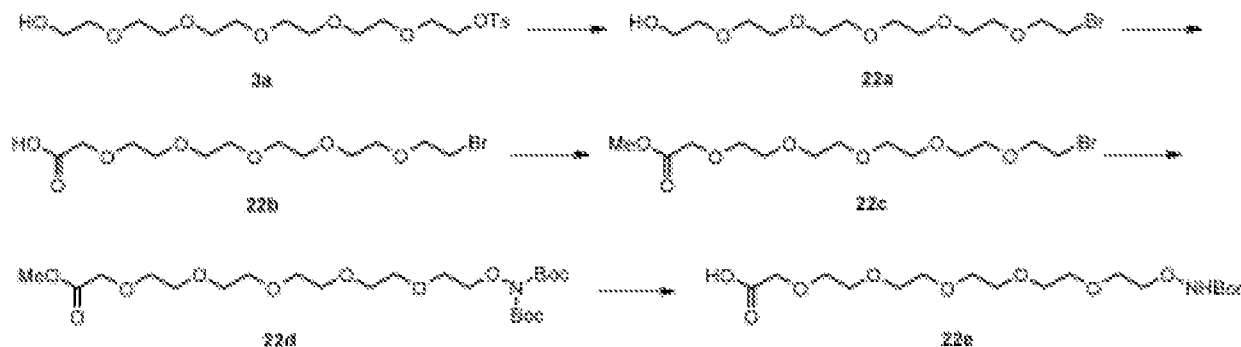
[0295]



[0296] Compound **21i** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **21h** by a similar method of preparing compound **20q** in Example 30. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1423.7, $1/2[M+Na]^+$ 1445.2.

Example 32. Preparation of Compound **22h**

[0297]



Preparation of Compound **22a**

[0298] To a solution of compound **3a** (8.0 g, 18.3 mmol) in THF (50 mL) was added LiBr (7.9 g, 91.6 mmol) at room temperature. After stirring for 17 hours under reflux, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **22a** (3.2 g, 50 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 3.95-3.50 (m, 24H).

Preparation of Compound **22b**

[0299] To a solution of compound **22a** (3.2 g, 12.3 mmol) in acetone (20 mL) at 0 °C was added Jones reagent (20 mL). After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **22b** (3.2 g, 72 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.95-3.30 (m, 20H).

Preparation of Compound **22c**

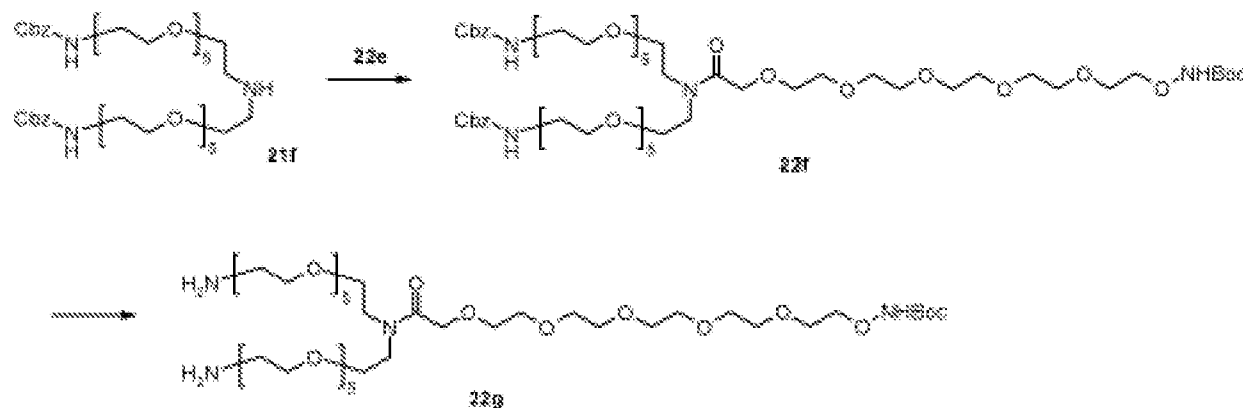
[0300] To a solution of compound **22b** (3.2 g, 8.90 mmol) in MeOH (30 mL) was added oxalyl chloride (1.15 mL, 13.3 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **22c** (2.7 g, 81 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 3.80-3.60 (m, 21H), 3.47 (t, $J = 6.4$ Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 22d

[0301] NaH (60 % in oil, 378 mg, 8.63 mmol) was added to a solution of compound **22c** (2.7 g, 7.23 mmol) and *N,N*-diBoc-hydroxylamine (2.2 g, 9.4 mmol) in DMF (30 mL) at 0 °C under N₂. After 17 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated. The residue was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **22d** (2.1 g, 55 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.08 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 2H), 3.78-3.60 (m, 21H), 1.53 (s, 18H).

Preparation of Compound 22e

[0302] To a solution of compound **22d** (2.1 g, 3.99 mmol) in THF/MeOH/H₂O (30 mL/10 mL/10 mL) was added NaOH (400 mg, 9.98 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. Then the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with 1 N aqueous HCl. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **22e** (1.6 g) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.90 (s, 1H), 4.15 (s, 2H), 4.03 (br s, 2H), 3.80-3.60 (m, 18H), 1.47 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 22f

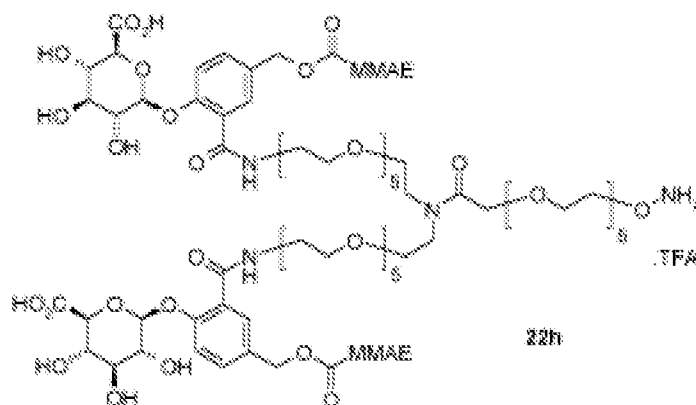
[0303] DIPEA (0.13 mL, 0.73 mmol) and HBTU (187 mg, 0.49 mmol) were added to a stirred solution of compound **21f** (200 mg, 0.24 mmol) and compound **22e** (152 mg, 0.36 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was diluted H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **22f** (100 mg, 34 %). ELMS *m/z*: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1205.6.

Preparation of Compound 22g

[0304] To a solution of compound **22f** (100 mg, 0.08 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 20 mg) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (20 mL). Concentration provided compound **22g** as colorless oil (70 mg), which was used without further purification. EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 937.4, [M+Na]⁺ 959.3.

Preparation of Compound 22h

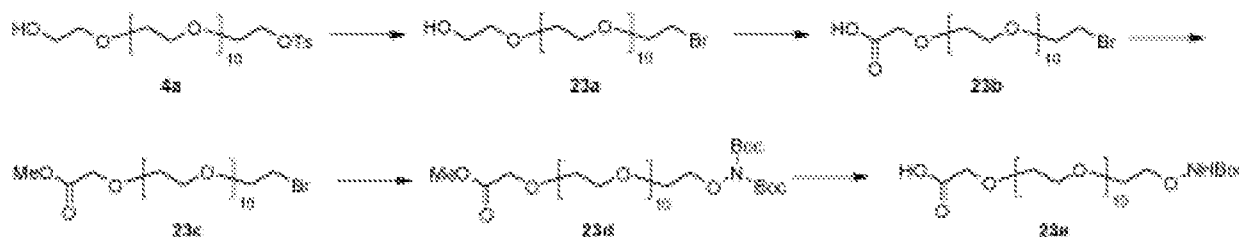
[0305]



[0306] Compound **22h** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **22g** by a similar method of preparing compound **20q** in Example 30. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1489.4.

Example 33. Preparation of Compound **23h**

[0307]



Preparation of Compound **23a**

[0308] To a solution of compound **4a** (483 mg, 0.69 mmol) in THF (10 mL) was added LiBr (180 mg, 2.06 mmol). The reaction mixture refluxed for 12 hours under N_2 . Then the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **23a** (330 mg, 78 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 3.81 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.72-3.59 (m, 44H), 3.47 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **23b**

[0309] To a solution of compound **23a** (330 mg, 0.54 mmol) in acetone (2 mL) at 0 °C was added Jones reagent (2 mL). After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H_2O (15 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 20 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. The resulting crude compound **23b** was used without further purification.

Preparation of Compound **23c**

[0310] To a solution of crude compound **23b** (266 mg, 0.43 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added oxalyl chloride (0.054 mL, 0.64 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **23c** (200 mg, 58 % for 2 steps). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 3.81 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 3.79-3.64 (m, 43H), 3.48 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 2H).

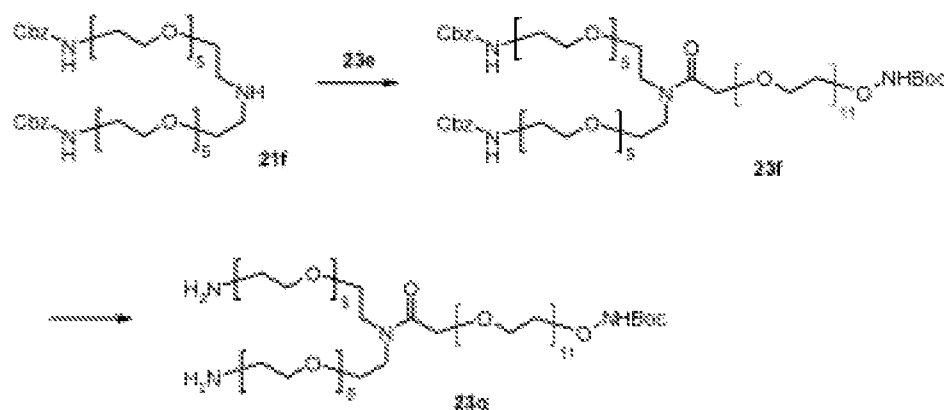
Preparation of Compound **23d**

[0311] To a solution of compound **23c** (200 mg, 0.31 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) were added N,N -diBoc-hydroxylamine (95 mg, 0.40 mmol) and NaH (60 % in oil, 16 mg, 0.37 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 17 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated. The residue was diluted with H_2O (5 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **23d** (120 mg, 49 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 4.13 (t, J = 8.0 Hz,

2H), 3.75-3.64 (m, 45H), 1.53 (s, 18H).

Preparation of Compound 23e

[0312] To a solution of compound **23d** (120 mg, 0.15 mmol) in THF/MeOH/H₂O (3 mL/1 mL/1 mL) was added NaOH (15 mg, 0.38 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Then the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4-5 with 1 N aqueous HCl. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (2 x 20 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **23e** (100 mg), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.23 (t, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2H), 4.15 (s, 2H), 4.08 (t, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 4.01 (t, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 3.74-3.64 (m, 40H), 1.53 (s, 9H).



Preparation of Compound 23f

[0313] DIPEA (0.052 mL, 0.29 mmol) and HBTU (75 mg, 0.20 mmol) were added to a stirred solution of compound **21f** (80 mg, 0.09 mmol) and compound **23e** (100 mg, 0.15 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 6 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **23f** (140 mg, 97 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.38-7.31 (m, 10 H), 5.44 (br, 2 H), 5.09 (s, 4 H), 4.34 (s, 2 H), 4.26-4.17 (m, 4 H), 4.09-4.08 (m, 1 H), 4.07 (br, 1 H), 3.73-3.47 (m, 76 H), 3.39-3.38 (m, 4 H), 1.53 (s, 9 H). ELMS *m/z*: [M+Na]⁺ 1491.6, [M+H-Boc]⁺ : 1369.6.

Preparation of Compound 23g

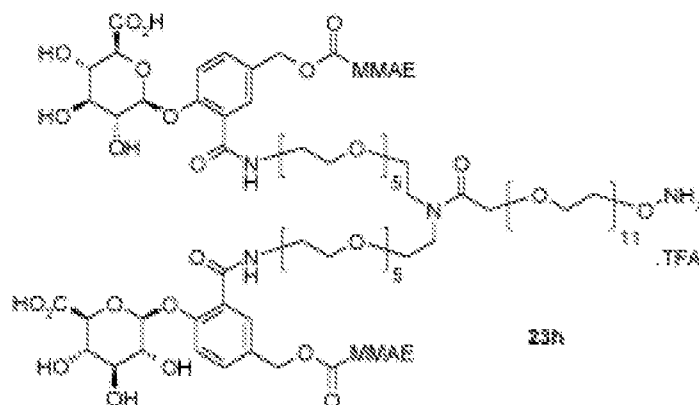
[0314] To a solution of compound **23f** (140 mg, 0.09 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 20 mg) and then the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 4 hours under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (20 mL). Concentration provided compound **23g** as colorless oil (120 mg), which was used without further purification. ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1201.7, [M+Na]⁺ 1223.7.

Preparation of Compound 23h

[0315]

5

10

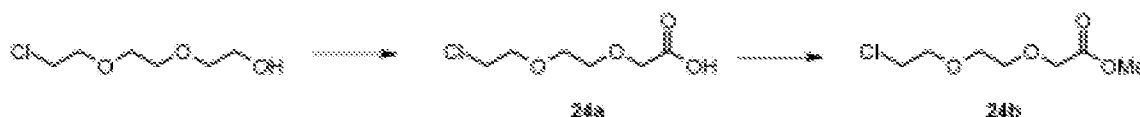


15 **[0316]** Compound **23h** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **23g** by a similar method of preparing compound **20q** in Example 30. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1620.3, $1/2[M+Na]^+$ 1632.1.

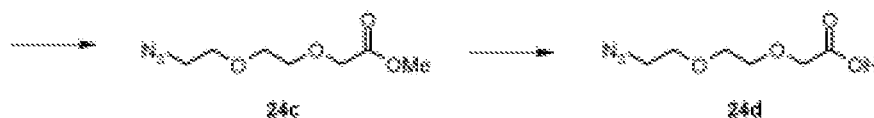
Example 34. Preparation of Compound 241

20 **[0317]**

25



30



Preparation of Compound 24a

35 **[0318]** Jones reagent (90 mL) was slowly added to a solution of compound 2-[2-(2-chloroethoxy)ethoxy]ethanol (15.0 g, 88.9 mmol) in acetone (600 mL) at 0 °C. After 15 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was diluted with H₂O (200 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (5 x 300 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. Concentration provided compound **24a** (20.0 g), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.18 (s, 2H), 3.81-3.64 (m, 8H).

Preparation of Compound 24b

40 **[0319]** To a solution of compound **24a** (20.0 g, 88.9 mmol) in MeOH (500 mL) was added oxalyl chloride (11.5 mL, 133.4 mmol) at 0 °C for 30 minutes under N₂. After 16 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **24b** (13.0 g, 75 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.18 (s, 2H), 3.78-3.67 (m, 9H), 3.65 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H).

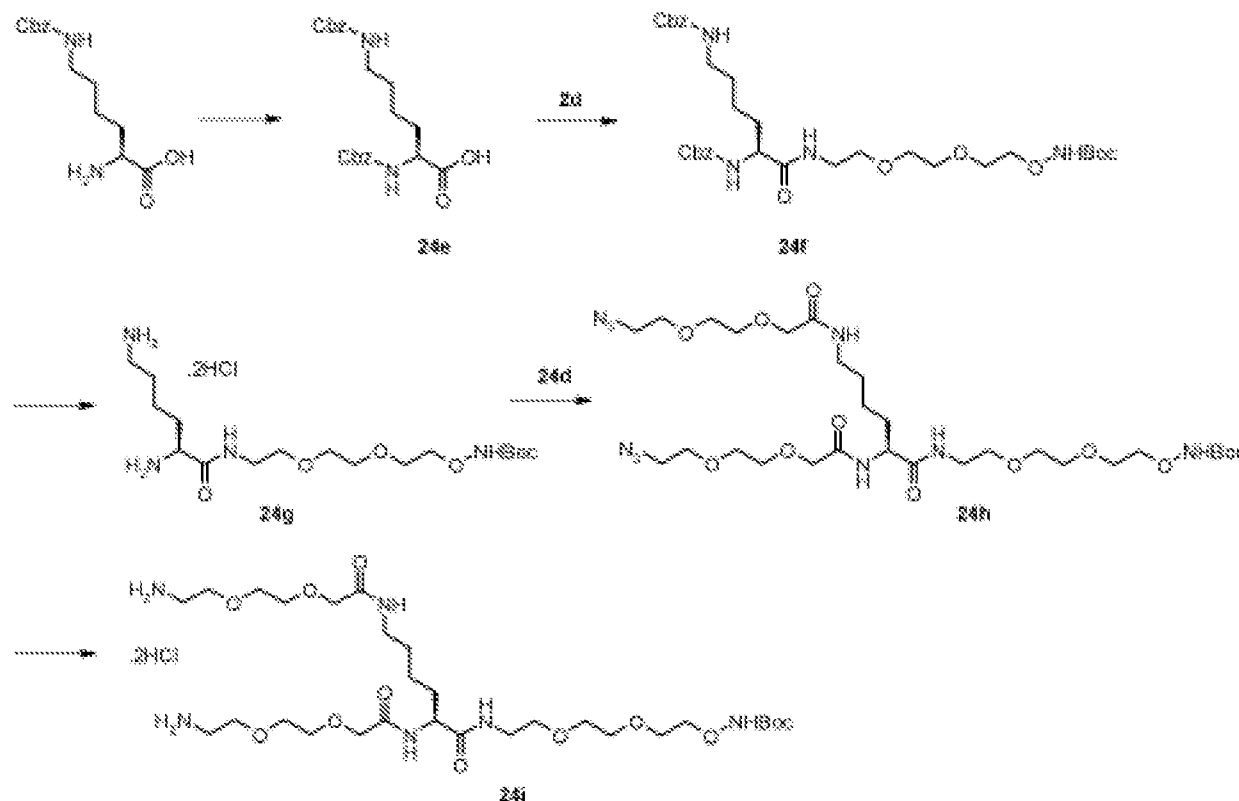
Preparation of Compound 24c

50 **[0320]** Compound **24b** (13.0 g, 66.1 mmol) and NaN₃ (6.4 g, 99.2 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (130 mL). After stirring at 100 °C for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with brine (200 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (2 x 100 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄. Concentration provided compound **24c** (11.7 g, 87 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.18 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.67 (m, 9H), 3.41 (t, J = 5.6 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 24d

55 **[0321]** To a solution of compound **24c** (11.5 g, 56.6 mmol) in THF/MeOH/H₂O (300 mL/100 mL/100 mL) was added NaOH (4.53 g, 113.2 mmol) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C under N₂, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 2 with 4 M

aqueous HCl. The reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with CHCl₃ (3 x 500 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over MgSO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **24d** (10.7 g, 99 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.19 (s, 2H), 3.79-3.77 (m, 2H), 3.72-3.70 (m, 4H), 3.44 (t, *J* = 5.2 Hz, 2H).



Preparation of Compound **24e**

[0322] A three-necked flask was loaded consecutively with H₂O (40 mL), 1,4-dioxane (70 mL) and H-Lys(Z)-OH (10 g, 35.7 mmol). The mixture was stirred until complete dissolution. The pH was adjusted to about 10.5 by adding of 2 M aqueous Na₂CO₃. Benzyl chloroformate (6.69 g, 39.2 mmol) was added while maintaining the pH at about 10-11 by adding at the same time 2 M aqueous Na₂CO₃. After completing addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 1 hour. Then EtOAc (50 mL) was added and pH of the resulting mixture was adjusted to 2-3 with c-HCl. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (50 mL), and dried over Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration under reduced pressure yielded the compound **24e** as yellowish oil (14.7g, 99 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.33-7.27 (m, 10H), 5.07-5.04 (d, 4H), 4.08 (m, 1H), 3.09 (t, 2H), 1.51 (br s, 1H), 1.49 (bs, 1H), 1.47-1.40 (m, 4H).

Preparation of Compound **24f**

[0323] DIPEA (0.40 mL, 2.37 mmol), HOBt (143 mg, 1.06 mmol) and EDC·HCl (240 mg, 1.25 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24e** (400 mg, 0.96 mmol) and compound **2d** (261 mg, 0.86 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL), washed with aq NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **24f** (380 mg, 59 %). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.16 (s, 1H), 7.34-7.28 (m, 10H), 7.49 (s, 1H) 5.08-5.07 (m, 5H), 4.17 (m, 1H), 3.99 (t, 2H), 3.68-3.16 (m, 10H), 3.17 (d, 2H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.51-1.27 (m, 14H). ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 661.0.

Preparation of Compound **24g**

[0324] To a stirred mixture of compound **24f** (370 mg, 0.55 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 74 mg) in MeOH (10 mL) at 0

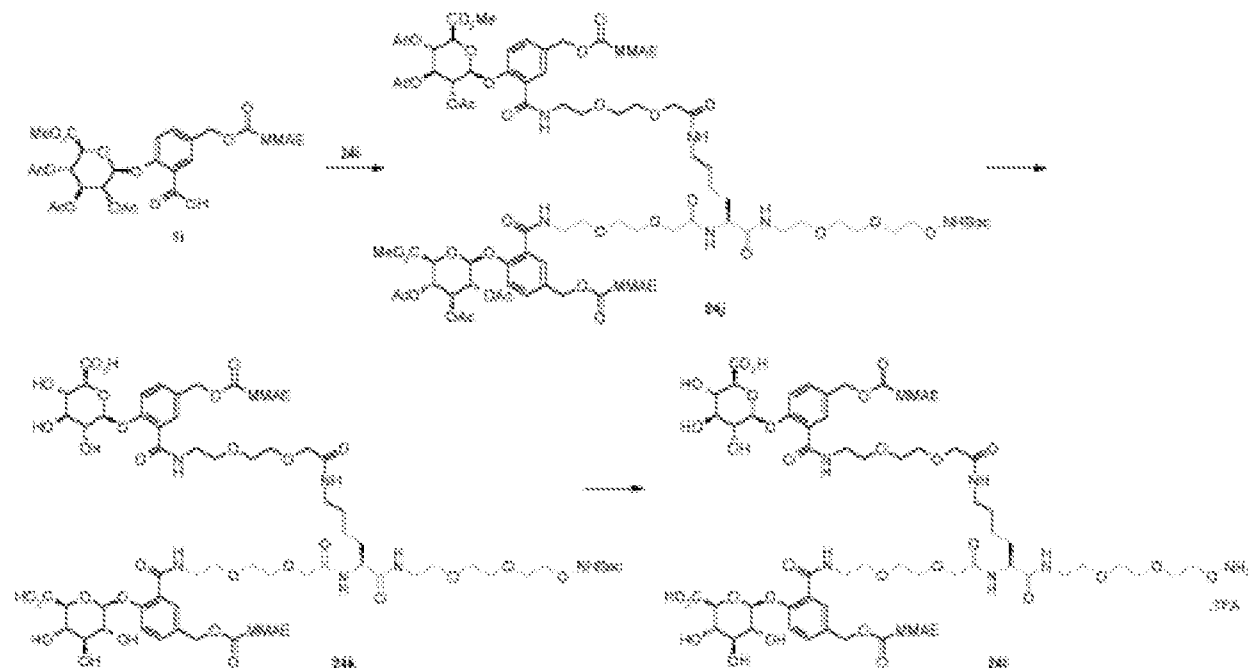
°C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.27 mL, 1.1 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 h under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **24g** (223 mg, 87 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 10.02 (s, 1H), 8.62 (s, 1H), 8.22 (br, 2H), 7.90 (br, 2H), 3.81 (t, 2H), 3.56 (m, 4H), 3.46 (t, 2H), 3.39-3.27 (m, 26H), 2.75 (m, 2H), 1.73 (q, 2H), 1.55 (p, 2H), 1.40-1.33 (m, 14H).

Preparation of Compound **24h**

[0325] DIPEA (1.6 mL, 9.45 mmol), HOBt (746 mg, 5.52 mmol) and EDC·HCl (1.19 g, 6.42 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24g** (1.0 g, 5.29 mmol) and compound **24d** (1.1 g, 2.35 mmol) in DMF (15 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (20 mL), extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL) and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **24h** (1.25 g, 70 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.36 (s, 1H), 7.30 (d, 1H), 7.08 (s, 1H), 7.68 (t, 1H), 4.46 (q, 1H), 4.07-3.98-4.01 (m, 4H), 3.98 (s, 2H), 3.75-3.663 (m, H) 3.57 (t, 2H), 3.44 (m, 6H), 3.28 (m, 2H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.59-1.52 (p, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.41-1.33 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 735.0.

Preparation of Compound **24i**

[0326] To a stirred mixture of compound **24h** (1.2 g, 0.163 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 250 mg) in MeOH (30 mL) at 0 °C, 4 N HCl (1,4-dioxane, 0.81 mL, 3.26 mmol) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **24i** (1.39 g, 99 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.99 (s, 1H), 8.22 (t, 1H), 7.74 (t, 1H), 7.61 (d, 1H), 4.31 (q, 1H), 3.93 (s, 2H), 3.86 (s, 2H), 3.79 (t, 2H), 3.60-3.50 (m, 18H), 3.06 (q, 2H), 2.97 (p, 4H), 1.60-1.49 (m, 2H), 1.39 (m, 11H), 1.20 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 683.



Preparation of Compound **24j**

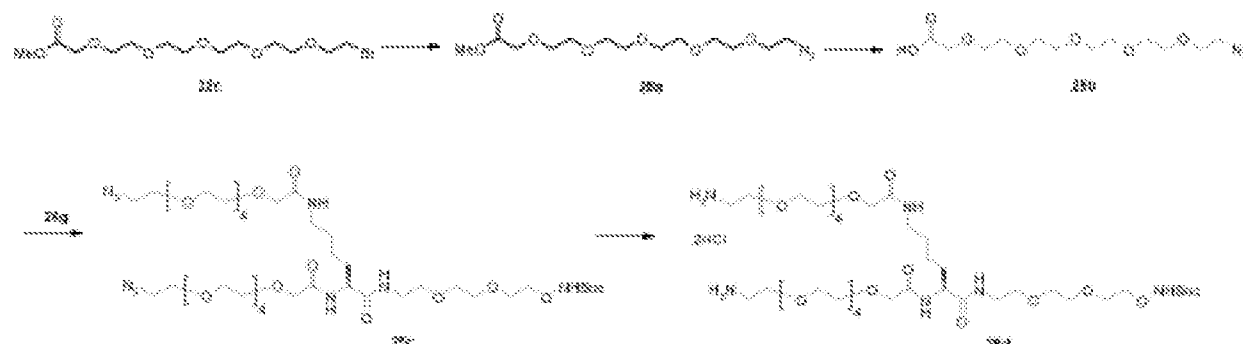
[0327] DIPEA (0.021 mL, 0.125 mmol) and HBTU (29 mg, 0.078 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24i** (85 mg, 0.069 mmol) and compound **24j** (23 mg, 0.031 mmol) in DMF (0.7 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **24j** (67 mg, 68 %). ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1552.5.

Preparation of Compound 24k

[0328] To a solution of compound **24j** (67 mg, 0.021 mmol) in MeOH (1.7 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (16 mg, 0.388 mmol) in H₂O (1.7 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid (0.018 mL) and concentrated under reduced pressure. The reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **24k** (37 mg, 62 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1412.3.

Preparation of Compound 24l

[0329] TFA (0.4 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **24k** (37 mg, 0.013 mmol) in DCM (2.0 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were blown off with N₂. The residue was dissolved in H₂O/acetonitrile (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **24l** (19.8 mg, 53 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1362.3.

Example 35. Preparation of Compound 25e[0330]Preparation of Compound 25a

[0331] Compound **22c** (1.0 g, 2.67 mmol) and NaN₃ (261 mg, 4.01 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 mL). The reaction mixture was heated at 100 °C for 5 hours. After the reaction was completed, the reaction mixture was filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **25a** (854 mg, 95 %).

¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.17 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.64 (m, 21H), 3.39 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 25b

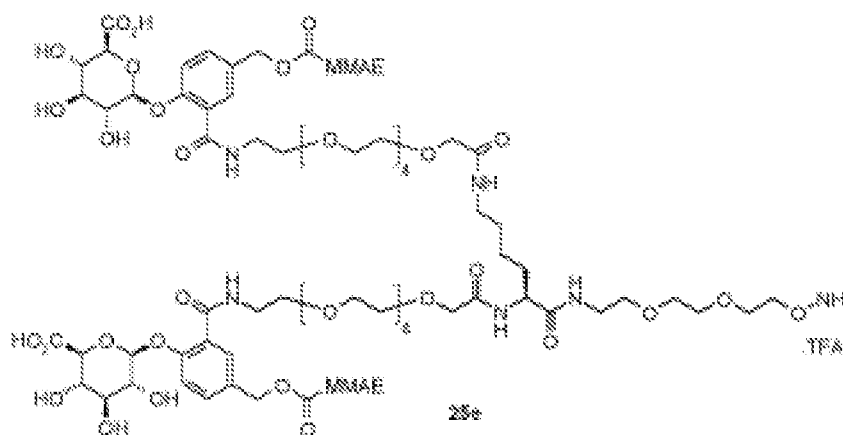
[0332] To a stirred solution of compound **25a** (854 mg, 2.54 mmol) in MeOH (25 mL) at 0 °C, 2 M aq. NaOH (6.3 mL, 12.64 mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The solution was then concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting suspension was acidified with aqueous 2 N HCl while cooling at 0 °C. The residue was extracted by CHCl₃ (8 x 500 mL). The organic layers were combined, dried over Na₂SO₄ and concentrated to produce the compound **25b** (783 mg, 96 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 4.16 (s, 2H), 3.76-3.65 (m, 18H), 3.40 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 25c

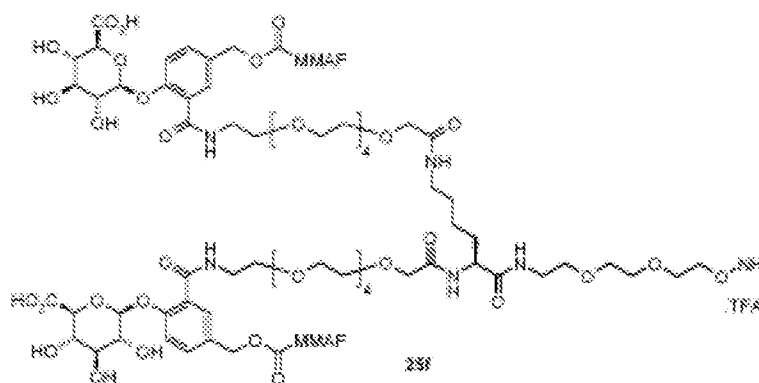
[0333] DIPEA (0.30 mL, 1.70 mmol) and HBTU (483 mg, 1.27 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **25b** (337 mg, 1.05 mmol) and compound **24g** (198 mg, 0.42 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography (EtOAc to EtOAc/MeOH 10/1), which produced the compound **25c** (358 mg, 84 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.98 (s, 1H), 8.09 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (t, J = 5.2 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 4.31-4.25 (m, 1H), 3.90 (s, 2H), 3.84 (s, 2H), 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.62-3.46 (m, 34H), 3.42-3.36 (m, 6H), 3.25-3.17 (m, 2H), 3.08-3.03 (m, 2H), 1.61-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.26-1.10 (m, 7H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 999.1.

Preparation of Compound 25d

[0334] To a solution of compound **25c** (358 mg, 0.35 mmol) in MeOH (7 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 38 mg) and HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.18 mL, 0.72 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (400 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **25d** (314 mg, 93 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.98 (s, 1H), 8.10 (m, 1H), 7.68 (m, 1H), 7.57 (m, 1H), 4.31-4.25 (m, 1H), 3.90 (s, 2H), 3.84 (s, 2H), 3.80 (m, 2H), 3.62-3.46 (m, 30H), 3.42-3.36 (m, 10H), 3.45-3.16 (m, 4H), 3.08-3.03 (m, 3H), 2.72-2.66 (m, 3H), 1.61-1.51 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.26-1.10 (m, 6H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 947.1.

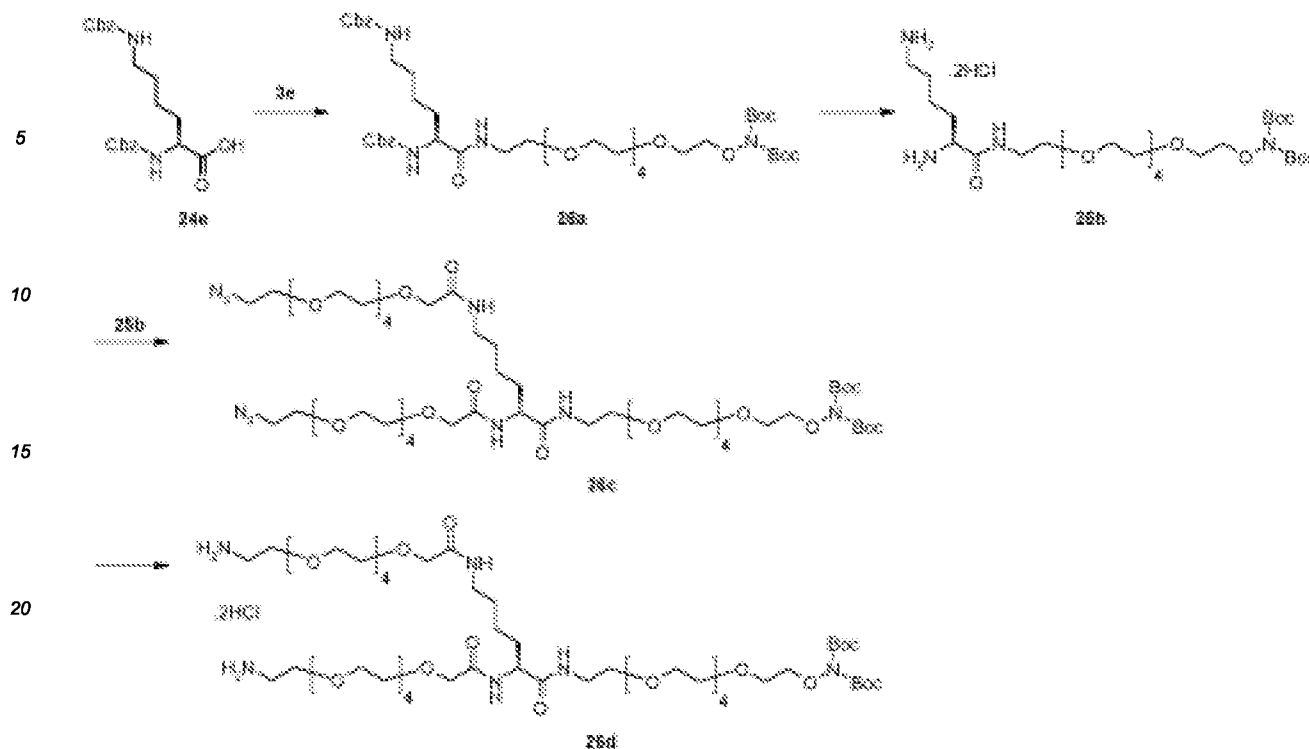
Preparation of Compound 25e**[0335]**

[0336] Compound **25e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **25d** by a similar method of preparing compound **24i** in Example 34. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1493.7.

*Example 36. Preparation of Compound 25f***[0337]**

[0338] Compound **25f** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **25d** by a similar method of preparing compound **24i** in Example 34. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1508.2.

*Example 37. Preparation of Compound 26e***[0339]**



Preparation of Compound 26a

[0340] DIPEA (0.65 mL, 0.004 mmol), HOBt (218 mg, 1.61 mmol) and EDC·HCl (364 mg, 1.9 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 24e (1.0 g, 2.43 mmol) and compound 3e (810 mg, 1.52 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (30 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (30 mL), and brine (30 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 26a (988 mg, 73 %).

¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.33-7.26 (m, 8 H), 6.85 (s, 1H), 5.63 (s, 1H), 5.08-5.02 (s, 4 H), 4.16-4.11 (m, 1 H), 4.09-4.05 (m, 2 H), 3.72-3.70 (m, 2 H), 3.62-3.59 (m, 14H), 3.53 (s, 2H), 3.44-3.43 (m, 2H), 3.18-3.16 (m, 2H), 1.82 (m, 1H), 1.72 (s, 7H), 1.66 (m, 1H), 1.52 (s, 18H), 1.38-1.36 (m, 2H), 1.24-1.27 (s, 1H). ELMS m/z: [M+H-2Boc]⁺ 693.1.

Preparation of Compound 26b

[0341] To a stirred mixture of compound 26a (988 mg, 1.1 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 196 mg) in MeOH (6 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.55 mL, 2.2 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound 26b (767 mg, 99 %) as a yellow form, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 625.0, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 525.0, [M+H-2Boc]⁺ 424.9.

Preparation of Compound 26c

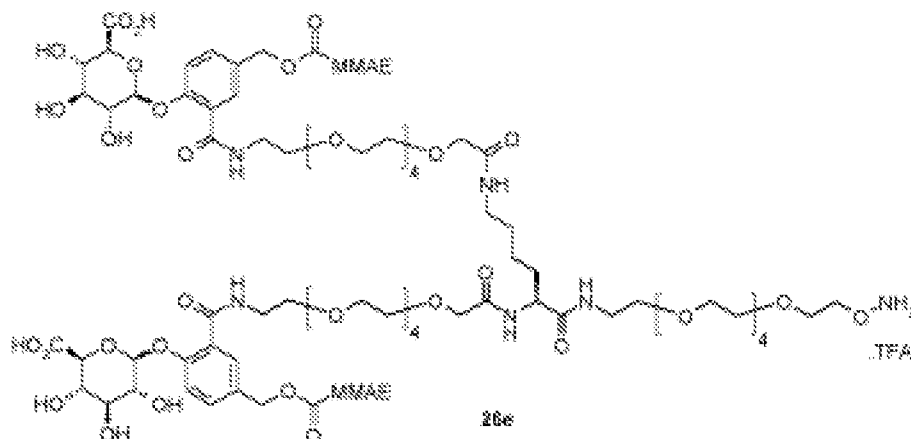
[0342] DIPEA (0.2 mL, 1.14 mmol), HOBt (89 mg, 0.66 mmol) and EDC·HCl (142 mg, 0.74 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 26b (200 mg, 0.29 mmol) and compound 25b (202 mg, 0.63 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 26c (270 mg, 77 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.07 (t, 1H), 7.62 (t, 1H), 7.54-7.52 (m, 1H), 5.73 (s, 2H), 4.27-4.25 (q, 1H), 3.96 (t, 2H), 3.88 (s, 2H), 3.82 (s, 2H), 3.58-3.48 (m, 52H), 3.19-3.18 (m, 3H), 3.04-3.03 (m, 3H), 1.44 (s, 18H), 1.39-1.37 (m, 3H), 1.21-1.19 (m, 3H). ELMS m/z: [M+H-2Boc]⁺ 1031.6.

Preparation of Compound 26d

[0343] To a stirred mixture of compound **26c** (160 mg, 0.13 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 28 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.07 mL, 0.28 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **26d** (140 mg, 91 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1179.7.

Preparation of Compound 26e

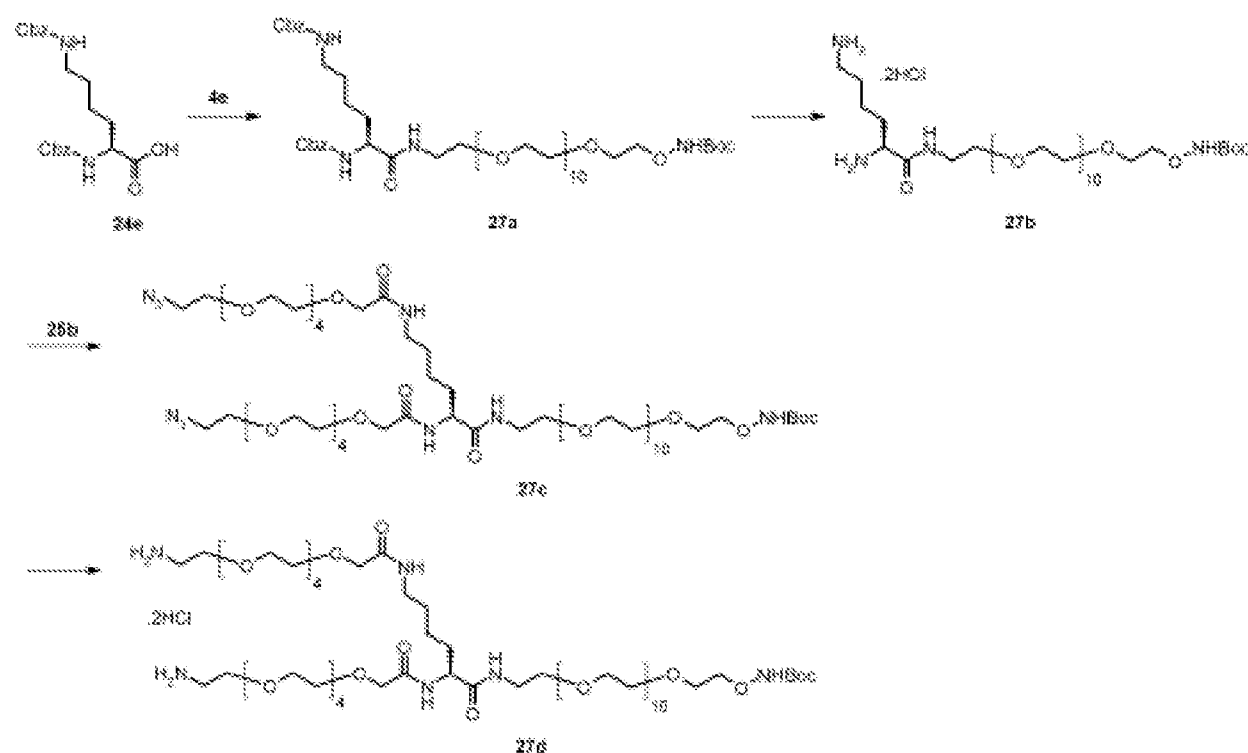
[0344]



[0345] Compound **26e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **26d** by a similar method of preparing compound **24i** in Example 34. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1560.6, 1/3[M+H]⁺ 1040.7.

Example 38. Preparation of Compound 27e

[0346]



Preparation of Compound 27a

[0347] DIPEA (0.19 ml, 1.1 mmol), HOBt (64 mg, 0.47 mmol), and EDC-HCl (91 mg, 0.47 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24e** (228 mg, 0.55 mmol) and compound **4e** (256 mg, 0.36 mmol) in DMF (4 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 15 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (20 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL), and brine (10 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **27a** (327 mg, 85 %).

¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.73 (s, 1H), 7.33-7.26 (m, 11 H), 6.91 (s, 1H), 5.67 (br, 1H) 5.08-5.07 (m, 5 H), 4.15 (m, 1 H), 4.02 (t, 2 H), 3.72-3.44 (m, 46H), 3.16 (d, 2H), 1.82 (m, 1H), 1.63 (m, 1H), 1.55-1.36 (m, 13H).

Preparation of Compound 27b

[0348] To a stirred mixture of compound **27a** (327 mg, 0.309 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 65 mg) in MeOH (6 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.15 mL, 0.618 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **27b** (244 mg, 91 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 789.2.

Preparation of Compound 27c

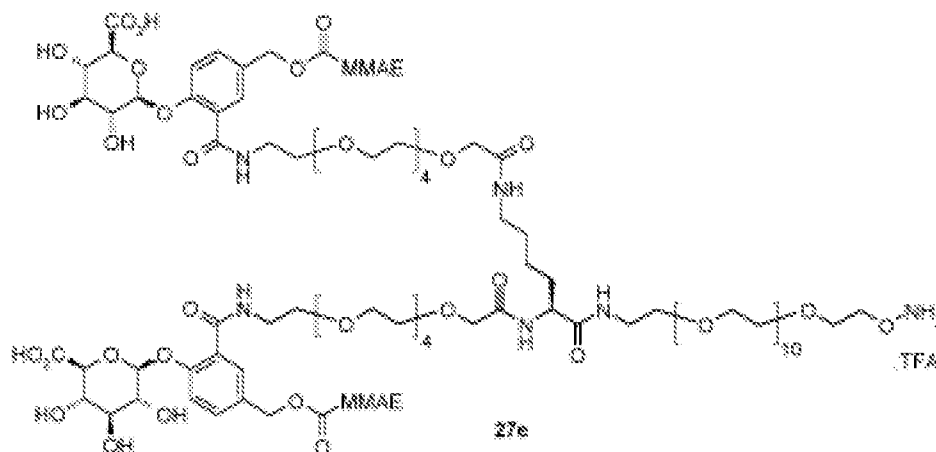
[0349] DIPEA (0.19 ml, 1.13 mmol), HOBt (95 mg, 0.707 mmol), and EDC-HCl (135 mg, 0.707 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **25b** (227 mg, 0.707 mmol) and compound **27b** (244 mg, 0.283 mmol) in DMF (6 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (5 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **27c** (339 mg, 85 %). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.69 (s, 1H), 7.29 (d, 1H), 6.99 (s, 1H), 6.82 (s, 1H), 4.39 (q, 1H), 3.99-3.94 (m, 6H), 3.69-3.58 (m, 80H), 3.51 (t, 2H), 3.44-3.34 (m, 8H), 3.25 (m, 2H), 1.68-1.64 (m, 1H). 1.53-1.48 (m, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 1.33 (m, 2H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1395.6.

Preparation of Compound 27d

[0350] To a stirred mixture of compound **27c** (339 mg, 0.242 mmol), and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 67 mg) in MeOH (6 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.12 mL, 0.484 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **27d** (300 mg, 87 %) as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1343.5.

Preparation of Compound 27e

[0351]

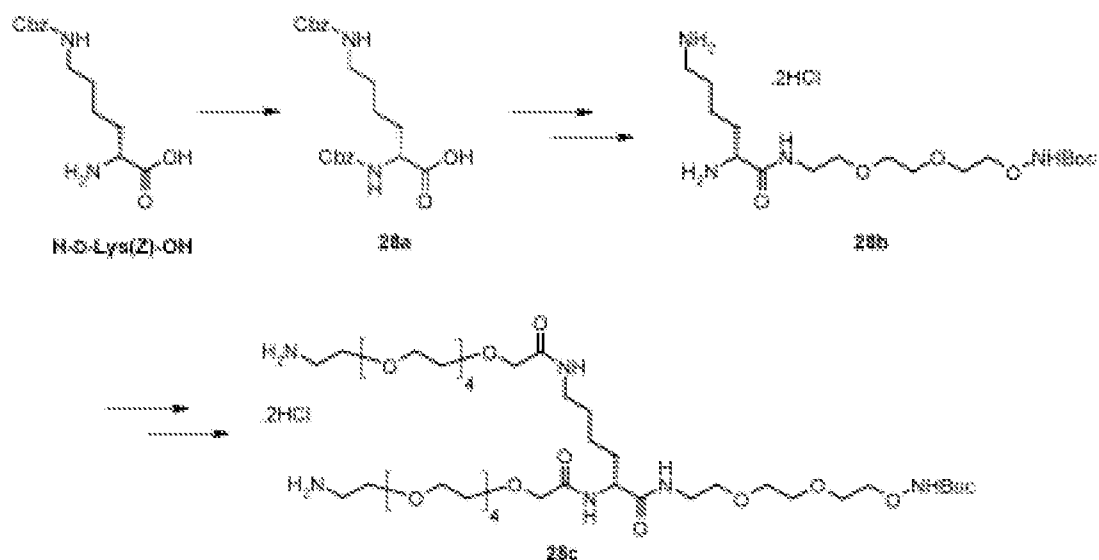


[0352] Compound **27e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **27d** by a similar method of preparing compound **24i** in Example 34. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1692.5.

Example 39. Preparation of Compound 28d

Preparation of Compound 28c

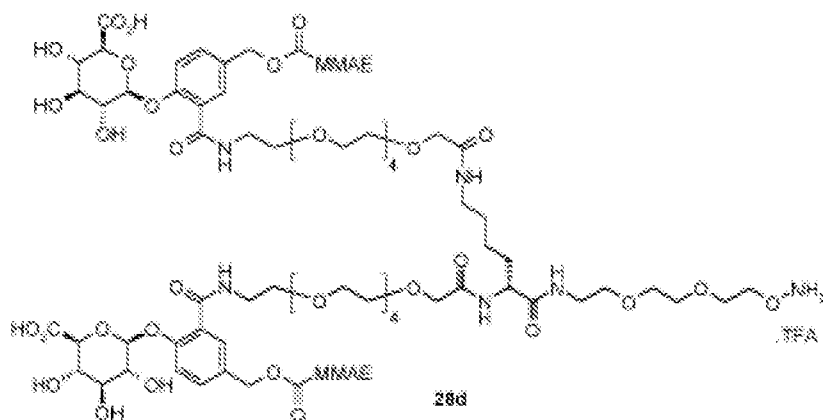
[0353]



[0354] Compound **28c** was prepared from **H-D-Lys(Z)-OH** by a similar method of preparing compound **25d** in Example 35.

Preparation of Compound 28d

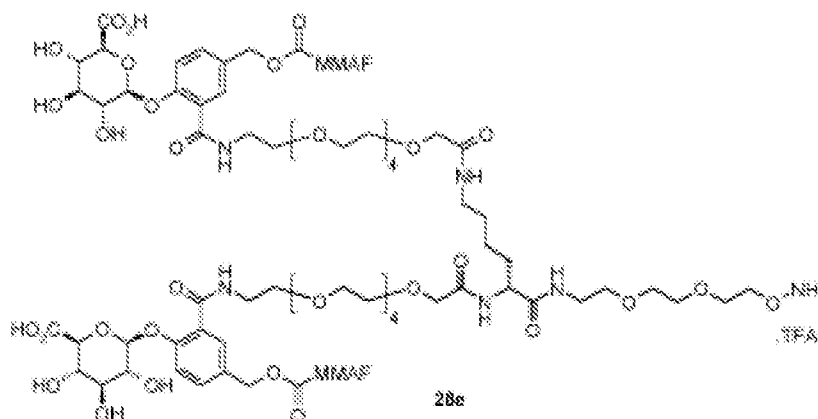
[0355]



[0356] Compound **28d** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **28c** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1494.9.

Example 40. Preparation of Compound 28e

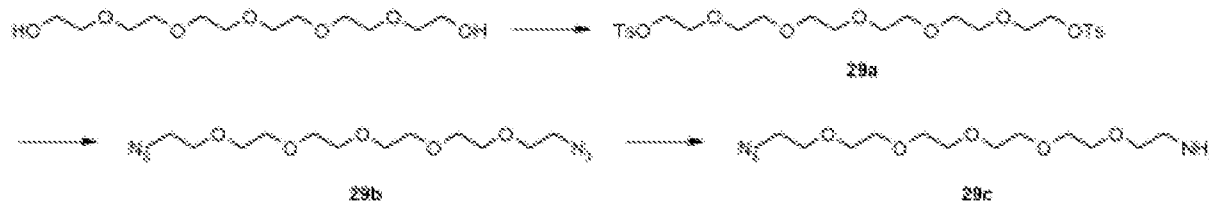
[0357]



[0358] Compound **28e** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **28c** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1509.2.

Example 41. Preparation of Compound **29j**

[0359]



Preparation of Compound **29a**

[0360] To a solution of hexaethylene glycol (25.0 g, 88.5 mmol) in DCM (100 mL) were added triethylamine (61.7 mL, 443 mmol) and *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride (50.6 g, 266 mmol) at 0 °C under N_2 . After 5 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was poured into 1 N aq. HCl (200 mL) and extracted with DCM (2 x 200 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ (100 mL) and brine (100 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **29a** (45.0 g, 87 %) as brown oil. ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 7.79 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 4H), 7.34 (d, J = 7.6 Hz, 4H), 4.16–4.14 (m, 4H), 3.69–3.67 (m, 4H), 3.64–3.56 (m, 16H), 2.44 (s, 6H).

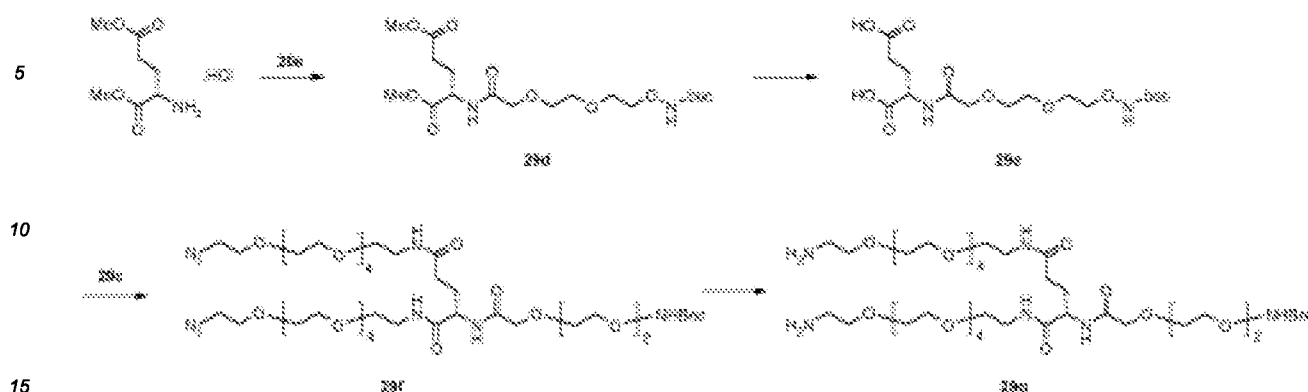
Preparation of Compound **29b**

[0361] To a solution of compound **29a** (17.6 g, 29.7 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) were added NaN_3 (9.65 g, 148 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium iodide (550 mg, 1.49 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated up to 80 °C. After stirring for 16 hours at 80 °C, the reaction mixture was allowed to cool to room temperature. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with DCM (100 mL). After concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **29b** (9.4 g, 94 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $CDCl_3$) δ 3.68 (m, 20H), 3.39 (t, 4H).

Preparation of Compound **29c**

[0362] To a solution of **29b** (8.4 g, 24.9 mmol) in DCM (24 mL) and toluene (24 mL) were added 1 N aq. HCl (40.3 mL) and triphenylphosphine (6.9 g, 23.6 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature under N_2 for 16 hours. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, H_2O (20 mL) was added into the reaction mixture, and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (20 mL). Then the pH of the aqueous phase was adjusted to 13. The resulting aqueous phase was extracted with DCM (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to produce the compound **29c** (6.6 g, 84 %) as colorless oil. ^1H -NMR

(400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 3.67 (m, 20H), 3.52 (t, 2H), 3.39(t, 2H), 2.86(t, 2H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 306.9.



Preparation of Compound **29d**

[0363] DIPEA (2.67 mL, 15.4 mmol) and HBTU (3.49 g, 9.21 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of L-glutamic acid dimethyl ester hydrochloride (1.3 g, 6.14 mmol) and compound **20e** (1.72 g, 6.14 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature over 16 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **29d** (2.18 g, 81 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 10.00 (s, 1H), 8.04 (d, 1H), 4.34 (m, 1H), 3.93 (s, 1H), 3.77 (s, 1H), 3.63 (s, 3H), 3.58 (s, 9H), 3.38-3.34 (t, 2H), 2.14(m, H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 1.39 (s, 9H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 437.35.

Preparation of Compound **29e**

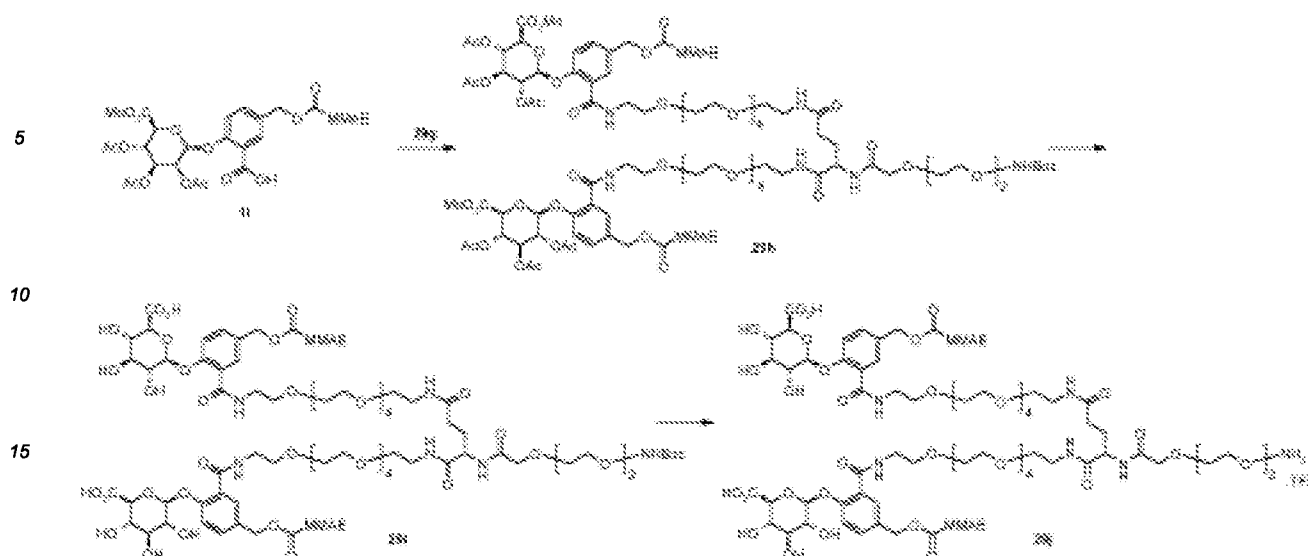
[0364] To a solution of compound **29d** (2.18 g, 4.99 mmol) in THF:MeOH:H₂O (12 mL:4 mL:4 mL) was added NaOH (499 mg, 12.5 mmol) at room temperature under N₂. After 3 hours, the pH of the reaction mixture was adjusted to 4 and concentrated. Then the residue was extracted with DCM/MeOH (80 mL/20 mL). Concentration provided compound **29e** (1.0 g, 49 %) as yellow oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H-Boc]⁺ 309.20.

Preparation of Compound **29f**

[0365] DIPEA (1.7 mL, 9.79 mmol) and HBTU (2.79 g, 7.35 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **29e** (1.0 g, 2.45 mmol) and compound **29c** (2.25 g, 7.35 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature over 16 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **29f** (611 mg, 25 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.97 (s, 1H), 8.08 (t, 1H), 7.85 (t, 1H), 7.64 (d, 1H), 4.27 (m, 1H), 3.83 (s, 2H), 3.82-3.61 (m, 2H), 3.61-3.50 (m, 42H), 3.42-3.37 (m, 8H), 3.28-3.15 (m, 4H), 2.90 (s, H), 2.08-2.04(m,2 H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 1.39 (s, 9H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 986.73.

Preparation of Compound **29g**

[0366] To a stirred mixture of compound **29f** (611 mg, 0.62 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 132 mg 0.62 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **29g** as colorless oil (518 mg, crude), which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 933.85.



Preparation of Compound 29h

[0367] DIPEA (0.026 mL, 0.150 mmol) and HBTU (40 mg, 0.105 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **29g** (35 mg, 0.037 mmol) and compound **11** (106 mg, 0.086 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 16 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with water (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N HCl (20 mL), saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ (20 mL) and brine (20 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **29h** (81.4 mg, 65 %). ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1677.94, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 1119.03.

Preparation of Compound 29i

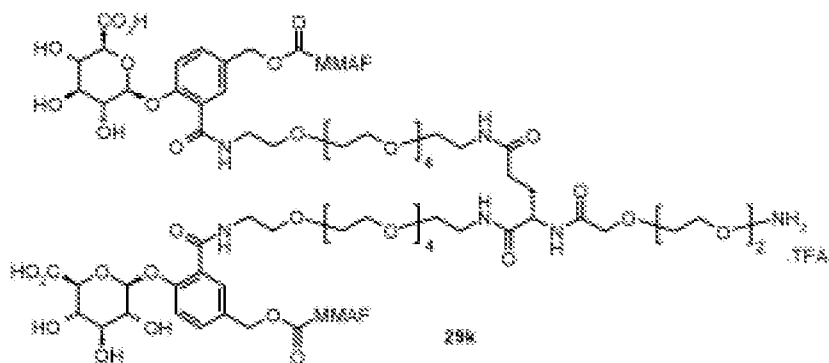
[0368] To a solution of compound **29h** (81 mg, 0.024 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (8.1 mg, 0.19 mmol) in H_2O (1 mL) at $-10^\circ C$. After stirring for 2 hours at $-10^\circ C$, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the reaction mixture was dissolved in H_2O /DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **29i** (53 mg, 72 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1537.86, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 1025.66.

Preparation of Compound 29j

[0369] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **29i** (53 mg, 0.017 mmol) in DCM (1.0 mL) at $0^\circ C$. After stirring for 1 hour, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N_2 flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H_2O /MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **29j** (23.1 mg, 43 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1487.99, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 992.40.

Example 42. Preparation of Compound 29k

[0370]

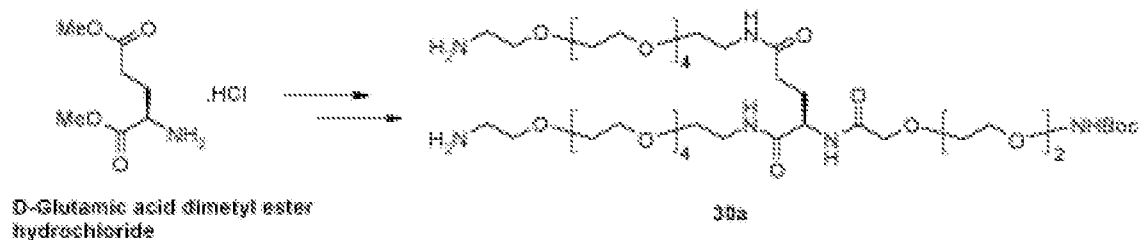


[0371] Compound **29k** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **29g** by a similar method of preparing compound **29j** in Example 41. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1501.93, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 1001.69.

Example 43. Preparation of Compound 30b

Preparation of Compound 30a

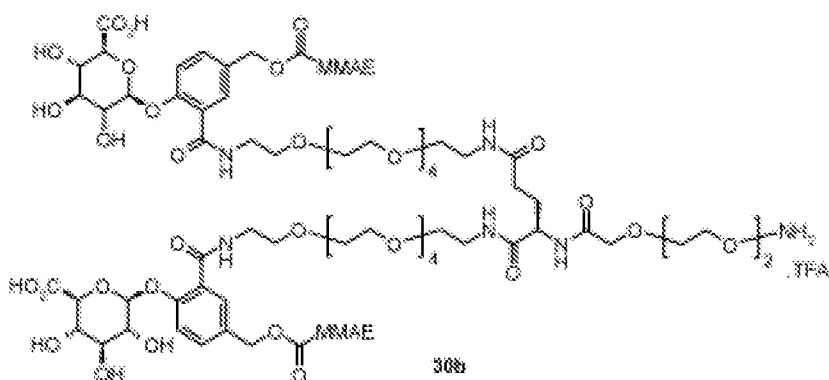
[0372]



[0373] Compound **30a** was prepared from D-glutamic acid dimethyl ester hydrochloride by a similar method of preparing compound **29g** in Example 41. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 933.89.

Preparation of Compound 30b

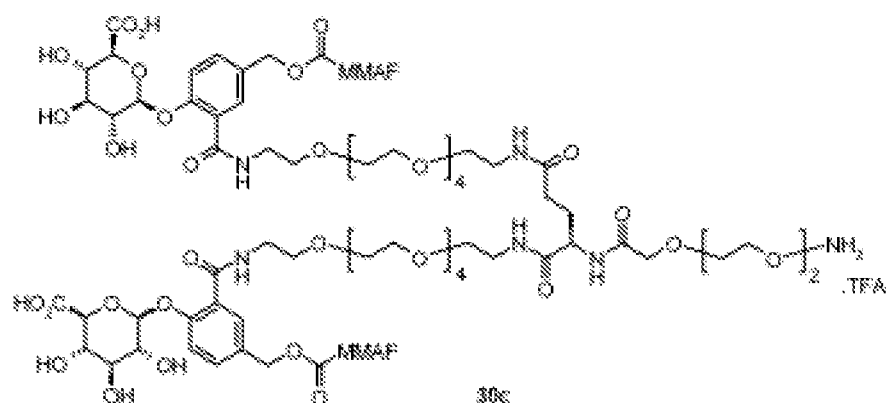
[0374]



[0375] Compound **30b** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **30a** by a similar method of preparing compound **29j** in Example 41. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1488.07, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 992.40.

Example 44. Preparation of Compound 30c

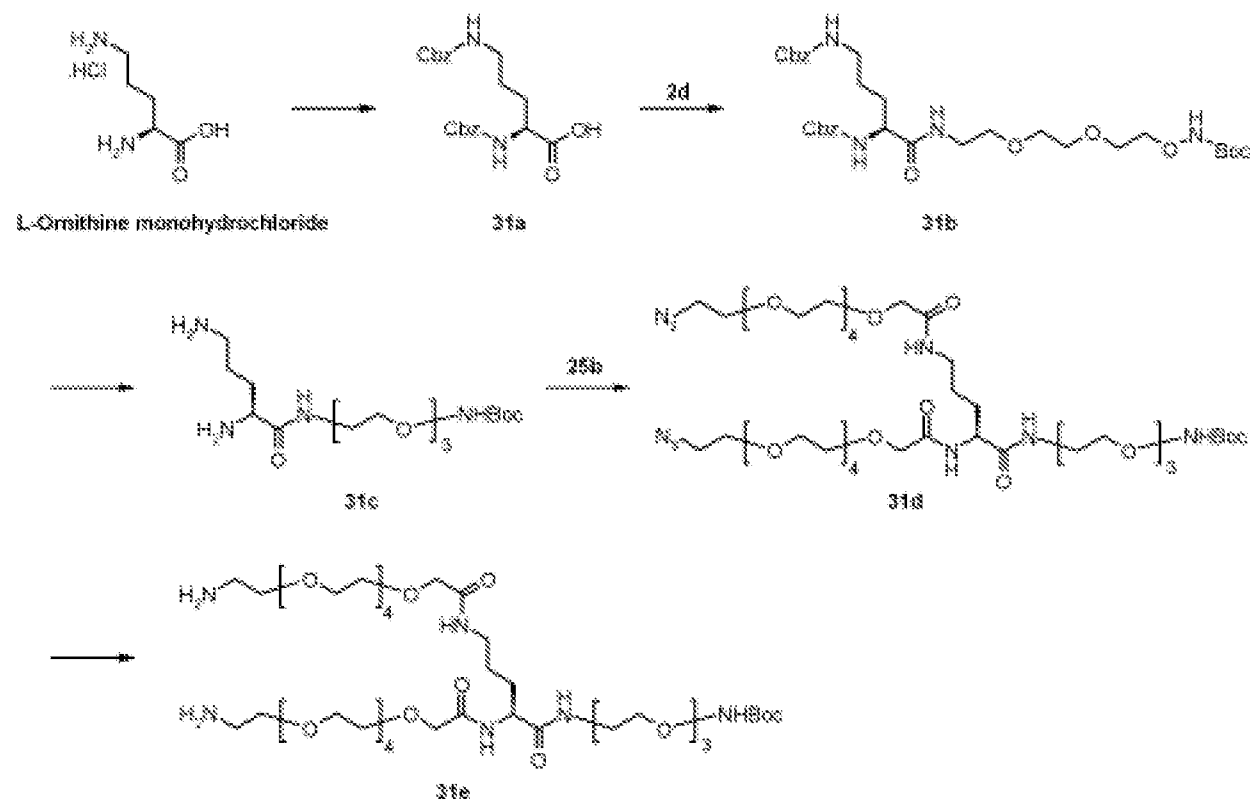
[0376]



[0377] Compound **30c** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **30a** by a similar method of preparing compound **29j** in Example 41. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1501.93, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 1001.69.

Example 45. Preparation of Compound **31f**

[0378]



Preparation of Compound **31a**

[0379] A three-necked flask was loaded consecutively with H_2O (18 mL), 1,4-dioxane (30 mL) and L-ornithine monohydrochloride (3.0 g, 17.8 mmol). The mixture was stirred until complete dissolution. The pH was adjusted to about 10.5 by addition of 2 M aq. Na_2CO_3 . Benzyl chloroformate (6.37g, 37.4 mmol) was added while maintaining the pH at about 10-11 by adding at the same time 2 M aq. Na_2CO_3 . After the end of the addition, the reaction mixture was stirred at 20 °C for 1 hour. Then EtOAc (50 mL) was added and pH of the resulting mixture was adjusted to 2-3 with c-HCl. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (50 mL), and dried over Na_2SO_4 . Filtration and concentration under reduced pressure provided compound **31a** (7.1 g). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $DMSO-d_6$) δ 12.54 (s, 1H), 7.54 (s, 1H), 7.44-7.29 (m, 10H), 7.24-7.22 (m,

1H), 5.16-5.00 (d, 4H), 3.95-3.89 (m, 1H), 3.00-2.96 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.57 (m, 1H), 1.56-1.46 (m, 3H).

Preparation of Compound 31b

[0380] DIPEA (1.41 mL, 8.12 mmol) and HBTU (1.85 g, 4.87 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **31a** (1.30 g, 3.25 mmol) and compound **2d** (891 mg, 3.57 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature over 16 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **31b** (1.2 g, 57 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 647.54, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 547.47

Preparation of Compound 31c

[0381] To a stirred mixture of compound **31b** (1.2 g, 1.86 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 59 mg 5.57 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **31c** (717 mg), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 7.93 (s, 1H), 3.81 (t, 2H), 3.55 (t, 2H), 3.51 (s, 5H), 3.42-3.22 (m, 13H), 1.37 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound 31d

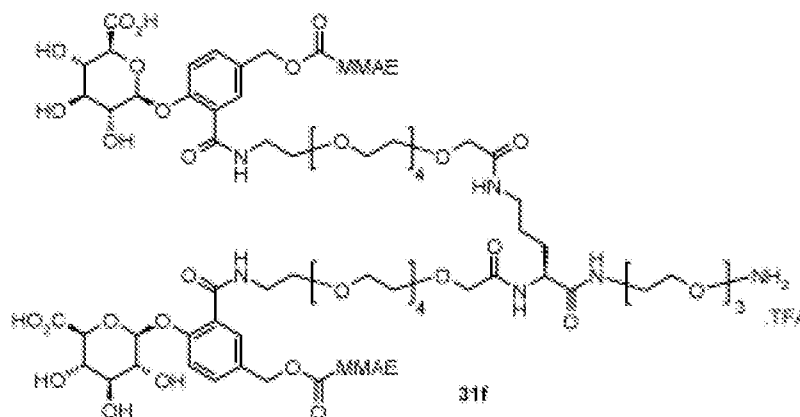
[0382] DIPEA (0.55 mL, 3.17 mmol) and HBTU (902 mg, 2.38 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **31c** (300 mg, 0.79 mmol) and compound **25b** (637 mg, 1.98 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 30 minutes and allowed to warm to room temperature over 16 hours under N₂. The reaction mixture was poured into water (30 mL) and extracted with DCM (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (30 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (30 mL) and brine (30 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **31d** (551 mg, 71%). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 985.87.

Preparation of Compound 31e

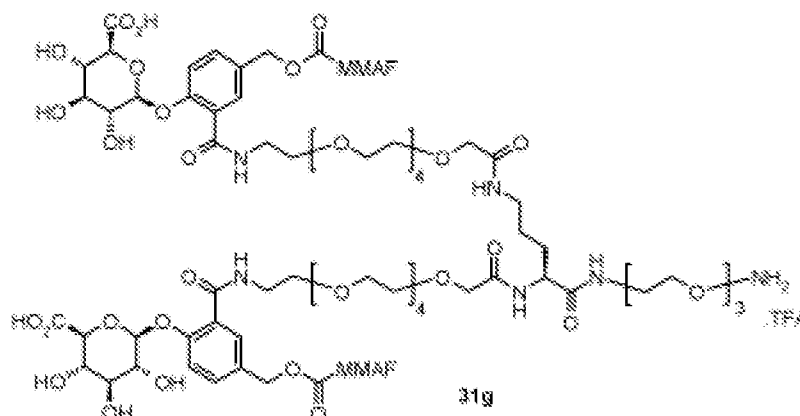
[0383] To a stirred mixture of compound **31d** (491 mg, 0.50 mmol) in MeOH (30 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 106 mg 1.00 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **31e** (452 mg), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 933.94.

Preparation of Compound 31f

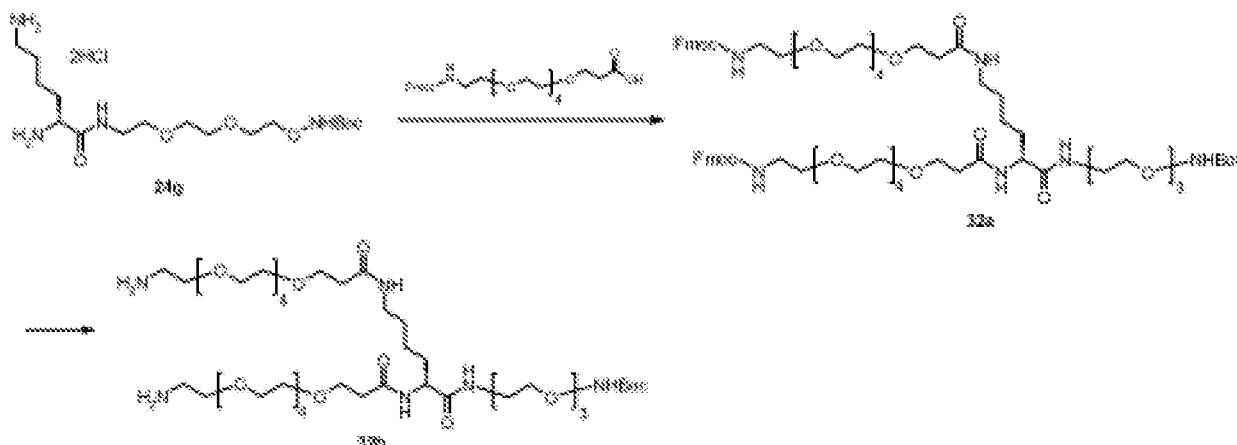
[0384]



[0385] Compound **31f** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **31e** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. ELMS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1488.20, 1/3 [M+H]⁺ 992.54.

Example 46. Preparation of Compound 31g**[0386]**

[0387] Compound **31g** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **31e** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1502.23, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 1001.86.

Example 47. Preparation of Compound 32c**[0388]****Preparation of Compound 32a**

[0389] DIPEA (0.6 mL, 7.07 mmol) and HBTU (972 mg, 5.30 mmol) were added to a stirring mixture of compound **24g** (483 mg, 0.855 mmol) and Fmoc-NH-PEG5-CH₂CH₂COOH (1.0 g, 3.89 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **32a** (1.16 g, 90 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.77 (d, 4H), 7.60(d, 4H), 7.39 (t, 4H), 7.31 (t, 4H), 4.39 (d, 4H), 4.33 (m, 1H), 4.22 (m, 2H), 4.09 (m, 2H), 3.71-3.39 (m, 52H), 3.19 (m, 2H), 2.51 (m, 4H), 1.50 (m, 1H), 1.46 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.25 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1520.0.

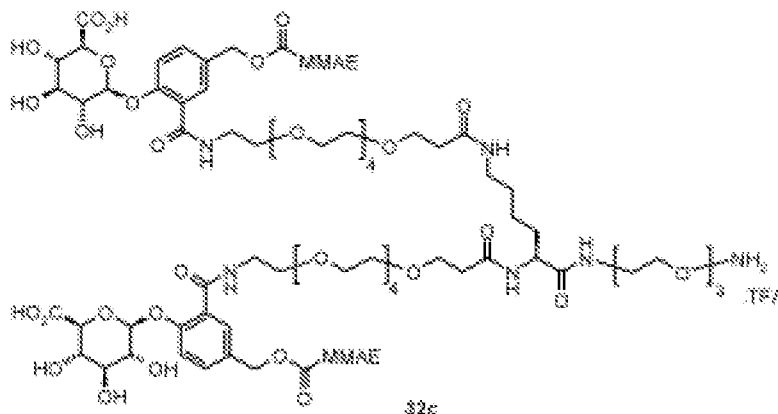
Preparation of Compound 32b

[0390] To a solution of compound **32a** (500 mg, 0.328 mmol) in THF (8 mL) was added piperidine (2 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 20 minutes, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **32b** (175 mg, 50 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, δ

4.41 (m, 1H), 4.01 (m, 2H), 3.75-3.56 (m, 43H), 3.54 (m, 2H), 3.24 (m, 2H), 2.89 (m, 3H), 2.52 (m, 4H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 1.53 (s, 9H), 1.39 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 975.5.

Preparation of Compound **32c**

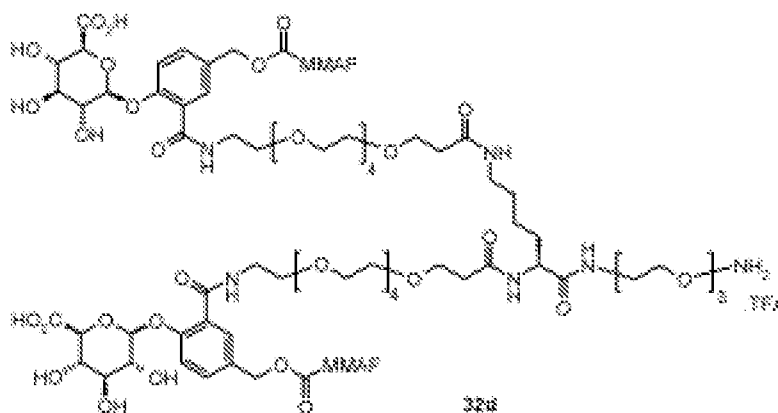
[0391]



[0392] Compound **32c** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **32b** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1508.8.

Example 48. Preparation of Compound **32d**

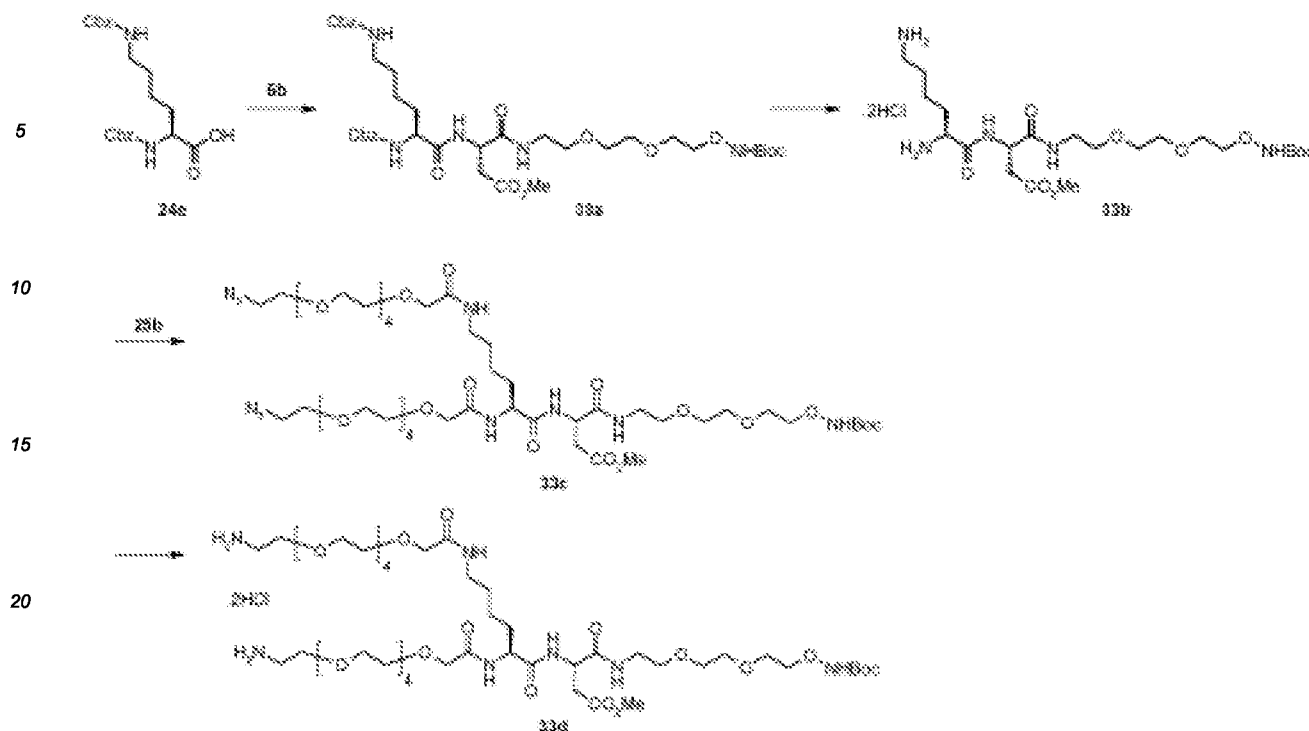
[0393]



[0394] Compound **32d** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **32b** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1522.8.

Example 49. Preparation of Compound **33e**

[0395]



Preparation of Compound **33a**

[0396] DIPEA (1.98 mL, 11.37 mmol) and HBTU (2.15 g, 5.68 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24e** (1.57 g, 3.79 mmol) and compound **6b** (1.30 g, 3.15 mmol) in DMF (37 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (40 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 40 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (40 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (40 mL) and brine (40 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **33a** (2.2 g, 88 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.99 (s, 1H), 8.19 (d, 1H), 7.79 (t, 1H), 7.47 (d, 1H), 7.34-7.31 (m, 5H), 7.24 (t, 1H), 5.01 (d, 4H), 4.55 (q, 1H), 3.91 (q, 1H), 3.79 (t, 2H), 3.55-3.48 (m, 9H), 3.24-3.11 (m, 2H), 2.75-2.54 (m, 2H), 1.57-1.49 (m, 2H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.25 (m, 2H). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 790.47, [M+Na]⁺ 812.4.

Preparation of Compound **33b**

[0397] To a stirred mixture of compound **33a** (2.2 g, 2.78 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 400 mg) in MeOH (60 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 1.39 mL, 5.56 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (40 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **33b** (1.67 g, 99 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.98 (s, 1H), 8.87 (d, 1H), 8.28 (bs, 3H), 8.12 (1H), 7.96 (bs, 3H), 4.51 (q, 1H), 3.77 (t, 2H), 3.72 (bs, 1H), 3.57 (s, 3H), 3.52-3.47 (m, 7H), 3.12 (s, 3H), 2.76-2.61 (m, 4H), 1.71 (q, 2H), 1.55 (q, 2H), 1.36 (s, 9H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 522.4, [M+Na]⁺ 544.3.

Preparation of Compound **33c**

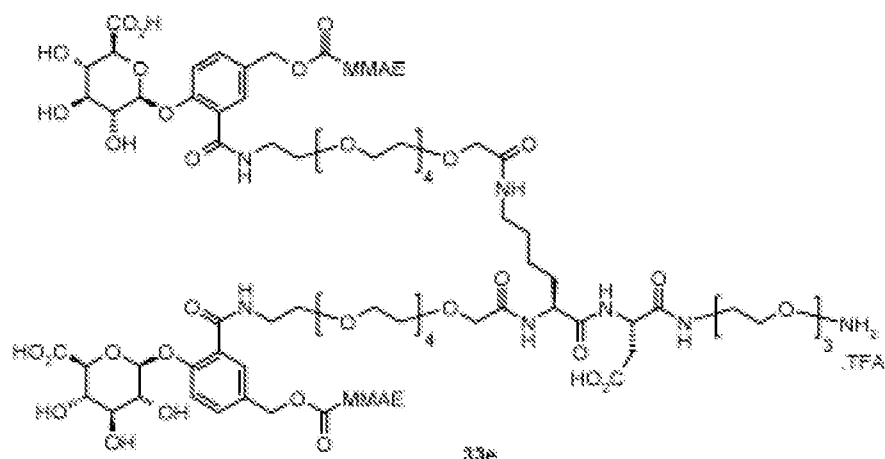
[0398] DIPEA (1.95 mL, 11.23 mmol) and HBTU (3.19 g, 8.42 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **25b** (1.98 g, 6.17 mmol) and compound **33b** (1.67 g, 2.80 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was concentrated and purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **33c** (2 g, 63 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.97 (s, 1H), 8.28 (d, 1H), 7.82 (t, 1H), 7.65 (s, 1H), 7.64 (s, 1H), 4.54 (q, 1H), 4.25 (q, 1H), 3.91 (s, 2H), 3.84 (s, 2H), 3.80 (t, 2H), 3.60-3.49 (m, 48H), 3.26-3.12 (m, 3H), 3.07 (q, 2H), 2.75-2.54 (m, 2H), 1.65-1.55 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 10H), 1.21 (m, 3H). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1128.8, [M+Na]⁺ 1150.7.

Preparation of Compound 33d

[O3999] To a stirred mixture of compound **33c** (1 g, 0.88 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 200 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.44 mL, 0.88 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (20 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **33d** (936 mg, 92 %), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 9.98 (s, 1H), 8.30 (d, 1H), 7.70 (t, 2H), 4.54 (q, 1H), 4.26 (q, 1H), 3.93 (s, 2H), 3.85 (s, 2H), 3.80 (t, 2H), 3.61-3.49 (m, 46H), 3.22-3.12 (m, 4H), 3.06 (q, 2H), 2.97 (q, 4H), 2.76-2.54 (m, 2H), 1.64-1.55 (m, 2H), 1.39 (s, 10H), 1.26 (m, 3H). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1076.8.

Preparation of Compound 33e

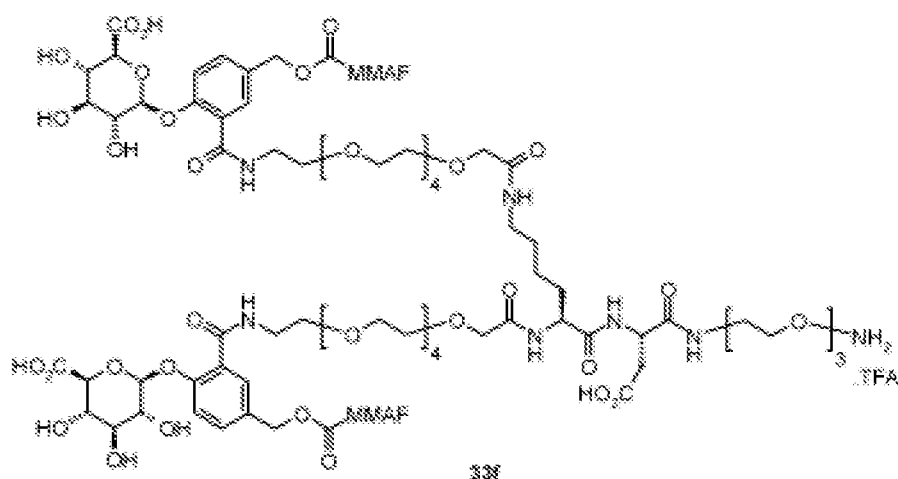
[0400]



[0401] Compound **33e** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **33d** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1552.2.

Example 50. Preparation of Compound 33f

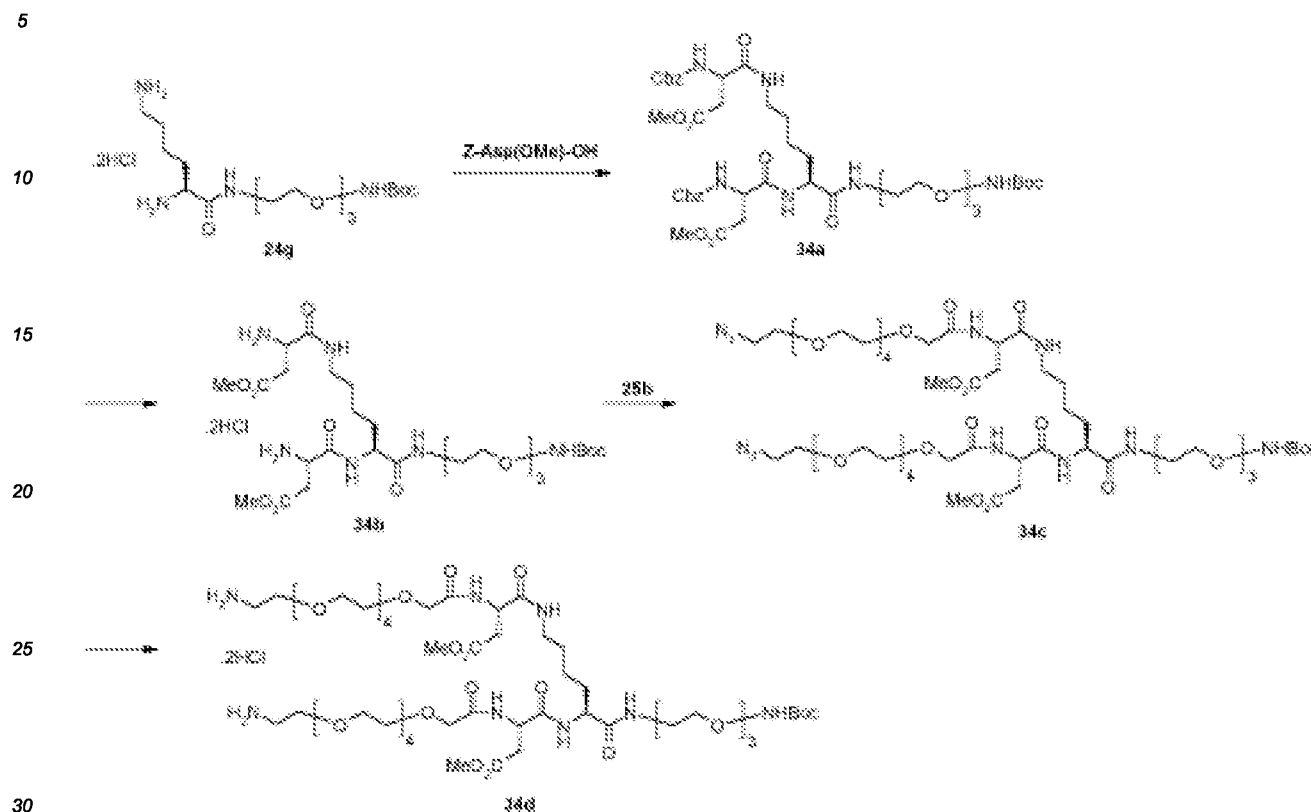
[0402]



[0403] Compound **33f** was prepared from compound **1j** and compound **33d** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1566.4.

Example 51. Preparation of Compound **34e**

[0404]

Preparation of Compound **34a**

[0405] DIPEA (0.8 mL, 4.56 mmol) and HBTU (1.3 g, 3.42 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **24g** (530 mg, 1.14 mmol) and **Z-Asp(OMe)-OH** (704 mg, 2.5 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was poured into H_2O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (40 mL), saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ (40 mL) and brine (40 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **34a**. (713 mg, 68 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $DMSO-d_6$): δ 9.97 (s, 1H), 7.88 (m, 3H), 7.64 (d, 2H), 7.51 (d, 2H), 7.35 (m, 10H), 5.02 (m, 4H), 4.43-4.31 (m, 2H), 4.17 (m, 1H), 3.80 (t, 2H), 3.58-3.50 (m, 12H), 3.41-3.16 (m, 6H), 2.98 (m, 2H), 2.79-2.67 (m, 3H), 2.57 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.34 (m, 13H).

Preparation of Compound **34b**

[0406] To a solution of compound **34a** (530 mg, 0.58 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added Pd/C (20 wt. %, 106 mg) and HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.29 mL, 1.16 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **34b** (420 mg, 100 %), which was used without further purification. ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, $DMSO-d_6$) δ 9.97 (s, 1H), 8.62 (d, 1H), 8.54 (s, 1H), 8.27 (m, 4H), 7.02 (s, 1H), 4.17 (m, 2H), 4.02 (m, 1H), 3.76 (t, 2H), 3.61 (m, 4H), 3.51-3.11 (m, 12H), 3.09-2.77 (m, 8H), 1.60-1.24 (m, 13H). EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 651.5.

Preparation of Compound **34c**

[0407] DIPEA (0.4 mL, 2.32 mmol) and HBTU (660 mg, 1.74 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **34b** (420 mg, 0.58 mmol) and compound **25b** (299 mg, 0.93 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was poured into H_2O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (20 mL), saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ (20 mL) and brine (20 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography,

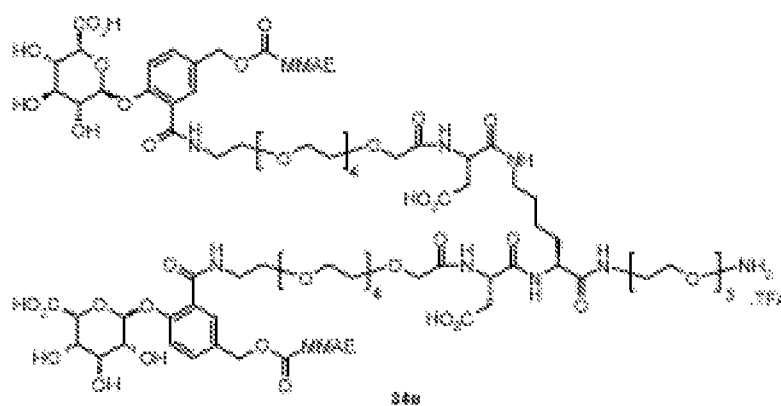
which produced the compound **34c** (466 mg, 70.8 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3): δ 8.28 (s, 1H), 7.78 (q, 1H), 7.31 (d, 1H), 7.71 (s, 1H), 6.94 (s, 1H), 4.85 (m, 2H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 4.07-4.03 (m, 6H), 3.75-3.41 (m, 56H), 3.23 (q, 2H), 2.92-2.84 (m, 4H), 1.91-1.32 (m, 15H). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+2\text{H}]^+ 1158.1$.

Preparation of Compound **34d**

[0408] To a stirred mixture of compound **34c** (260 mg, 0.21 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 52 mg) in MeOH (20 mL) at 0 °C was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.10 mL, 0.41 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **34d** (249 mg, 100 %), which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+2\text{H}]^+ 1206.1$.

Preparation of Compound **34e**

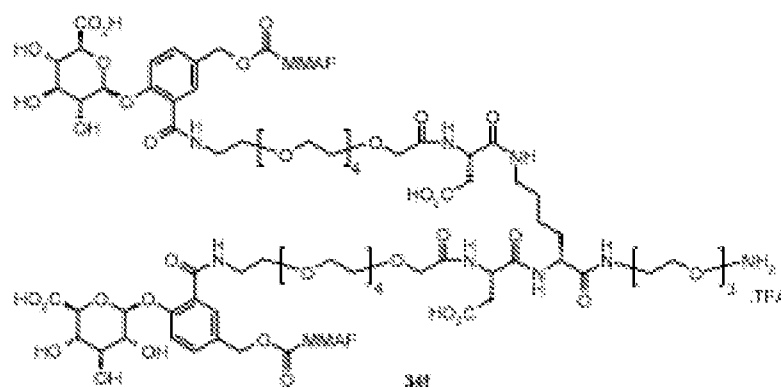
[0409]



[0410] Compound **34e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **34d** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+ 1610.4$.

Example 52. Preparation of Compound **34f**

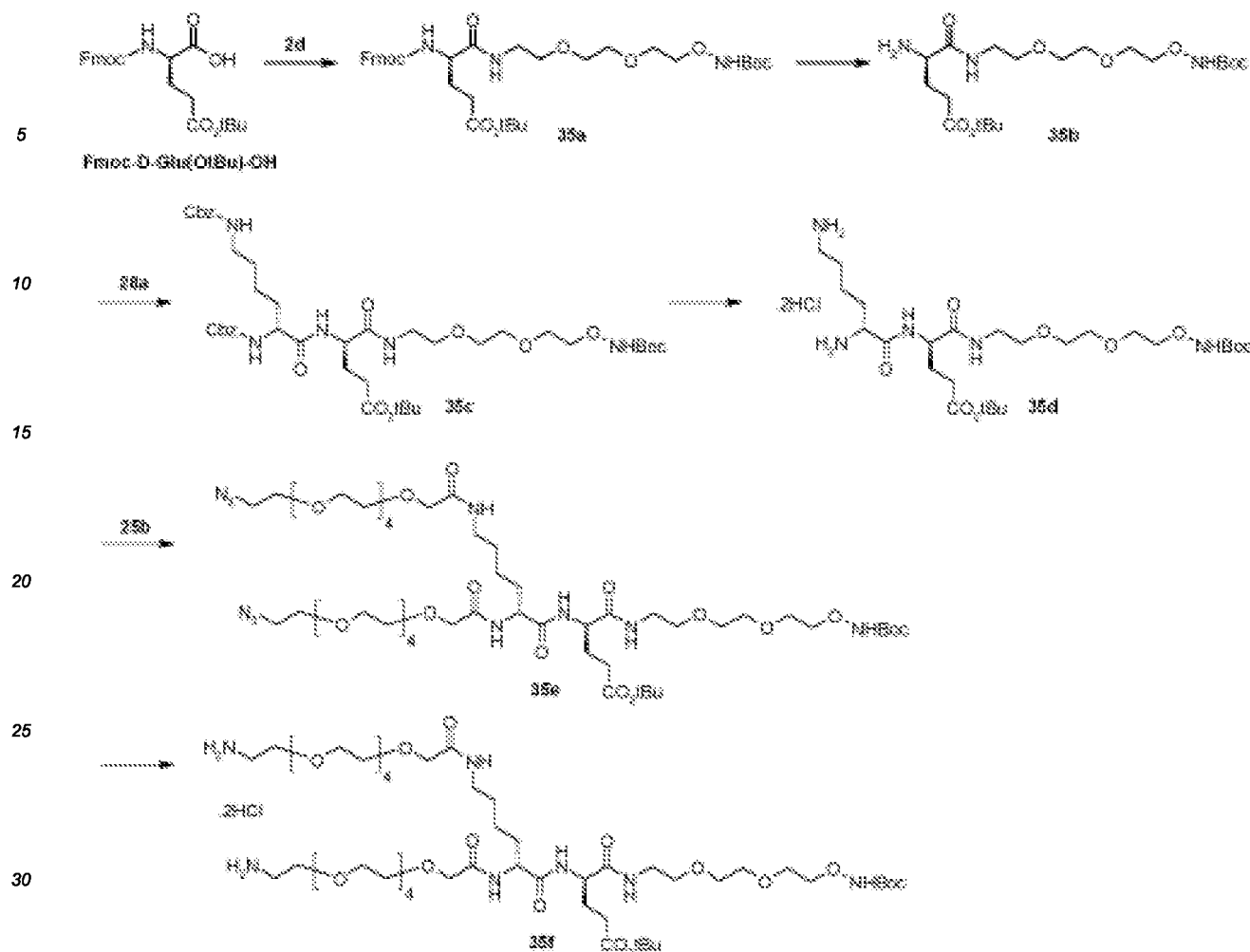
[0411]



[0412] Compound **34f** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **34d** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+ 1624.3$.

Example 53. Preparation of Compound **35g**

[0413]



Preparation of Compound 35a

[0414] DIPEA (0.61 mL, 3.52 mmol) and HBTU (665 mg, 1.175 mmol) were added to a stirring mixture of Fmoc-D-Glu(OtBu)-OH (500 mg, 1.17 mmol) and compound 2d (424 mg, 1.404 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (20 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and brine (20 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 35a (708 mg, 89 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 672.7.

Preparation of Compound 35b

[0415] To a solution of compound 35a (708 mg, 1.04 mmol) in THF (8 mL) was added piperidine (2 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 20 minutes, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 35b (400 mg, 85 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 450.1.

Preparation of Compound 35c

[0416] DIPEA (0.19 mL, 1.1 mmol) and HBTU (253 mg, 0.66 mmol) were added to a stirring mixture of compound 28a (203 mg, 0.484 mmol) and compound 35b (200 mg, 0.44 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound 35c (235 mg, 63 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 847.0.

Preparation of Compound 35d

[0417] To a solution of compound **35c** (235 mg, 0.277 mmol) in MeOH (15 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 30 mg). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **35d** (160 mg, 100 %), which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 578.7.

Preparation of Compound 35e

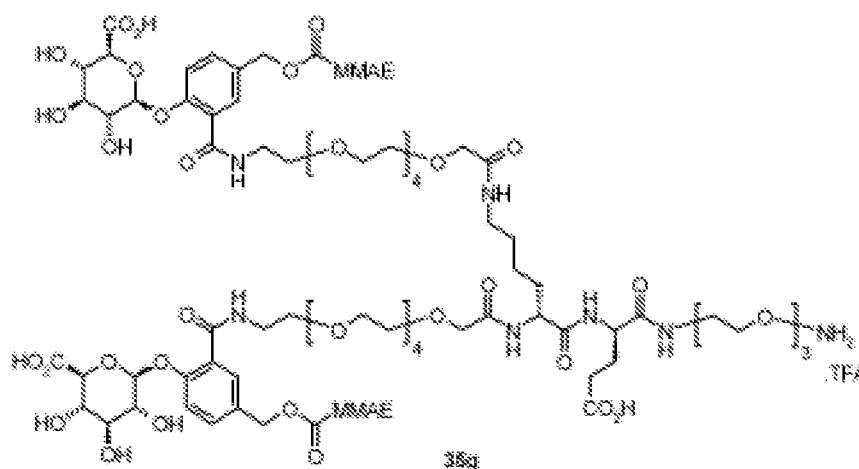
[0418] DIPEA (0.145 mL, 1.758 mmol) and HBTU (262 mg, 1.465 mmol) were added to a stirring mixture of compound **35d** (160 mg, 0.276 mmol) and compound **25b** (187 mg, 0.581 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **35e** (260 mg, 79 %). EI-MS m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1185.4.

Preparation of Compound 35f

[0419] To a solution of compound **35e** (70 mg, 0.059 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 15 mg). After stirring at room temperature for 90 minutes under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **35f** (67 mg, 100 %), which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1133.3.

Preparation of Compound 35g

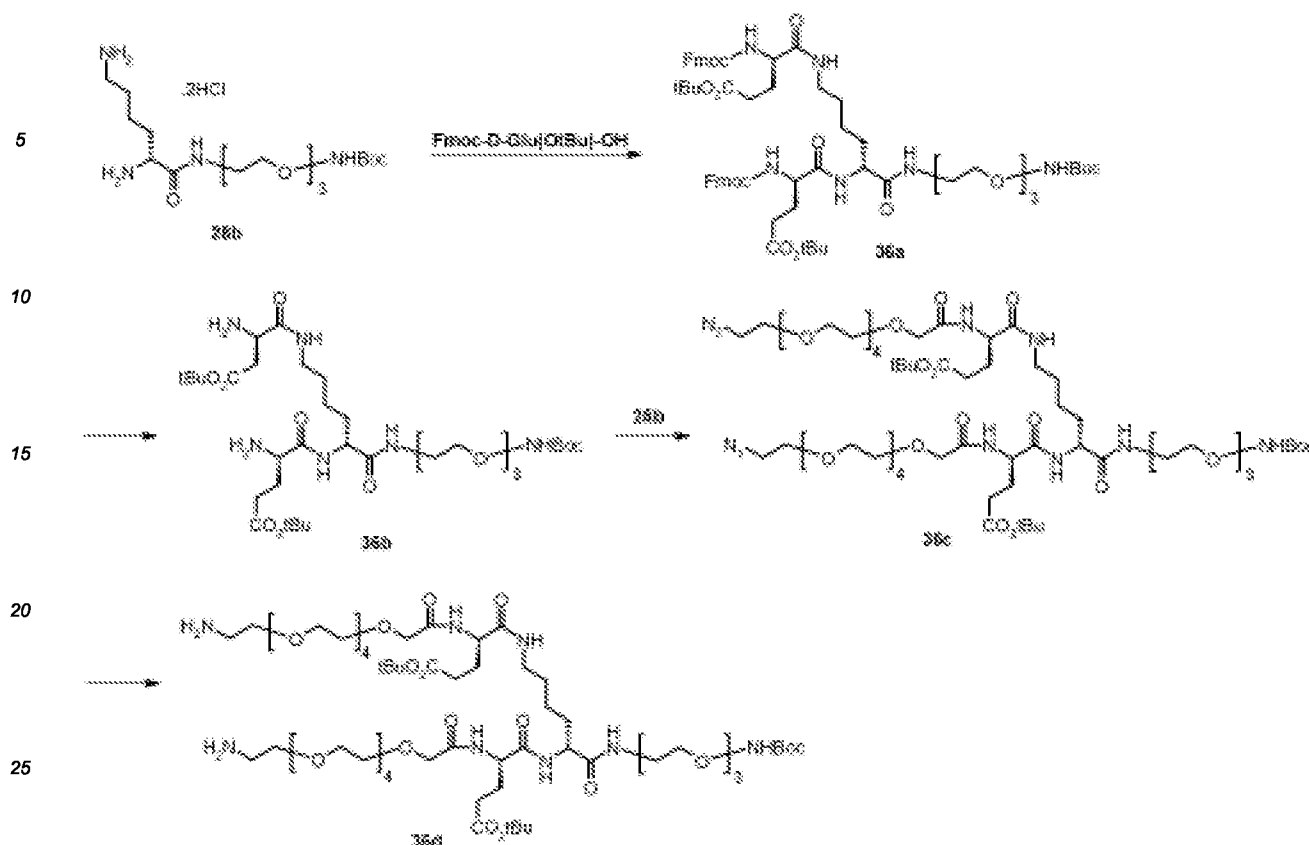
[0420]



[0421] Compound **35g** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **35f** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. EI-MS m/z: $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1559.9.

Example 54. Preparation of Compound 36e

[0422]



Preparation of Compound 36a

[0423] DIPEA (0.3 mL, 3.10 mmol) and HBTU (474 mg, 2.275 mmol) were added to a stirring mixture of the Fmoc-D-Glu(OtBu)-OH (484 mg, 1.138 mmol) and compound **28b** (223 mg, 0.569 mmol) in DMF (7 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (20 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and brine (20 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **36a** (593 mg, 86 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1208.3.

Preparation of Compound 36b

[0424] To a solution of compound **36a** (593 mg, 0.49 mmol) in THF (8 mL) was added piperidine (1 mL) at room temperature. After stirring for 20 minutes, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **36b** (166 mg, 44 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 763.9.

Preparation of Compound 36c

[0425] DIPEA (0.15 mL, 0.84 mmol) and HBTU (247 mg, 0.63 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **36b** (166 mg, 0.21 mmol) and compound **25b** (147 mg, 0.441 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **36c** (195 mg, 68 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1370.6.

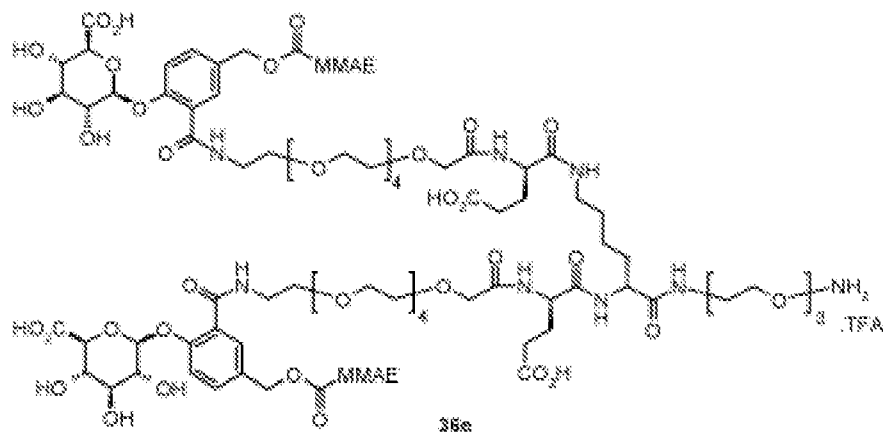
Preparation of Compound 36d

[0426] To a solution of compound **36c** (195 mg, 0.14 mmol) in MeOH (10 mL) was added Pd/C (10 wt. %, 30 mg). Then the reaction mixture was stirring at room temperature for 90 minutes under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound

36d (187 mg, 100 %), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 1318.6.

Preparation of Compound 36e

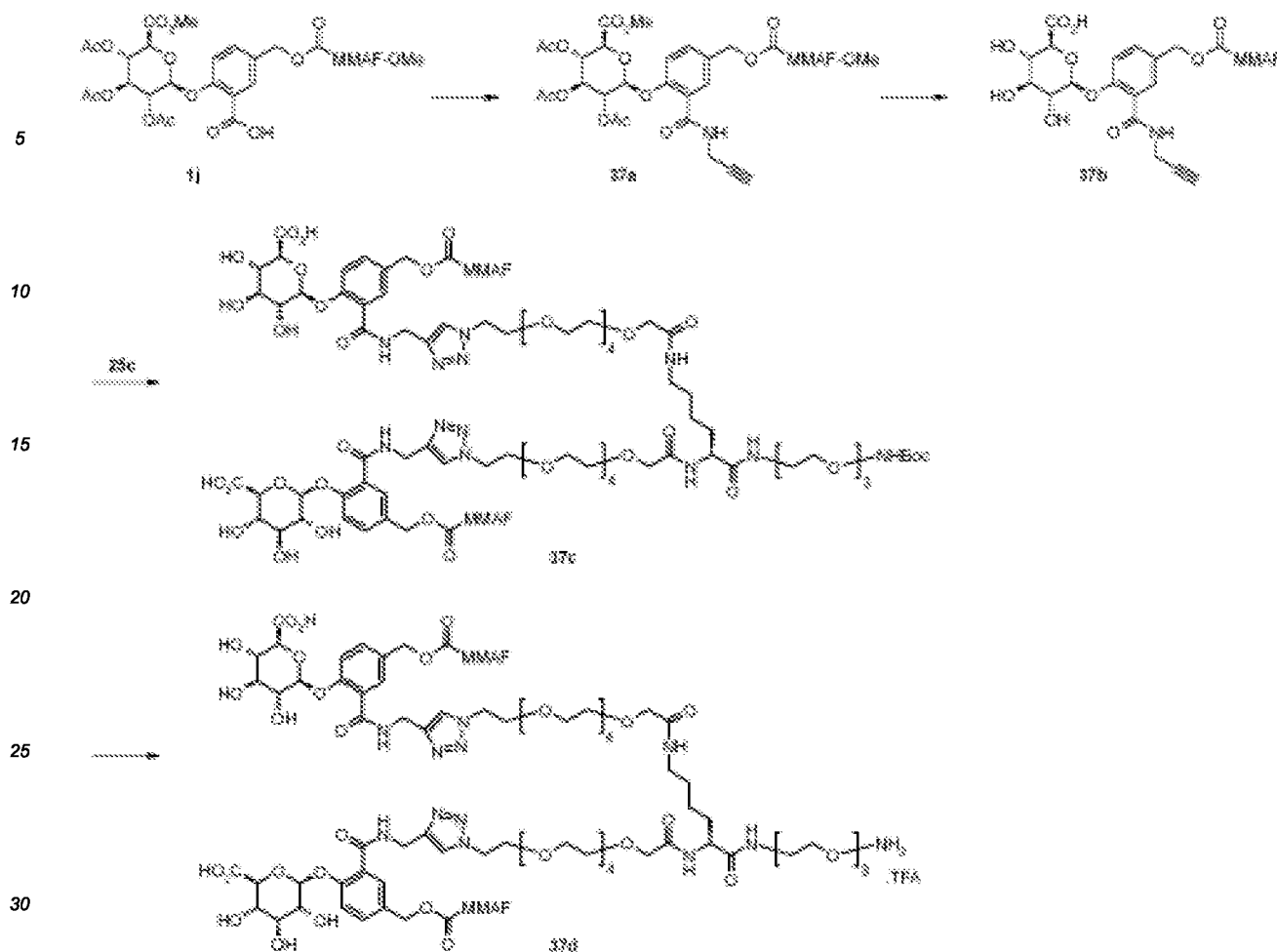
[0427]



[0428] Compound **36e** was prepared from compound **11** and compound **36d** by a similar method of preparing compound **25e** in Example 35. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1624.4.

Example 55. Preparation of Compound 37d

[0429]



Preparation of Compound 37a

35 **[0430]** DIPEA (0.083 mL, 0.71 mmol) and HBTU (136 mg, 0.36 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of propargyl amine (0.018 mL, 0.285 mmol) and compound **1j** (300 mg, 0.238 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **37a** (300 mg, 97 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1294.0.

40

Preparation of Compound 37b

45 **[0431]** To a solution of compound **37a** (300 mg, 0.24 mmol) in THF (2 mL) and MeOH (2 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (50 mg, 1.20 mmol) in H₂O (2 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and was concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/DM-SO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **37b** (165 mg, 60 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1140.8.

Preparation of Compound 37c

50 **[0432]** CuSO₄ · 5H₂O (1 mg) and sodium ascorbate (2 mg) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **37b** (50 mg, 0.042 mmol) and compound **25c** (23 mg, 0.02 mmol) in THF (2 mL) and H₂O (2 mL). The pH was adjusted to about 7 by addition of 1 M aq. Na₂CO₃. After stirring at 20 °C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **37c** (32.4 mg, 48 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1638.2.

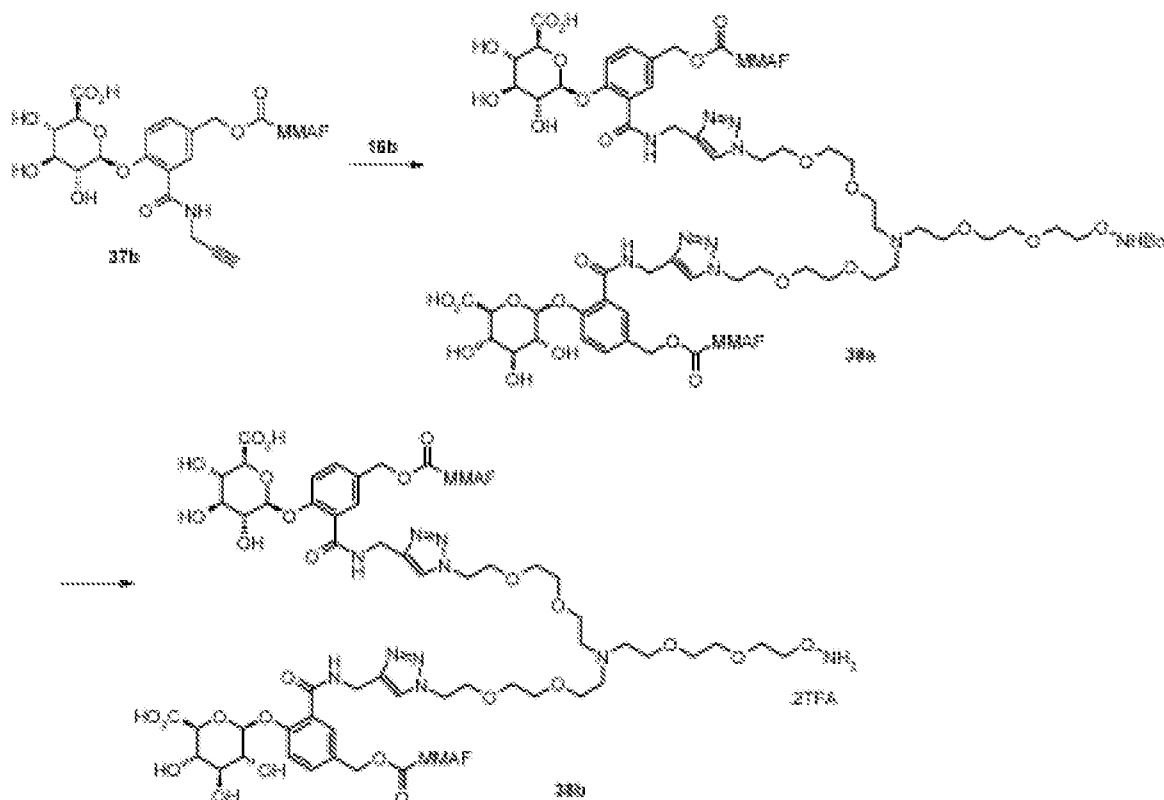
55

Preparation of Compound 37d

[0433] TFA (0.4 mL) was added to a solution of compound **37c** (32.4 mg, 0.01 mmol) in DCM (2 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **37d** (19.6 mg, 62 %) as white solid. EI-MS *m/z*: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1590.2.

Example 56. Preparation of Compound 38b

[0434]

Preparation of Compound 38a

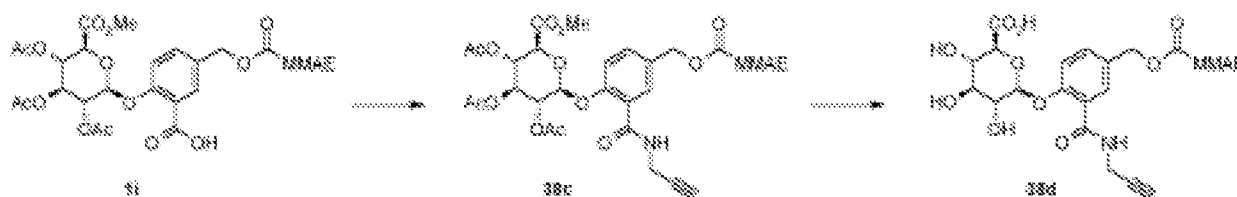
[0435] CuSO₄·5H₂O (1 mg) and sodium ascorbate (2 mg) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **37b** (60 mg, 0.052 mmol) and compound **16b** (14 mg, 0.025 mmol) in THF (2 mL) and H₂O (2 mL). The pH was adjusted to about 7 by addition of 1 M aq. Na₂CO₃. After stirring at 20 °C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **38a** (61 mg, 82 %). EI-MS *m/z*: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1430.2.

Preparation of Compound 38b

[0436] TFA (0.4 mL) was added to a solution of compound **38a** (59.8 mg, 0.02 mmol) in DCM (2.0 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/AN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **38b** (14.6 mg, 24 %) as white solid. EI-MS *m/z*: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1380.1.

Example 57. Preparation of Compound 38e

[0437]



Preparation of Compound **38c**

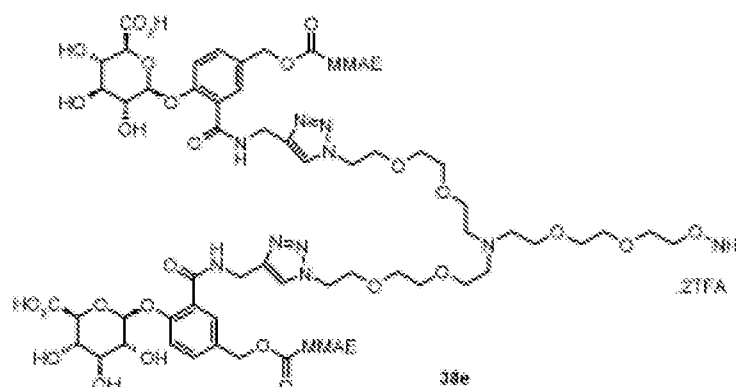
[0438] DIPEA (0.075 mL, 0.428 mmol) and HBTU (122 mg, 0.321 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of propargyl amine (0.016 mL, 0.256 mmol) and compound **11** (264 mg, 0.214 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into H₂O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (10 mL) and brine (10 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration, the residue was purified by column chromatography, which produced the compound **38c** (270 mg, 100 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1266.2.

Preparation of Compound **38d**

[0439] To a solution of compound **38c** (270 mg, 0.213 mmol) in THF (2 mL) and MeOH (2 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (36 mg, 0.853 mmol) in H₂O (2 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and was concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/DM-SO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **38d** (168 mg, 70 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1126.1.

Preparation of Compound **38e**

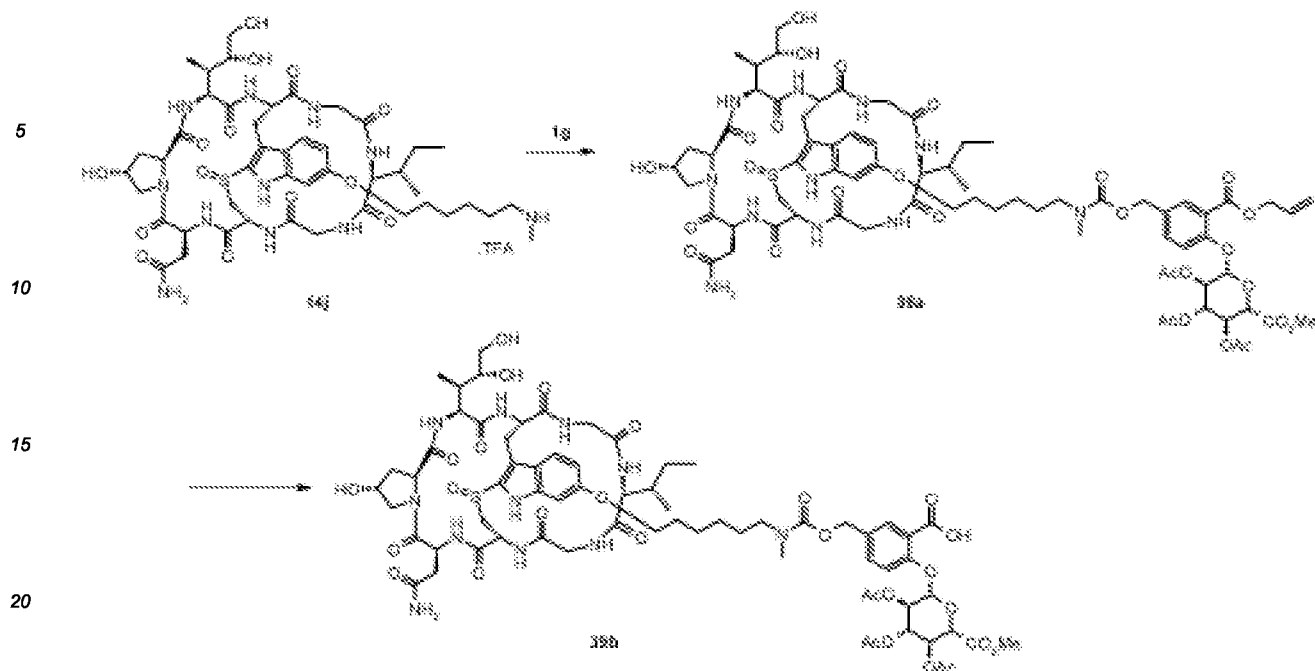
[0440]



[0441] Compound **38e** was prepared from compound **38d** and compound **16b** by a similar method of preparing compound **38b** in Example 56. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1366.2.

Example 58. Preparation of Compound **39e**

[0442]

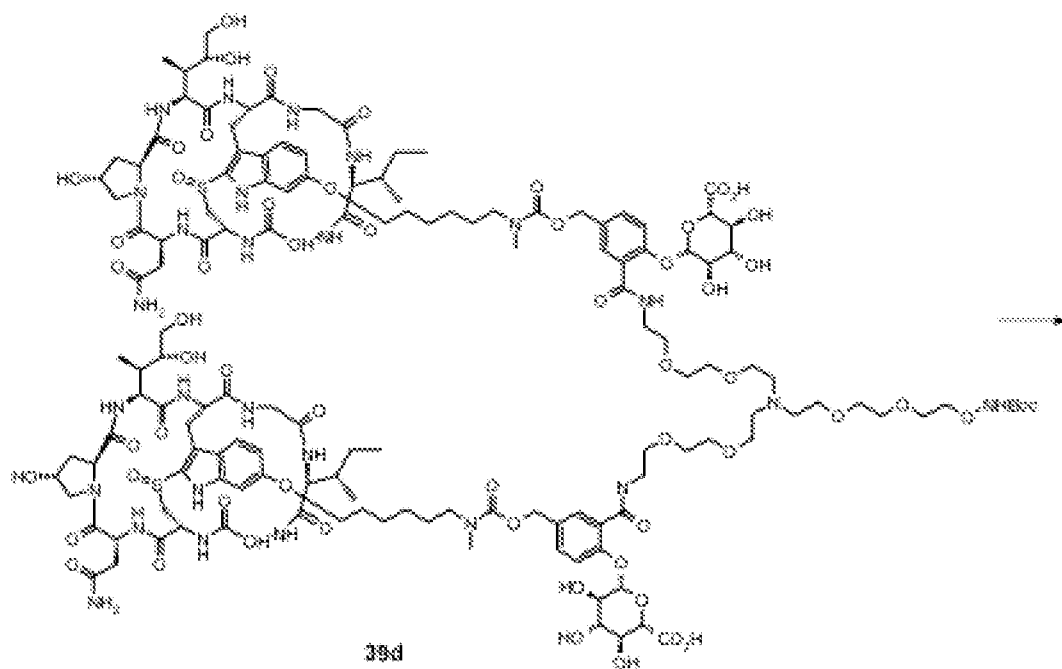
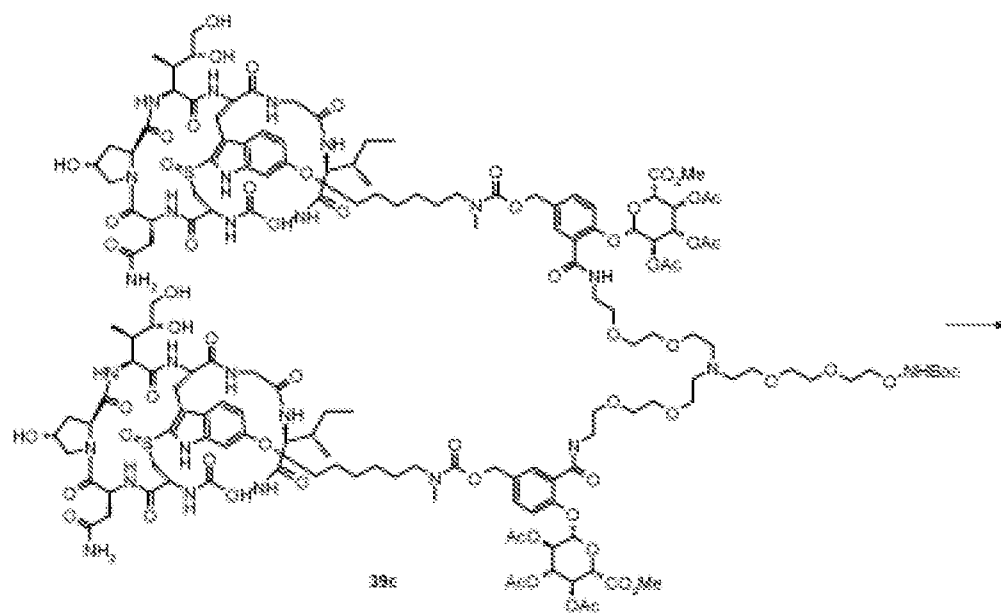
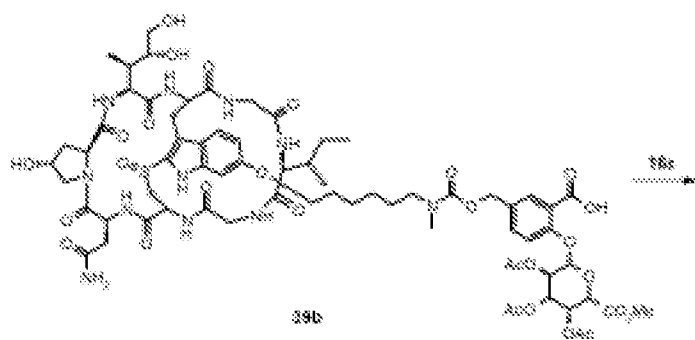


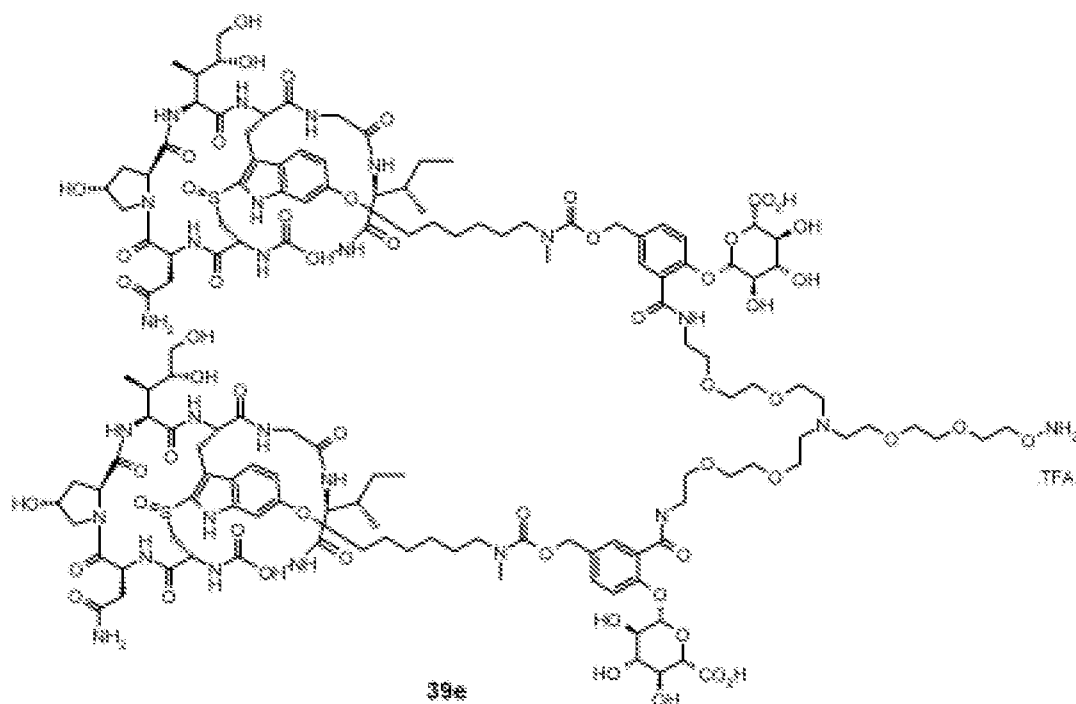
Preparation of compound **39a**

[0443] Compound **1g** (27 mg, 0.039 mmol), compound **14j** (45 mg, 0.039 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (1 mg, 0.0078 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (2 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.2 mL) and DIPEA (0.014 mL, 0.078 mmol) were added. After stirring at 0 °C to room temperature for 24 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **39a** (36 mg, 58 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1582.9, [M+Na]⁺ 1604.5.

Preparation of compound **39b**

[0444] Compound **39a** (35 mg, 0.022 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (1.5 mg, 0.005 mmol) were dissolved in DCM (2 mL). Pyrrolidine (0.0025 mL, 0.026 mmol) and Pd(PPh₃)₄ (1.3 mg, 0.001 mmol) were added to the reaction mixture at room temperature and then allowed to stir for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with n-butanol (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **39b** (34 mg, crude) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ : 1542.7.





Preparation of Compound 39c

[0445] DIPEA (0.0026 mL, 0.039 mmol) and PyBOP (4.7 mg, 0.023 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **39b** (15 mg, 0.009 mmol) and compound **16c** (2.0 mg, 0.0038 mmol) in DMF (0.3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 13 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **39c** (12 mg, 35 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1788.5.

Preparation of Compound 39d

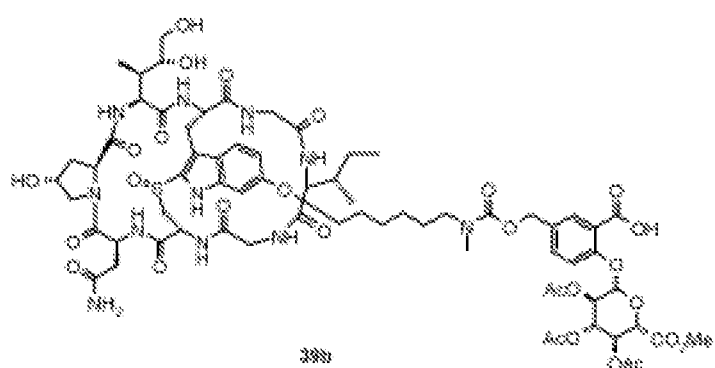
[0446] To a solution of compound **39c** (12 mg, 0.0033 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (1.4 mg, 0.033 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted with acetic acid to 4-5, and the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in DMSO (1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **39d** (11 mg, 98 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1648.6.

Preparation of Compound 39e

[0447] TFA (0.5 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **39d** (11 mg, 0.003 mmol) in DCM (3.0 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **39e** (1.2 mg, 11 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1598.3.

Example 59. Preparation of Compound 40c

[0448]



5

10

15

20

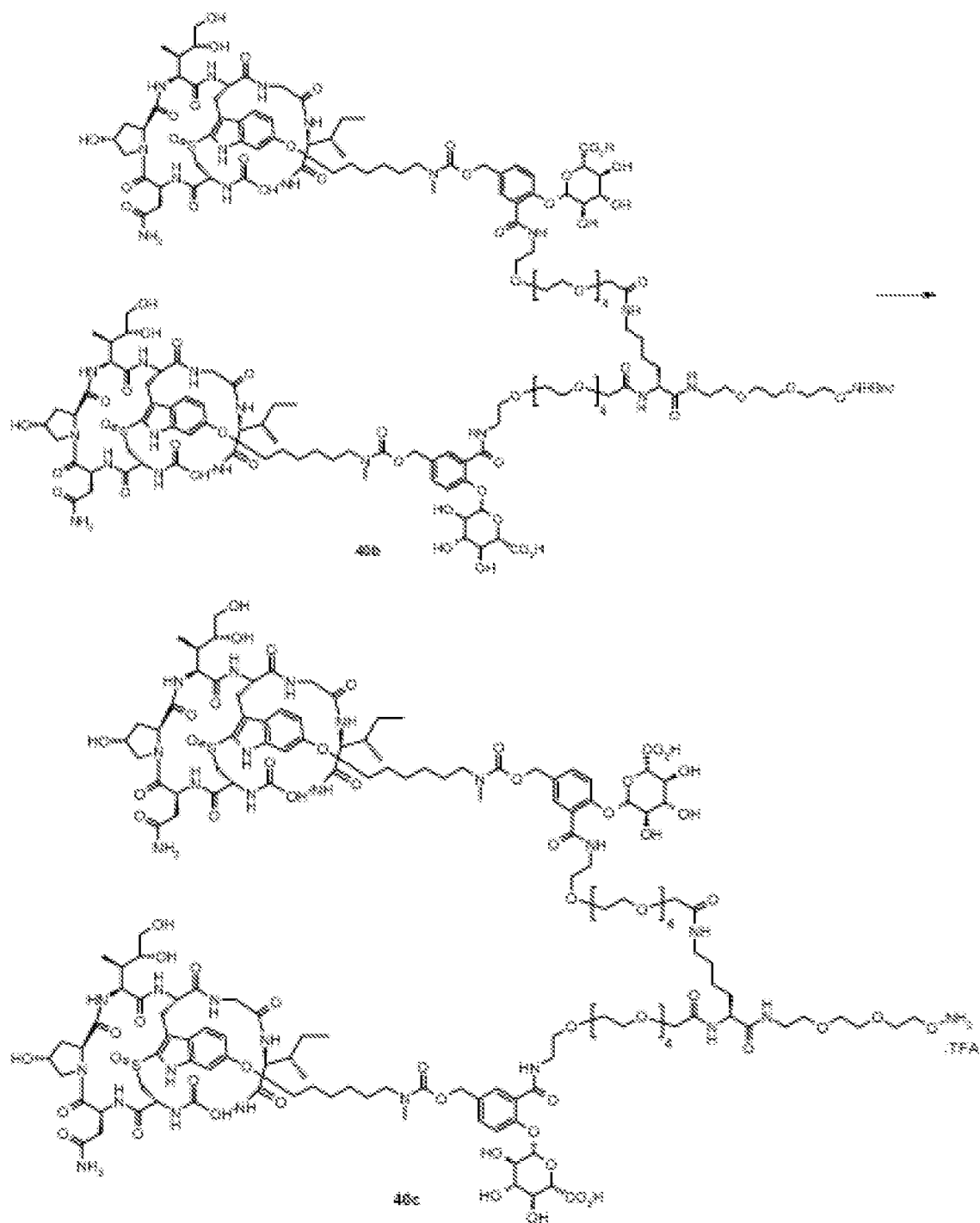
25

30

35

40

45



Preparation of Compound **40a**

[0449] DIPEA (0.004 mL, 0.021 mmol) and HBTU (5.0 mg, 0.013 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **39b** (20 mg, 0.012 mmol) and compound **25d** (5.0 mg, 0.005 mmol) in DMF (1.5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1.0 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **40a** (14.5 mg, 30 %). ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1998.8.

Preparation of Compound **40b**

[0450] To a solution of compound **40a** (10 mg, 0.0025 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (1.0 mg, 0.025 mmol) in H_2O (1 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and

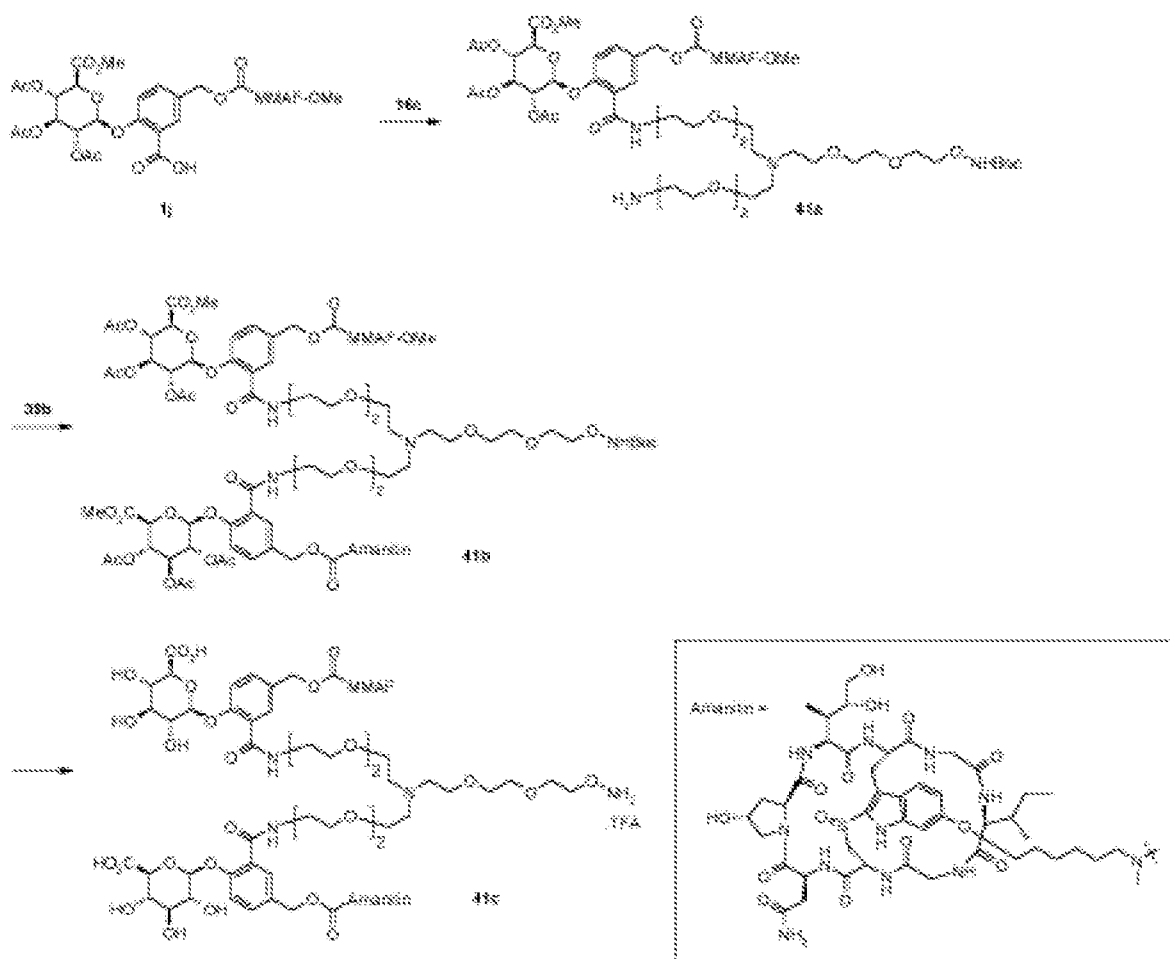
concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **40b** (6.9 mg, 74 %). ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1858.3.

Preparation of Compound **40c**

[0451] TFA (0.2 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **40b** (6.9 mg, 0.0018 mmol) in DCM (2.0 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **40c** (1.5 mg, 23 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1808.6.

Example 60. Preparation of Compound **41c**

[0452]



Preparation of Compound **41a**

[0453] DIPEA (0.116 mL, 0.66 mmol) and PyBOP (127 mg, 0.24 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **16c** (280 mg, 0.22 mmol) and compound **1j** (587 mg, 1.10 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (200 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **41a** (250 mg, 64 %). ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 883.2, $[M+H]^+$ 1766.

Preparation of Compound **41b**

[0454] DIPEA (0.0017 mL, 0.0096 mmol) and PyBOP (2.0 mg, 0.0038 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **41a** (5.7 mg, 0.0032 mmol) and compound **39b** (5.0 mg, 0.0032 mmol) in DMF (0.5 mL). After stirring at room

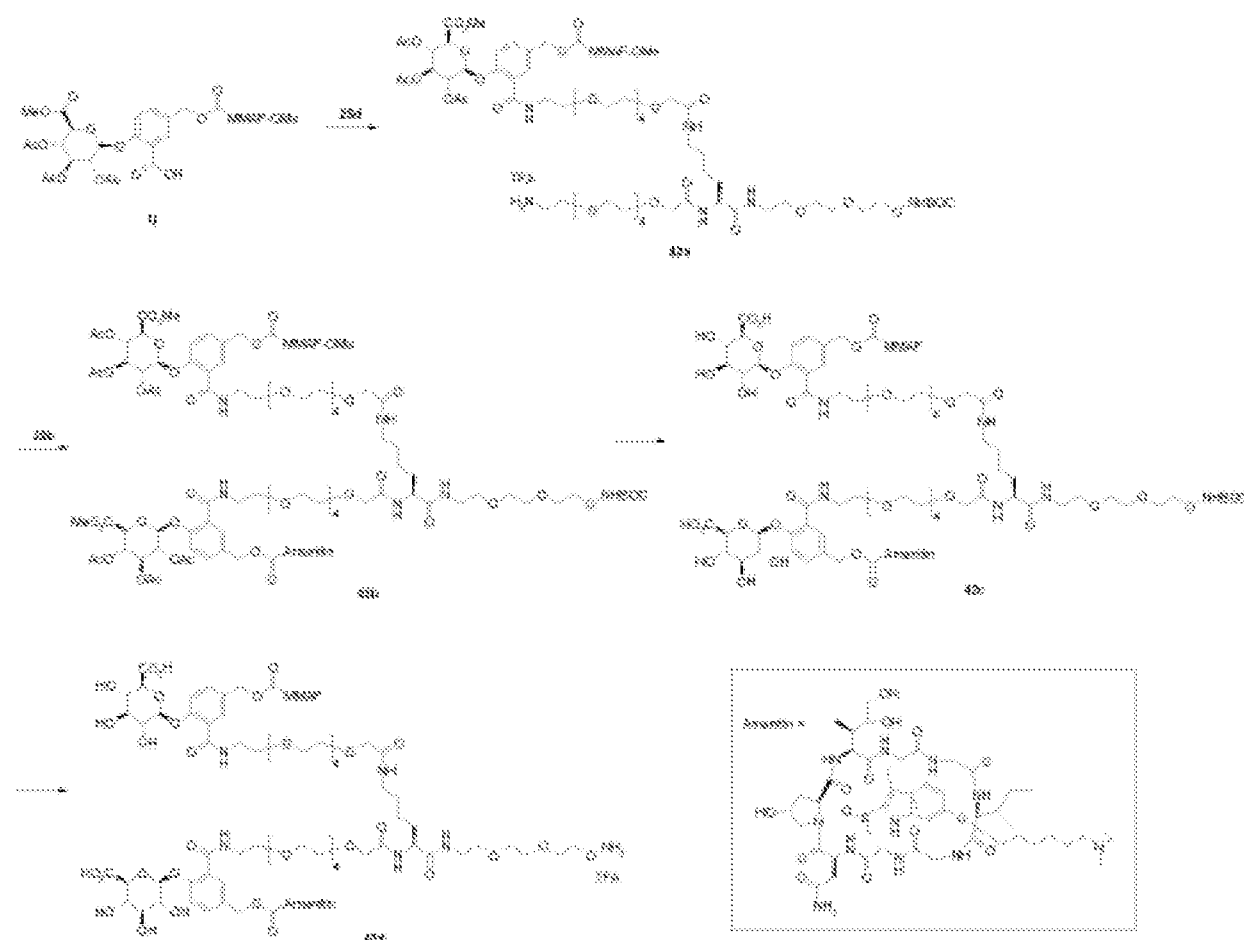
temperature for 3 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was dissolved in MeCN (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **41b** (8.0 mg, 75 %). ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 1645.

Preparation of Compound **41c**

[0455] To a solution of compound **41b** (8.0 mg, 0.0024 mmol) in MeOH (0.5 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (1.2 mg, 0.028 mmol) in H_2O (0.1 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using 2 N aq. HCl solution and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was diluted with DCM (2 mL) and H_2O (3 drops). Then TFA (0.1 mL) was added at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N_2 flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **41c** (3.1 mg, 44 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ + 1448, $1/2[M+Na]^+$ 1459.

Example 61. Preparation of Compound **42d**

[0456]



Preparation of Compound **42a**

[0457] DIPEA (0.026 mL, 0.23 mmol) and HBTU (22 mg, 0.06 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **1j** (60 mg, 0.048 mmol) and compound **25d** (214 mg, 0.19 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1.0 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **42a** (64 mg, 58 %). EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 2286.8.

Preparation of Compound **42b**

[0458] DIPEA (0.011 mL, 0.06 mmol) and HBTU (14 mg, 0.036 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound

42a (68 mg, 0.03 mmol) and compound **39b** (46 mg, 0.03 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in DMSO (1.0 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **42b** (60 mg, 52 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1906.3.

Preparation of Compound **42c**

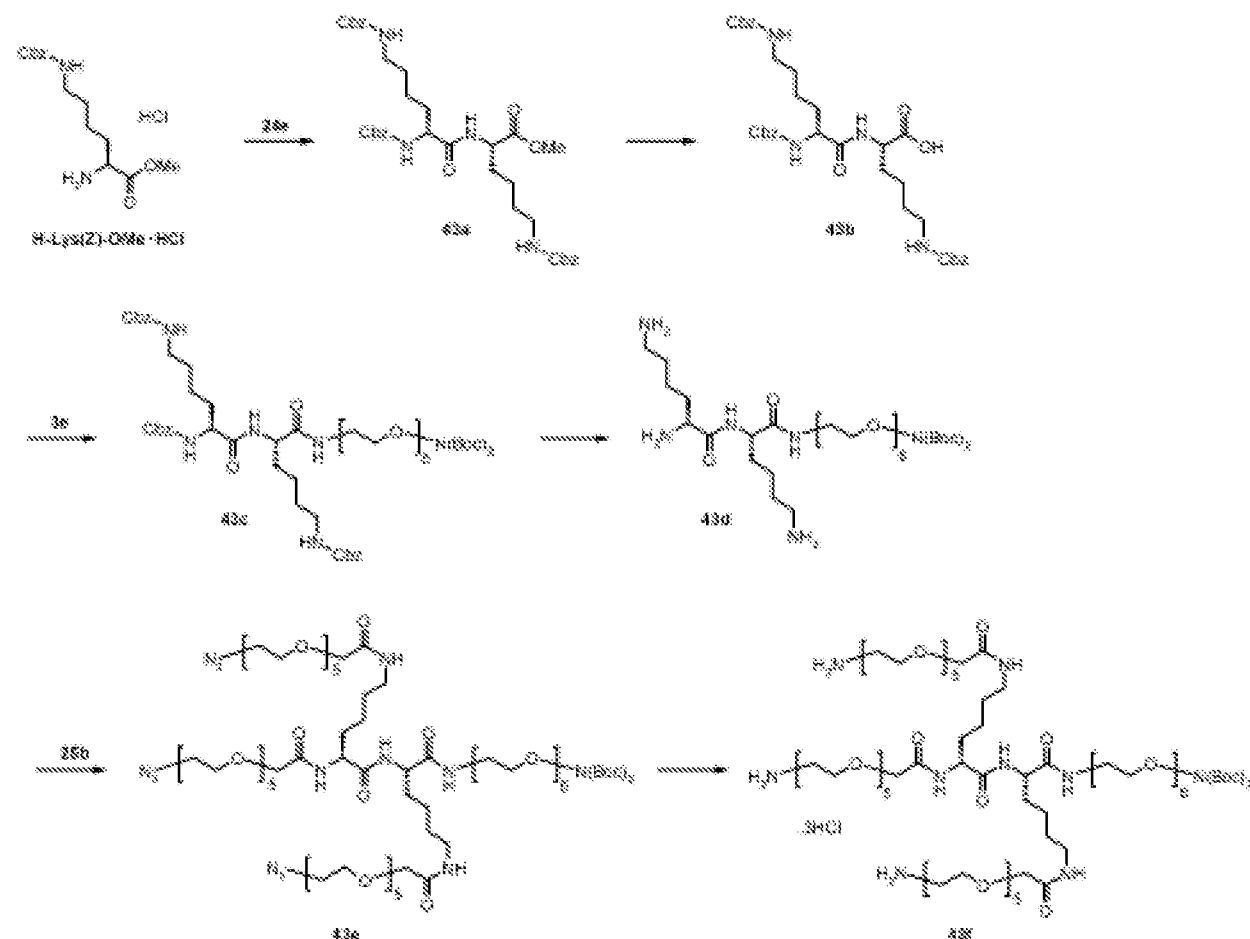
[0459] To a solution of compound **42b** (60 mg, 0.016 mmol) in MeOH (2 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (5 mg, 0.126 mmol) in H₂O (2 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by prep. HPLC, which produced the compound **42c** (37 mg, 65 %). EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1759.3.

Preparation of Compound **42d**

[0460] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **42c** (37 mg, 0.01 mmol) in DCM (3 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **42d** (15 mg, 45 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: 1/2[M+H]⁺ 1659.6.

Example 62. Preparation of Compound **43i**

[0461]



Preparation of Compound **43a**

[0462] DIPEA (10.4 mL, 23.8 mmol) and HBTU (13.5 g, 35.7 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of H-Lys(z)-OMe hydrochloride (7.0 g, 23.8 mmol) and compound **24e** (9.86 mg, 23.8 mmol) in DMF (50 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 8 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted water (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50

mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **43a** (9.3 g, 57 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.22 (d, 1H), 7.37-7.29 (m, 15H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 5.00 (s, 6H), 4.18 (m, 1H), 4.00 (m, 1H), 3.59 (s, 3H), 2.96 (m, 4H), 1.67-1.50 (m, 4H), 1.38-1.29 (m, 4H), 1.19-1.18 (m, 4H). ELMS m/z: [M+Na]⁺ 712.96.

Preparation of Compound **43b**

[0463] To a solution of compound **43a** (9.3 g, 13.5 mmol) in THF:MeOH:H₂O (60 mL:30 mL:30 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (1.13 g, 26.9 mmol) at 0 °C under N₂. After 2 hours, the reaction mixture was acidified with 1 N aq. HCl until pH 4, and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration under reduced pressure provided compound **43b** (9.1 g, crude), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 677.48, 2[M+H]⁺ 1353.82.

Preparation of Compound **43c**

[0464] DIPEA (1.47 mL, 8.44 mmol), HOBt (484 mg, 3.58 mmol) and EDC-HCl (809 mg, 4.22 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **43b** (2.5 g, 3.71 mmol) and compound **3e** (1.8 g, 3.38 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **43c** (2.3 g, 59 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1155.92, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 1055.83.

Preparation of Compound **43d**

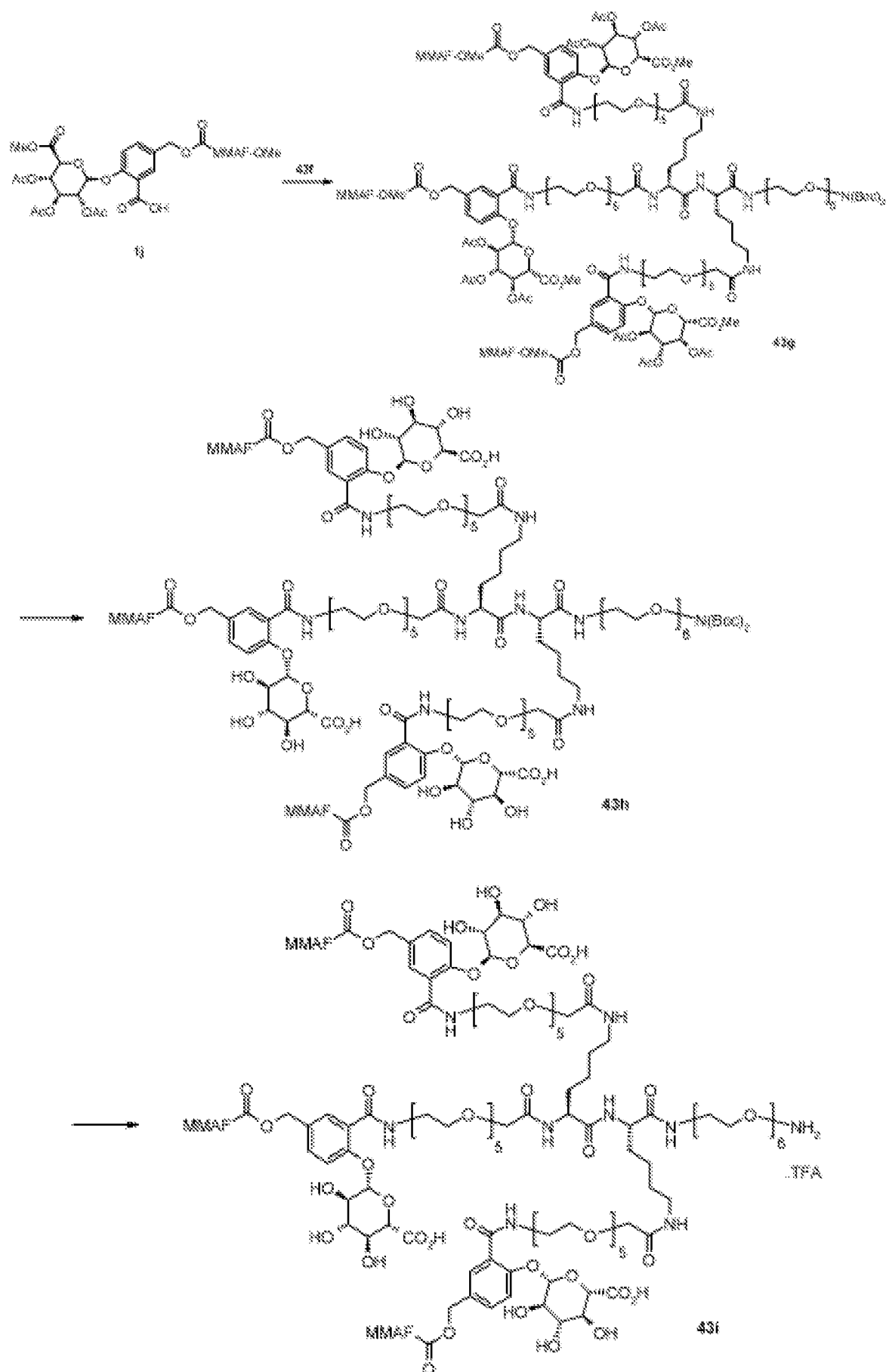
[0465] To a stirred mixture of compound **43c** (2.3 g, 1.99 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 424 mg 3.98 mmol) in MeOH (200 mL) was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.99 mL, 3.98 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (100 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **43d** (1.5 g, crude), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 753.29.

Preparation of Compound **43e**

[0466] DIPEA (0.14 mL, 0.80 mmol), HOBt (59 mg, 0.43 mmol) and EDC-HCl (102 mg, 0.53 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **43d** (2.5 g, 3.71 mmol) and compound **25b** (150 g, 0.46 mmol) in DMF (5 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1 N aq. HCl (30 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (30 mL) and brine (30 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting crude product was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **43e** (100 mg, 45 %) as colorless oil. EI-MS m/z: [M+Na]⁺ 1685.11, 1/2[M+H-Boc]⁺ 731.82.

Preparation of Compound **43f**

[0467] To a stirred mixture of compound **43e** (100 mg, 0.06 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 20 mg 0.192 mmol) in MeOH (20 mL) was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.045 mL, 0.18 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (30 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **43f** (95 mg) as brown foam, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1586.30, 1/2[M+H]⁺ 793.02.



Preparation of Compound 43g

[0468] DIPEA (0.030 mL, 0.170 mmol) and HBTU (36 mg, 0.094 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound 43f (45 mg, 0.028 mmol) and compound 1j (114 mg, 0.091 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 16 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound 43g (31 mg, 21 %). ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H-Boc]⁺ 1705.74, 1/4[M+H-2Boc]⁺ 1254.79.

Preparation of Compound 43h

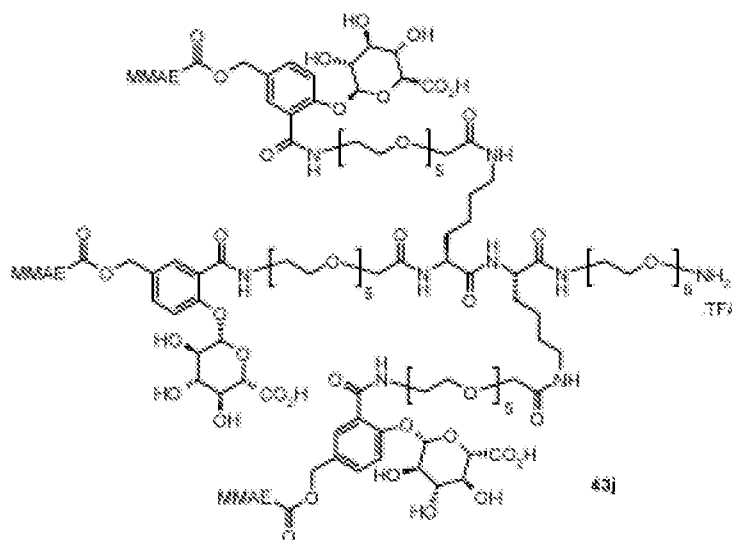
[0469] To a solution of compound 43g (31 mg, 0.006 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (3.7 mg, 0.088 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at -20 °C. After stirring for 2 hours at -20 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound 43h (18 mg, 64 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H-Boc]⁺ 1735.19, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1301.95, 1/5[M+H-Boc]⁺ 1021.71.

Preparation of Compound 43i

[0470] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound 43h (18 mg, 0.004 mmol) in DCM (1.0 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 1 hour, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound 43i (6 mg, 33 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 1547.75, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1161.14.

Example 63. Preparation of Compound 43j

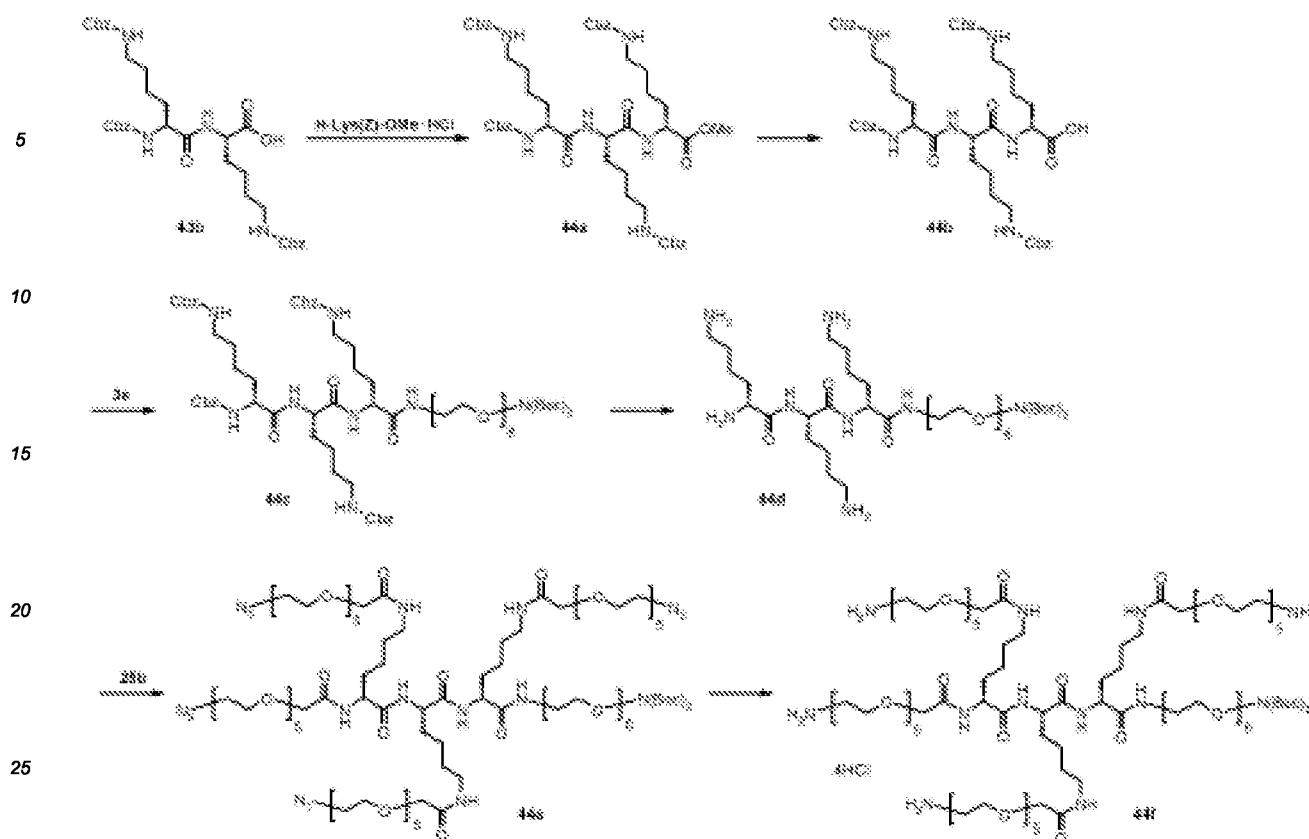
[0471]



[0472] Compound 43j was prepared from compound 1i and compound 43f by a similar method of preparing compound 43i in Example 62. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 1532.37, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1149.69.

Example 64. Preparation of Compound 44i

[0473]



Preparation of Compound **44a**

[0474] DIPEA (1.9 mL, 11.0 mmol) and HBTU (2.5 g, 6.64 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound H-Lys(z)-OMe hydrochloride (1.3 g, 4.43 mmol) and compound **43b** (3.0 g, 4.43 mmol) in DMF (30 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL), and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **44a** (3.9 g, 93 %). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 953.42.

Preparation of Compound **44b**

[0475] To a solution of compound **44a** (2.1 g, 2.20 mmol) in THF:MeOH:H₂O (24 mL:8 mL:8 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (185 mg, 4.40 mmol) at room temperature under N₂. After 2 hours, the reaction mixture was acidified with 1 N aq. HCl until pH 4, and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration under reduced pressure provided compound **44b** (2.0 g), which was used without further purification. EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 939.35, [M+Na]⁺ 961.37.

Preparation of Compound **44c**

[0476] DIPEA (0.93 mL, 5.33 mmol) and HBTU (1.21 g, 3.20 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **44b** (2.0 g, 2.13 mmol) and compound **3e** (1.14 g, 2.13 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N aq. HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. NaHCO₃ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **44c** (2.60 g, 86 %). EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1418.44, [M+Na]⁺ 1440.39, [M+H-Boc]⁺ 1318.47.

Preparation of Compound **44d**

[0477] To a stirred mixture of compound **44c** (2.60 g, 1.83 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 781 mg 7.34 mmol) in MeOH

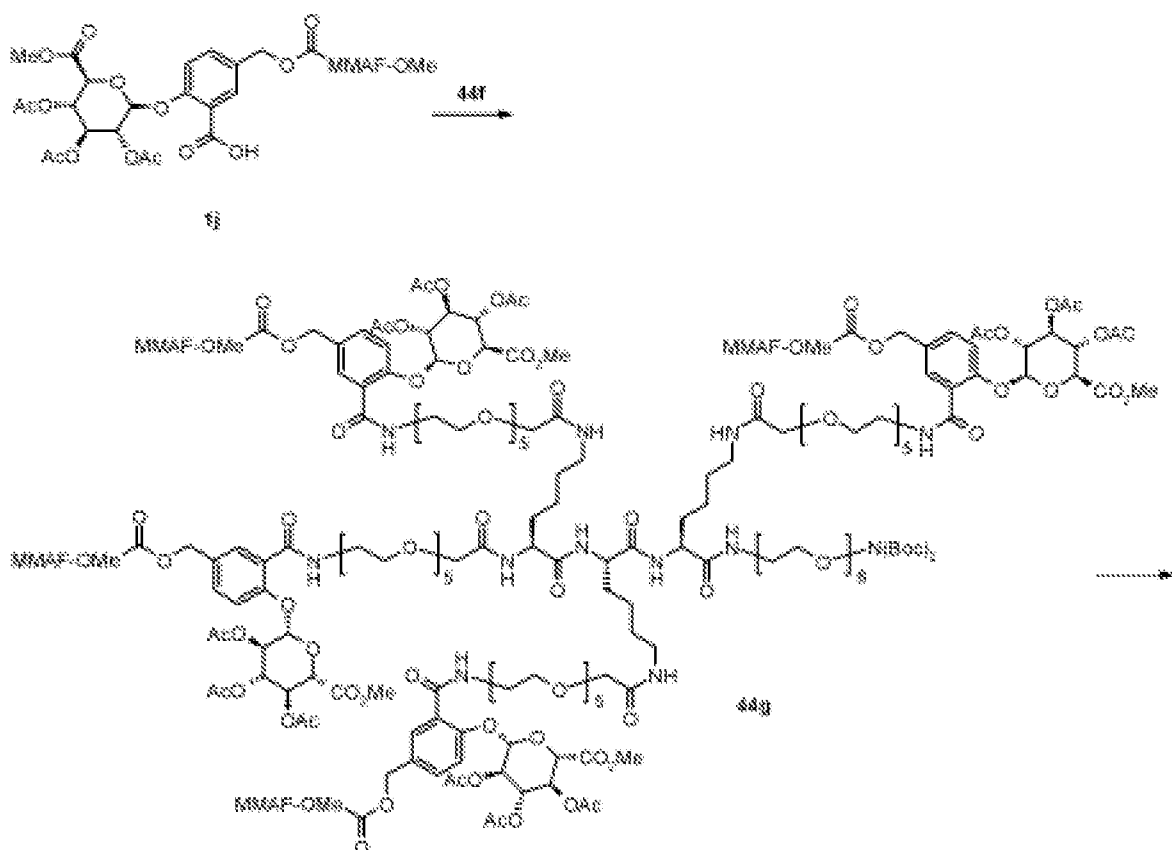
(50 mL) was added HCl (4 N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.9 mL, 3.67 mmol). And then the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen. The reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **44d** (1.73 g) as yellow form, which was used without further purification. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 881.90.

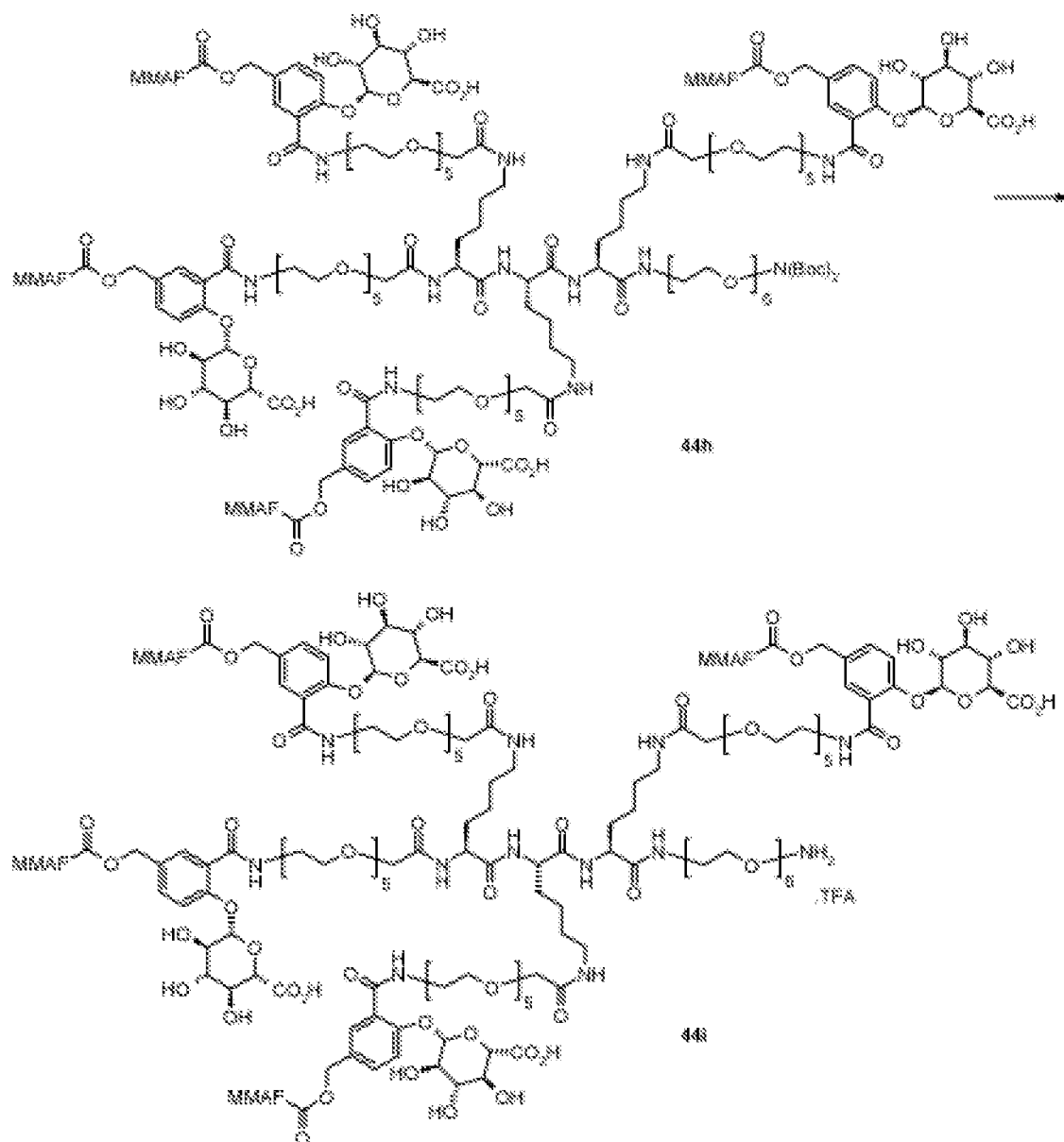
Preparation of Compound **44e**

[0478] DIPEA (1.58 mL, 9.08 mmol) and HBTU (2.58 g, 6.81 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **44d** (1.0 g, 1.13 mmol) and compound **25b** (1.82 g, 5.67 mmol) in DMF (20 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3×50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 0.5 N HCl (50 mL), saturated aq. $NaHCO_3$ (50 mL) and brine (50 mL) sequentially, and dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 . After filtration and concentration under reduced pressure, the resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **44e** (848 mg, 36 %). EI-MS m/z : $1/2[M+H-2Boc]^+$ 947.63.

Preparation of Compound **44f**

[0479] To a stirred mixture of compound **44e** (848 mg, 0.40 mmol) and Pd/C (10 wt. %, 172 mg 1.62 mmol) in MeOH (50 mL) was added HCl (4N in 1,4-dioxane, 0.4 mL, 1.62 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours under hydrogen, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and washed with MeOH (50 mL). The filtrate was concentrated to produce the compound **44f** (625 mg, crude), which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z : $1/2[M+H]^+$ 996.40, $1/3[M+H]^+$ 664.59





Preparation of Compound **44g**

[0480] DIPEA (0.067 mL, 0.386 mmol) and HBTU (110 mg, 0.289 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of compound **44f** (96 mg, 0.048 mmol) and compound **1j** (303 mg, 0.24 mmol) in DMF (3 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 16 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **44g** (67 mg, 20 %). ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 2315.93, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1737.60, 1/5[M+H]⁺ 1390.37.

Preparation of Compound **44h**

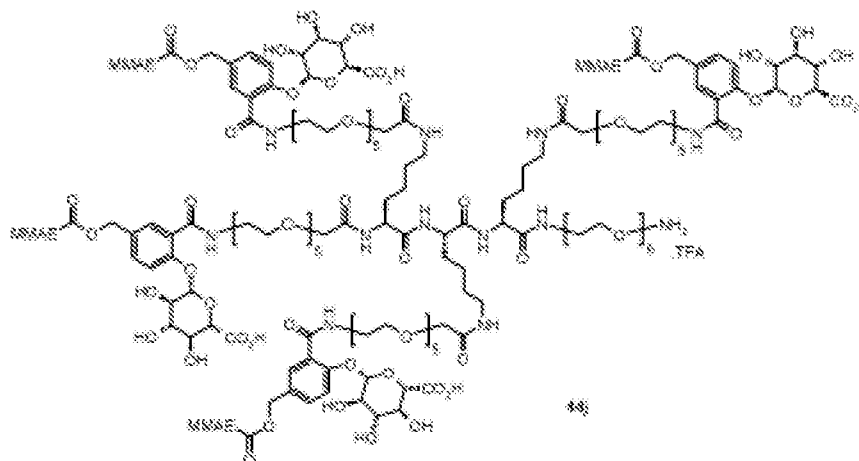
[0481] To a solution of the compound **44g** (67 mg, 0.009 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (8.1 mg, 0.192 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at -20 °C. After stirring for 2 hours at -20 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. Then the reaction mixture was dissolved in H₂O/DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **44h** (27.9 mg, 45 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 2110.24, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1582.97, 1/4[M+H-Boc]⁺ 1557.91.

Preparation of Compound 44i

[0482] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **44h** (27.9 mg, 0.004 mmol) in DCM (1.0 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 1 hour, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **44i** (13.6 mg, 50 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 2043.49, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1532.96, 1/5[M+H]⁺ 1226.62.

Example 65. Preparation of Compound 44j

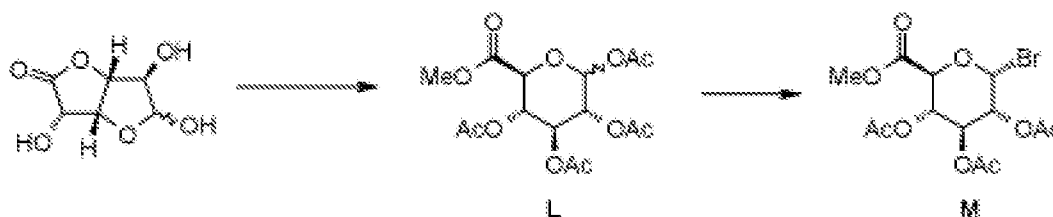
[0483]



[0484] Compound **44j** was prepared from compound **1i** and compound **44f** by a similar method of preparing compound **44i** in Example 64. ELMS m/z: 1/3[M+H]⁺ 2025.37, 1/4[M+H]⁺ 1519.10, 1/5[M+H]⁺ 1215.60.

Example 66. Preparation of Compound 45k

[0485]

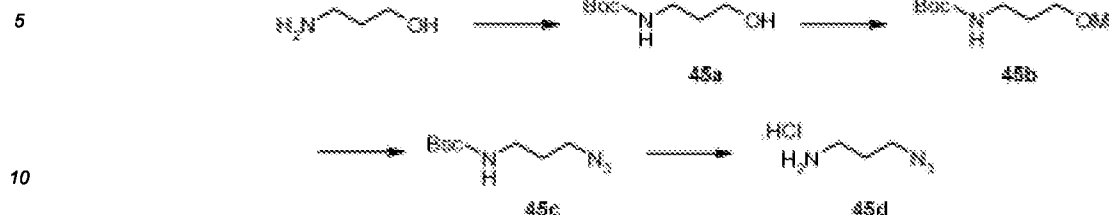
Preparation of Compound L

[0486] D-Glucurono-6,3-lactone (25.0 g, 141.9 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (250 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and a solution of NaOH (141 mg) in MeOH (100 mL) was slowly added thereto. After stirring for 24 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and then pyridine (66 mL) and acetic anhydride (71 mL) were added below 10 °C. After stirring at room temperature for 4 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **L** (41.6 g, 77 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 5.77 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 5.31 (t, *J* = 9.6 Hz, 1H), 5.24 (t, *J* = 9.6 Hz, 1H), 5.14 (m, 1H), 4.17 (d, *J* = 9 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 2.04 (m, 9H).

Preparation of Compound M

[0487] Compound **L** (10.0 g, 26.6 mmol) was dissolved in HBr (33% in AcOH, 20 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature. After stirring for 2 hours, toluene (50 mL) was added thereto, and the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography

to produce the compound **M** (10.9 g, 99 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 6.64 (d, $J = 3.6\text{ Hz}$, 1H), 5.61 (t, $J = 3.6\text{ Hz}$, 1H), 5.24 (t, $J = 3.6\text{ Hz}$, 1H), 4.85 (m, 1H), 4.58 (d, d, $J = 10.2\text{ Hz}$, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.05 (s, 3H).



Preparation of Compound **45a**

15 **[0488]** 3-Amino-1-propanol (3.0 g, 66.57 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (150 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and di-tert-butyl dicarbonate (16 g, 73.23 mmol) was added thereto. The obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hours. After the reaction was completed, the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **45a** (6.4 g, 92 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.78 (s, 1H), 3.65 (m, 2H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 2.90 (s, 1H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H).

20

Preparation of Compound **45b**

25 **[0489]** Compound **45a** (6.04 g, 34.47 mmol) and triethylamine (14.4 mL, 103.4 mmol) were dissolved in THF at 0 °C under nitrogen and then, slowly treated with methanesulfonic anhydride (7.21 g, 41.36 mmol). The obtained mixture was stirred at room temperature under nitrogen for 12 hours. After the reaction was completed, the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **45b** (9.01 g, 98 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.73 (s, 1H), 4.30 (t, $J = 5.9\text{ Hz}$, 2H), 3.31-3.24 (m, 2H), 3.04 (s, 3H), 1.94 (t, $J = 6.1\text{ Hz}$, 2H), 1.44 (s, 9H).

Preparation of Compound **45c**

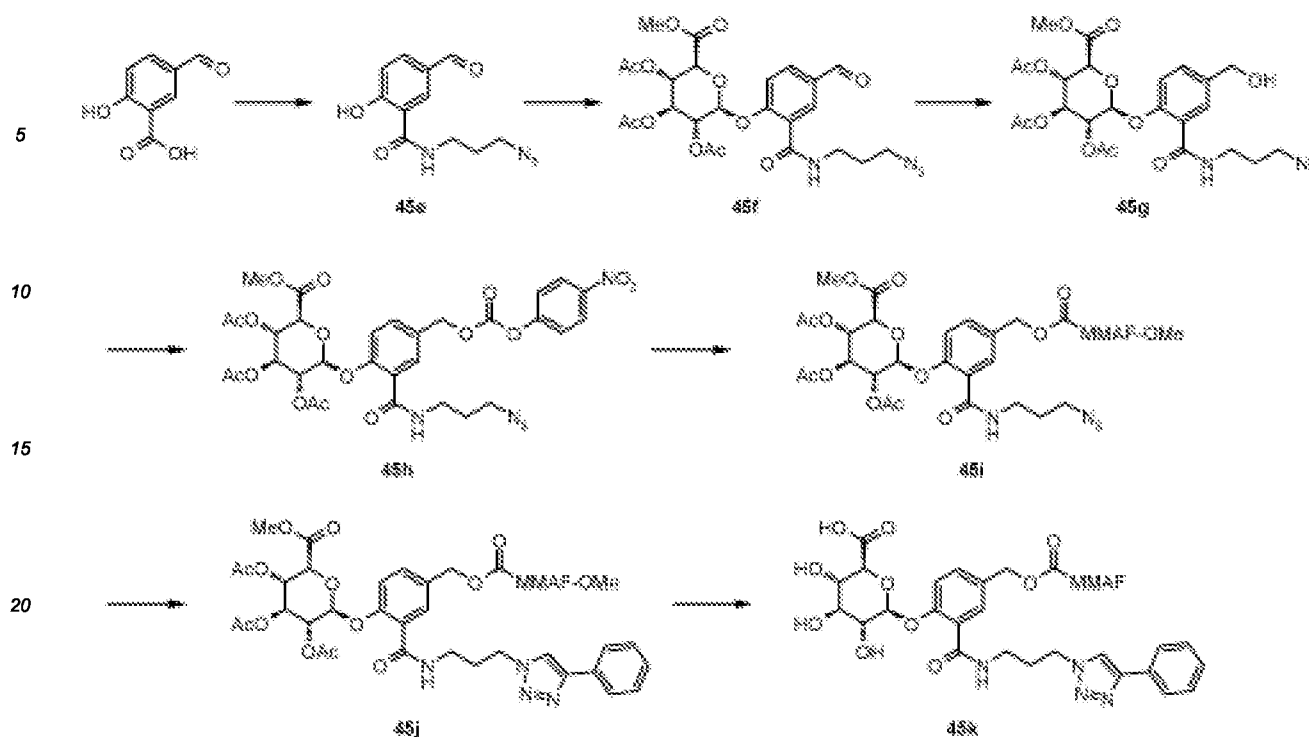
30 **[0490]** Compound **45b** (3.0 g, 11.84 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (40 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then treated with NaN_3 (924 mg, 14.21 mmol), and the obtained mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 12 hours. After the reaction was completed, EtOAc (50 mL), distilled water (50 mL), and 1 N aq. HCl (5 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **45c** (2.3 g, 99 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.63 (s, 1H), 3.36 (t, $J = 6.6\text{ Hz}$, 2H), 3.24-3.18 (m, 2H), 1.80-1.75 (m, 2H), 1.45 (s, 9H).

35

Preparation of Compound **45d**

40 **[0491]** Compound **45c** (3.8 g, 18.98 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (10 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then 4 M-HCl in dioxane (10 mL) was slowly added thereto. After stirring for 12 hours, the reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, which produced the compound **45d** (2.5 g, 99 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 8.06 (s, 3H), 3.47 (t, $J = 6.6\text{ Hz}$, 2H), 2.82 (t, $J = 7.2\text{ Hz}$, 2H), 1.84-1.79 (m, 2H).

45



Preparation of Compound 45e

[0492] Compound **45d** (58 mg, 0.42 mmol) and 5-formylsalicylic acid (100 mg, 0.60 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (2 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then DIPEA (0.2 mL, 1.20 mmol) and PyBop (375 mg, 0.72 mmol) were added to the reaction mixture. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, EtOAc (30 mL) and distilled water (10 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which afforded compound **45e** (82 mg, 79 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 13.39 (s, 1H), 9.87 (s, 1H), 8.29 (s, 1H), 7.89 (dd, *J* = 1.6, 7.2 Hz, 1H), 7.60 (s, 1H), 7.10 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 3.63-3.57 (m, 2H), 3.48 (t, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 2H), 1.99-1.92 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 45f

[0493] Compound **45e** (78 mg, 0.31 mmol) and compound **M** (125 mg, 0.31 mmol) were dissolved in MeCN (3 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then silver oxide (291 mg, 1.26 mmol) and 4 Å molecular sieve (125 mg) were added thereto. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture was celite-filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **45f** (160 mg, 90 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 10.00 (s, 1H), 8.66 (d, *J* = 2.4 Hz, 1H), 8.02 (dd, *J* = 2.0, 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.46 (t, *J* = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.14 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.48-5.33 (m, 4H), 4.28 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 3.73-3.64 (m, 1H), 3.50-3.42 (m, 3H), 2.09-2.07 (m, 9H), 2.00-1.92 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 45g

[0494] Compound **45f** (160 mg, 1.51 mmol) was dissolved in 2-propanol (0.4 mL) and chloroform (2 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then silica gel (2 g) and sodium borohydride (27 mg, 0.71 mmol) were added thereto. After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the reactant was celite-filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography, which produced the compound **45g** (115 mg, 71 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.06 (d, *J* = 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.50-7.44 (m, 2H), 7.01 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 5.45-5.31 (m, 4H), 4.38 (s, 2H), 4.22 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 3.74 (s, 3H), 3.67-3.61 (m, 1H), 3.46-3.41 (m, 3H), 2.07-2.04 (m, 9H), 1.97-1.91 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound 45h

[0495] Compound **45g** (100 mg, 0.18 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (110 mg, 0.35 mmol) and DIPEA (0.050 mL, 0.27 mmol) were added thereto. After stirring at room

temperature for 2 hours, EtOAc (30 mL) and distilled water (10 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **45h** (75 mg, 58 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.29-8.27 (m, 2H), 8.23 (d, J = 2.4 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (dd, J = 2.4, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (t, J = 6.4 Hz, 1H), 7.39-7.37 (m, 2H), 7.04 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.45-5.29 (m, 4H), 5.28 (s, 2H), 4.23 (d, J = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.68-3.64 (m, 1H), 3.46-3.42 (m, 3H), 2.08-2.05 (m, 9H), 1.98-1.93 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **45i**

[0496] Compound **45h** (50 mg, 0.068 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (0.8 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then MMAF-OMe (51 mg, 0.068 mmol) was added thereto. The resulting mixture was treated with HOBT (2 mg, 0.013 mmol), pyridine (0.24 mL), and DIPEA (0.012 mL, 0.068 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 18 hours, EtOAc (20 mL) and distilled water (10 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **45i** (71 mg, 78 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1339.

Preparation of Compound **45i**

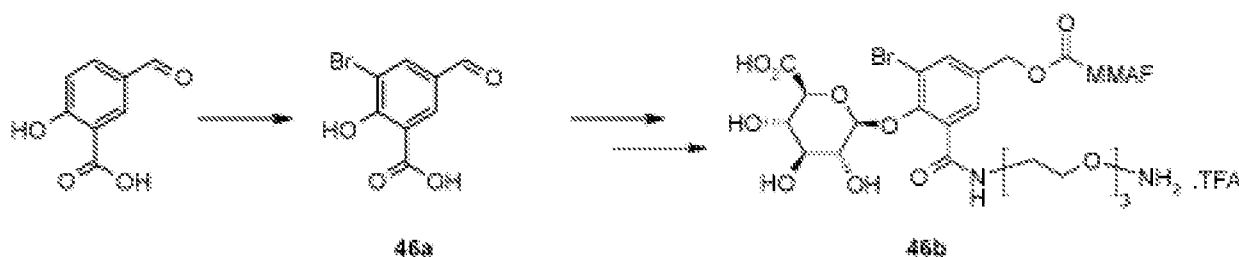
[0497] Compound **45i** (30 mg, 0.022 mmol) and phenylacetylene (3.7 μL , 0.033 mmol) were dissolved in EtOH (0.2 mL) and water (30 μL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then 0.1 M CuSO_4 aq. solution (30 μL) and 1.0 M sodium ascorbate aq. solution (30 μL) were added thereto. The resulting mixture was treated with HOBT (2 mg, 0.013 mmol), pyridine (0.24 mL), and DIPEA (12 μL , 0.068 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours, EtOAc (20 mL) and distilled water (5 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **45j** (26 mg, 81 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1441.

Preparation of Compound **45k**

[0498] Compound **45j** (20 mg, 0.013 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (0.2 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then $\text{LiOH}\cdot\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (6 mg, 0.14 mmol) in water (0.2 mL) was added thereto. After stirring at room temperature for 1 hour, chloroform (10 mL), MeOH (1 mL), distilled water (10 mL), and 0.5 N aq. HCl (1 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **45k** (17 mg, 87 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1286.

Example 67. Preparation of Compound **46b**

[0499]



Preparation of Compound **46a**

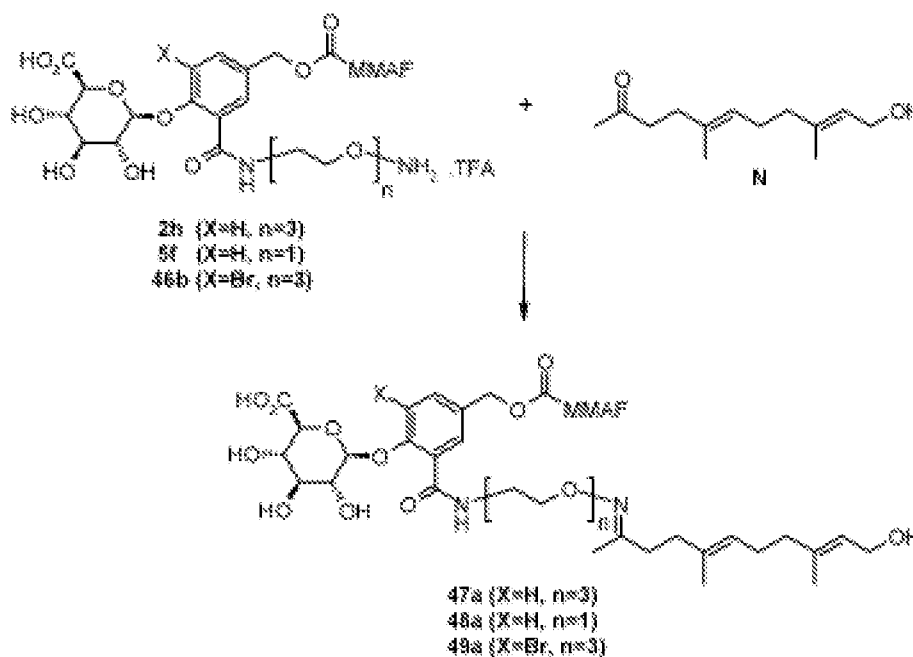
[0500] 5-Formylsalicylic acid (1.0 g, 6.02 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (20 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then *N*-bromosuccinimide (1.07 g, 6.11 mmol) was added thereto and the mixture was stirred at 70 °C for 3 hours. After the reaction was completed, EtOAc (100 mL), 2 N aq. HCl solution (2 mL), and distilled water (100 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **46a** (1.2 g, 84 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (400 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 9.64 (s, 1H), 8.19 (d, J = 2.4 Hz, 1H), 8.00 (d, J = 2.0 Hz, 1H), 3.16 (s, 1H).

Preparation of Compound 46b

[0501] Compound 46b was prepared from compound 46a by a similar method of preparing compound 2h in Example 4. EI-MS m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1328.

Examples 68 to 70. Preparation of Compound 47a, Compound 48a, and Compound 49a

[0502]



[0503] Compound N was prepared by a method disclosed in Korean Patent Laid-Open Publication No. 10-2014-0035393.

Examples 68. Preparation of Compound 47a

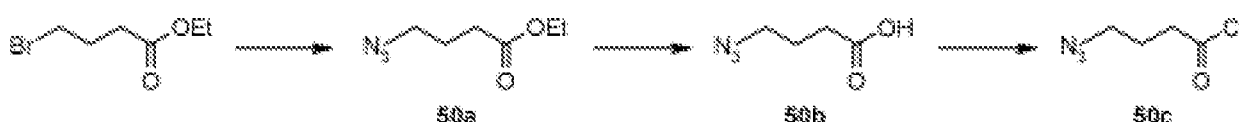
[0504] Compound 2h (20 mg, 0.014 mmol) was dissolved in EtOH (0.7 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then compound N (3.7 mg, 0.017 mmol) was added thereto, and the mixture was stirred at 45 °C for 2 hours. After the reaction was completed, compound 47a (10.2 mg, 49 %) was obtained using HPLC. EI-MS m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1441.

Examples 69 and 70. Preparation of Compound 48a and 49a

[0505] Compound 48a (Example 69) and compound 49a (Example 70) were prepared by a similar method of preparing compound 47a in Example 68. ELMS of compound 48a m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1353. ELMS of compound 49a m/z: $[M+H]^+$ 1520.

Comparative Example 66. Preparation of Compound 50k

[0506]

Preparation of Compound 50a

[0507] Ethyl 4-bromobutanoate (5.0 mL, 34.6 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (7.5 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then NaN_3 (4.5 g, 69.2 mmol) in water (25 mL) was added thereto and stirred at 85 °C for 8 hours. After

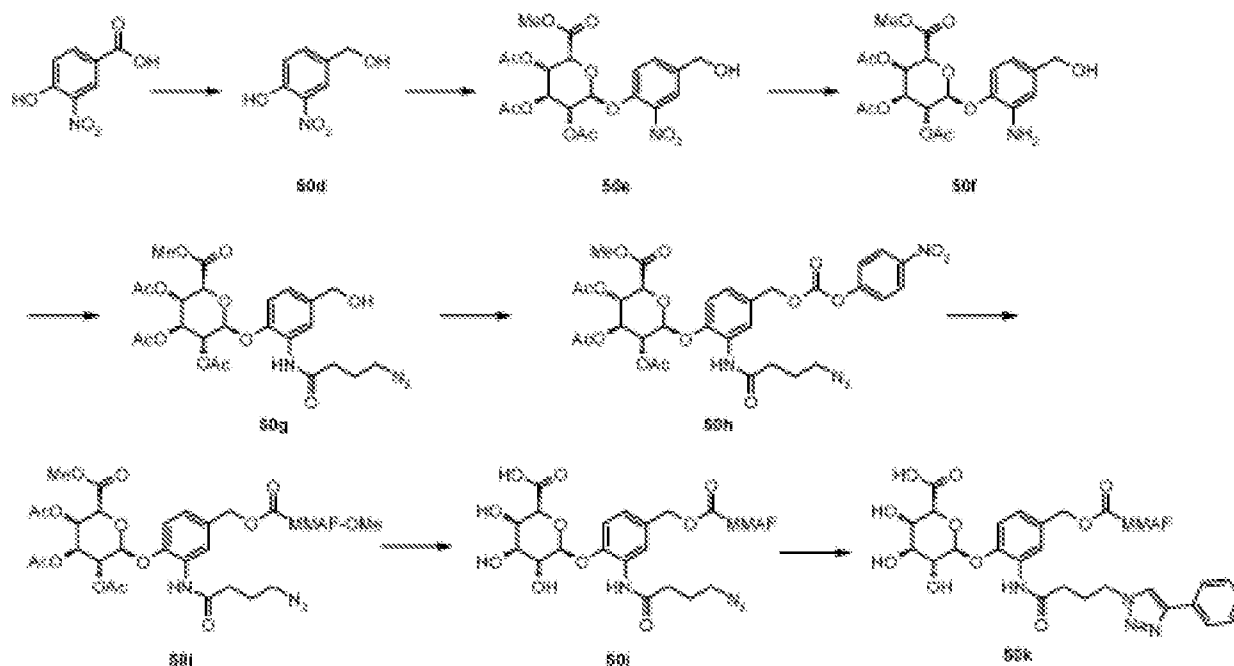
the reaction was completed, the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure, and chloroform (300 mL) and distilled water (200 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50a** (5.1 g, 94 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 4.15 (q, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 3.36 (t, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 2.41 (t, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 1.94-1.89 (m, 2H), 1.28 (t, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **50b**

[0508] Compound **50a** (2.0 g, 12.7 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (32 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then KOH (3.56 g, 63.6 mmol) in water (26 mL) was slowly added thereto. After stirring at room temperature for 6 hours, the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure, and chloroform (300 mL), 1 N aq. HCl (100 mL), and distilled water (100 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50b** (1.28 g, 78 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 3.38 (t, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 2.48 (t, $J = 7.2$ Hz, 2H), 1.95-1.90 (m, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **50c**

[0509] Compound **50b** (850 mg, 6.58 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (10 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then oxalyl chloride (1.1 mL, 13.2 mmol) and DMF (1 drop) were added thereto and stirred at room temperature for 6 hours. After the reaction was completed, the solvent was concentrated under reduced pressure to produce the compound **50c** (965 mg), which was used without further purification.



Preparation of Compound **50d**

[0510] 4-Hydroxy-3-nitrobenzoic acid (5.0 g, 27.3 mmol) was dissolved in THF (120 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then 1 M BH_3 -THF complex (54.6 mL, 54.6 mmol) was added thereto and stirred at room temperature for 20 hours. After the reaction was completed, EtOAc (200 mL), 0.5 N aq. HCl (20 mL), and distilled water (100 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50d** (4.2 g, 91 %). $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (600 MHz, CD_3OD) δ 8.06 (d, $J = 1.2$ Hz, 1H), 7.59 (dd, $J = 1.2, 7.8$ Hz, 1H), 7.12 (d, $J = 8.4$ Hz, 1H), 4.83 (s, 2H).

Preparation of Compound **50e**

[0511] Compound **50d** (937 mg, 5.54 mmol) was dissolved in MeCN (15 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and compound **M** (2.0 g, 5.04 mmol), silver oxide (4.66 g, 20.1 mmol), and 4 Å molecular sieve (2.0 g) were added

thereto, and stirred at room temperature for 14 hours. After the reaction was completed, the mixture was celite-filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50e** (1.0 g, 40 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 7.81 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 7.54 (dd, *J* = 1.8, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 7.37 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.37-5.27 (m, 3H), 5.20 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.72 (d, *J* = 6.0 Hz, 2H), 4.21 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 2.12 (s, 3H), 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.05 (s, 3H), 2.04-2.02 (m, 1H).

Preparation of Compound **50f**

[0512] Compound **50e** (900 mg, 6.35 mmol) was dissolved in EtOAc (100 mL), and then platinum (IV) oxide (84.2 mg, 0.370 mmol) was added thereto and stirred at room temperature under hydrogen for 3 hours. After the reaction was completed, the mixture was celite-filtered, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to produce the compound **50f** (700 mg, 83%), which was used without further purification.

Preparation of Compound **50g**

[0513] Compound **50f** (350mg, 0.77 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (10 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then compound **50c** (136 mg, 0.92 mmol) and DIPEA (0.27 mL, 1.54 mmol) were added thereto and stirred at room temperature for 20 minutes. After the reaction was completed, EtOAc (50 mL) and distilled water (50 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50g** (280 mg, 65 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.37 (d, *J* = 1.2 Hz, 1H), 8.00 (s, 1H), 7.07 (dd, *J* = 1.8, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 6.93 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.43-5.28 (m, 3H), 5.06 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 4.63 (s, 2H), 4.19 (d, *J* = 9.6 Hz, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.44-3.41 (m, 2H), 2.56 (t, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 2H), 2.17-2.00 (m, 12H).

Preparation of Compound **50h**

[0514] Compound **50g** (250 mg, 0.44 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (4 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then bis(4-nitrophenyl)carbonate (270 mg, 0.88 mmol) and DIPEA (0.12 mL, 0.66 mmol) were added thereto, and stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. After the reaction was completed, EtOAc (50 mL) and distilled water (50 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50h** (290 mg, 90 %). ¹H-NMR (600 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 8.54 (d, *J* = 1.8 Hz, 1H), 8.28-8.25 (m, 2H), 8.02 (s, 1H), 7.40-7.36 (m, 2H), 7.11 (dd, *J* = 1.8, 6.6 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.44-5.29 (m, 3H), 5.23 (s, 2H), 5.10 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 4.21 (d, *J* = 9.6 Hz, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.45-3.42 (m, 2H), 2.58 (t, *J* = 7.2 Hz, 2H), 2.11-2.00 (m, 12H).

Preparation of Compound **50i**

[0515] Compound **50h** (250 mg, 0.34 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (4 mL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then MMAF-OMe (255 mg, 0.34 mmol) was added thereto. The resulting mixture was treated with HOBT (9 mg, 0.068 mmol), pyridine (1.2 mL), and DIPEA (0.060 mL, 0.34 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for 2 days, EtOAc (50 mL), 2 N aq. HCl (5 mL), and distilled water (50 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50i** (340 mg, 74 %). ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1339.

Preparation of Compound **50j**

[0516] Compound **50i** (210 mg, 0.156 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (2 mL) at 0 °C under nitrogen, and then LiOH·H₂O (66 mg, 1.56 mmol) in water (2 mL) was added thereto. After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 hours, chloroform (50 mL), MeOH (5 mL), distilled water (50 mL), and 0.5 N aq. HCl (5 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound **50j** (107 mg, 57 %). ELMS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 1184.

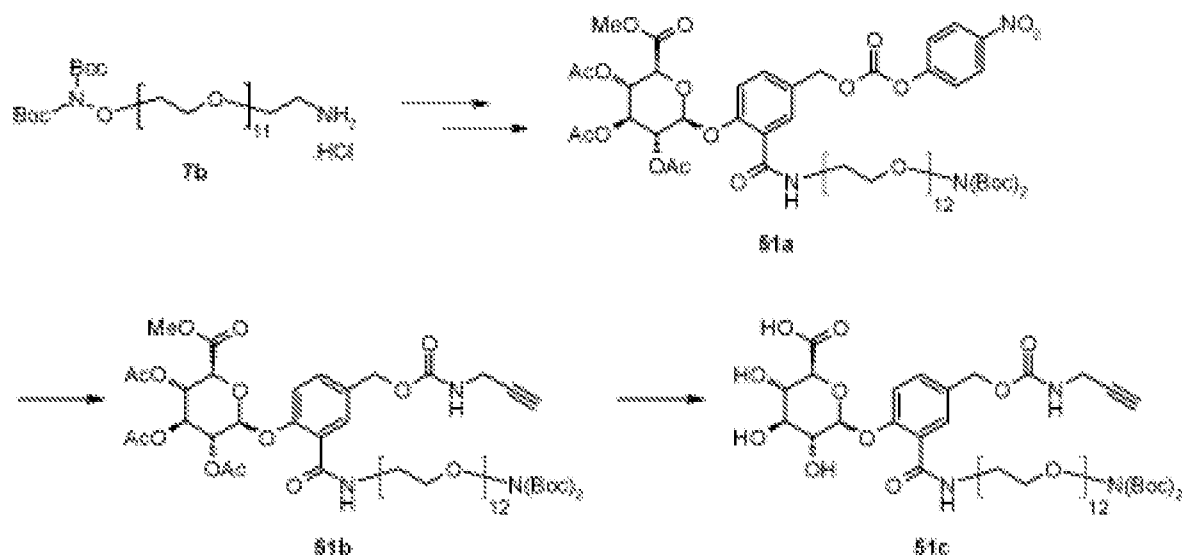
Preparation of Compound **50k**

[0517] Compound **50j** (10 mg, 0.008 mmol) and phenylacetylene (0.92 μL, 0.008 mmol) were dissolved in EtOH (0.15 mL) and water (10 μL) at room temperature under nitrogen, and then 0.1 M CuSO₄ aqueous solution (10 μL) and 1.0 M sodium ascorbate aqueous solution (10 μL) were added thereto. After stirring at room temperature for 5 hours, EtOAc (10 mL) and distilled water (5 mL) were added thereto. The organic layer obtained as described above was dried over

anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was subjected to column chromatography to produce the compound 50k (5 mg, 46 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1286.

Example 71. Preparation of Compound 51h

[0518]



Preparation of Compound 51a

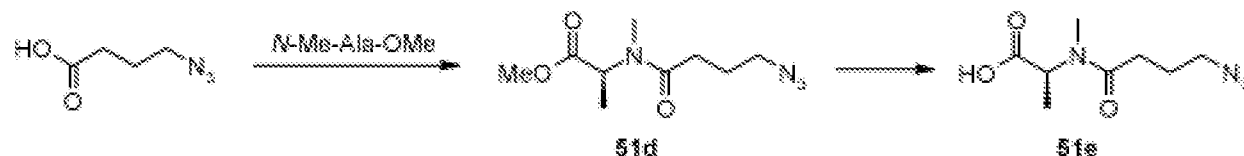
[0519] Compound 51a was prepared from compound 7b by a method similar to method of preparing compound 14h of Example 23. EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1392.8, $[\text{M}+\text{H}-\text{Boc}]^+$ 1292.7, $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 1414.8.

Preparation of Compound 51b

[0520] Compound 51a (1.8 g, 1.29 mmol), propargylamine (0.1 mL, 1.55 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (35 mg, 0.25 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (5 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.2 mL) and DIPEA (0.45 mL, 2.59 mmol) were added. After stirring at room temperature for 24 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O (100 mL) and saturated aq. NH_4Cl solution (50 mL). After extraction with EtOAc (2 x 100 mL), the combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO_4 , filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound 51b (1.15 g, 68 %). ^1H -NMR (400 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 8.01 (s, 1H), 7.48-7.31 (m, 2H), 7.02 (d, J = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 5.45-5.20 (m, 4H), 5.09 (s, 2H), 4.19 (d, J = 9.2 Hz, 1H), 4.10-4.05 (m, 2H), 3.97 (s, 2H), 3.85-3.45 (m, 49H), 2.24 (s, 1H), 2.05 (s, 9H), 1.53 (s, 18H). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{Na}]^+$ 1330.3.

Preparation of Compound 51c

[0521] To a solution of compound 51b (1.15 g, 0.879 mmol) in THF/MeOH (20 mL/20 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (151 mg, 3.603 mmol) in H_2O (20 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in DMSO (5 mL) and purified by prep. HPLC, which produced the compound 51c (600 mg, 60 %). ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1169.2.



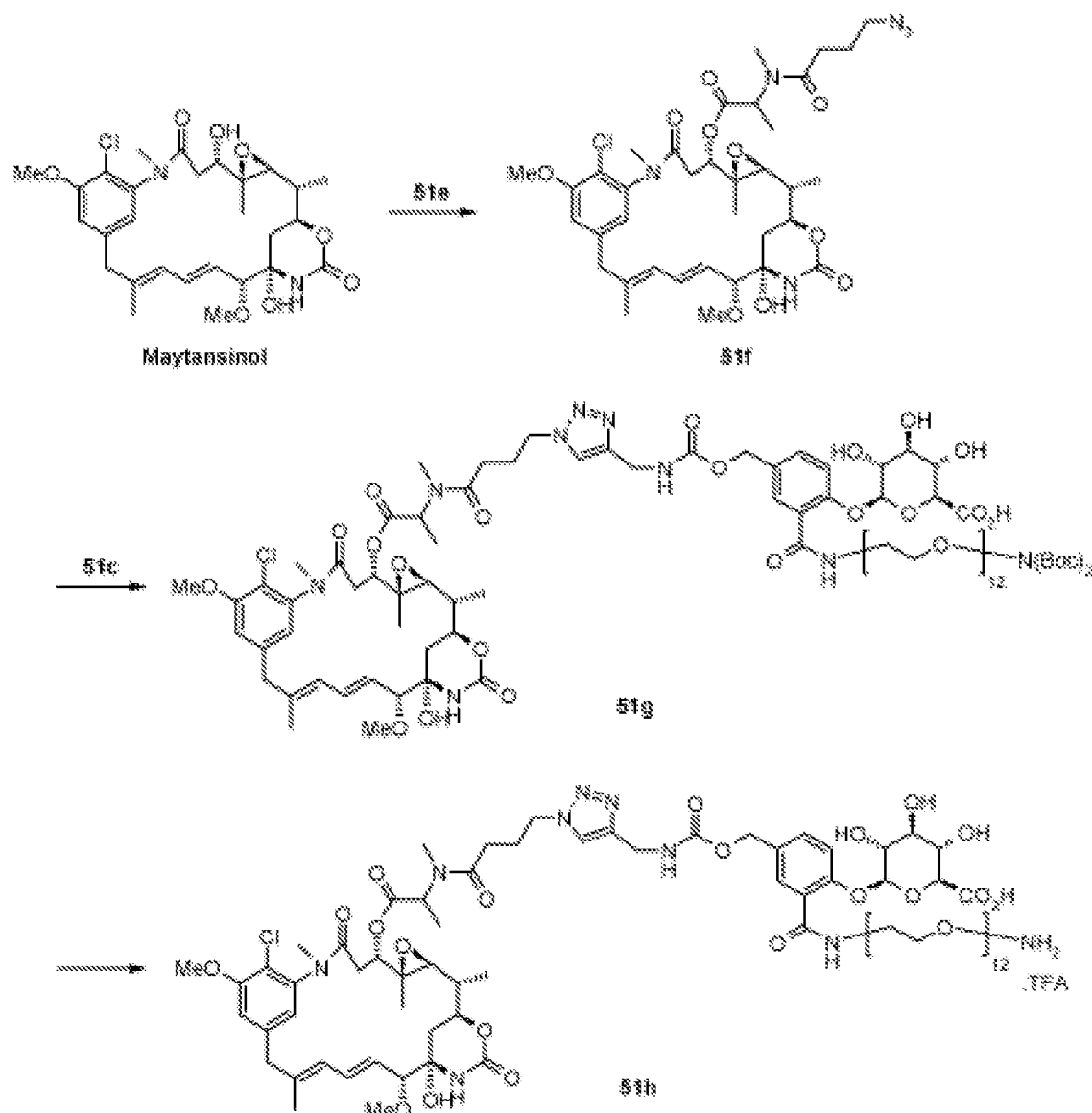
Preparation of Compound 51d

[0522] DIPEA (0.92 mL, 5.30 mmol) and HBTU (1.0 g, 2.64 mmol) were added to a stirred mixture of 4-azidobutanoic

acid (228 mg, 1.76 mmol) and *N*-Me-Ala-OMe (298 mg, 1.94 mmol) in DMF (10 mL). After stirring at room temperature for 14 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 50 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **51d** (310 mg, 77 %). ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 5.22 (q, 1H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.39 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 2.95 (s, 3H), 2.52-2.39 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.92 (m, 2H), 1.41 (d, 3H).

Preparation of Compound **51e**

[0523] To a solution of compound **51d** (310 mg, 1.36 mmol) in MeOH (3 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (114 mg, 2.72 mmol) in H₂O (3 mL) at -20 °C. After stirring at 0 °C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O/2 N aq. HCl solution (50 mL/2 mL) and extracted with Et₂O (2 × 30 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄. Filtration and concentration produced the compound **51e** (246 mg), which was used without further purification. ¹H-NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 5.15 (q, 1H), 3.39 (t, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 2H), 2.98 (s, 3H), 2.49-2.45 (m, 2H), 1.98-1.92 (m, 2H), 1.41 (d, 3H).



Preparation of Compound **51f**

[0524] To a solution of maytansinol (50 mg, 0.088 mmol) and compound **51e** (113 mg, 0.528 mmol) in DCM (6 mL) under N₂ was added a solution of DIC (0.087 mL, 0.557 mmol) in DCM (1.4 mL). After 1 minute, a solution of ZnCl₂ (1 M in Et₂O, 0.11 mL, 0.11 mmol) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours, the reaction mixture was

diluted with EtOAc (10 mL). The organic layer was washed with saturated aq. NaHCO_3 (4 mL) and brine (2 mL), dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 and evaporated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield a mixture of diastereomeric maytansinoids compound **51f** (50 mg, 74 %). ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 761.7.

Preparation of Compound **51g**

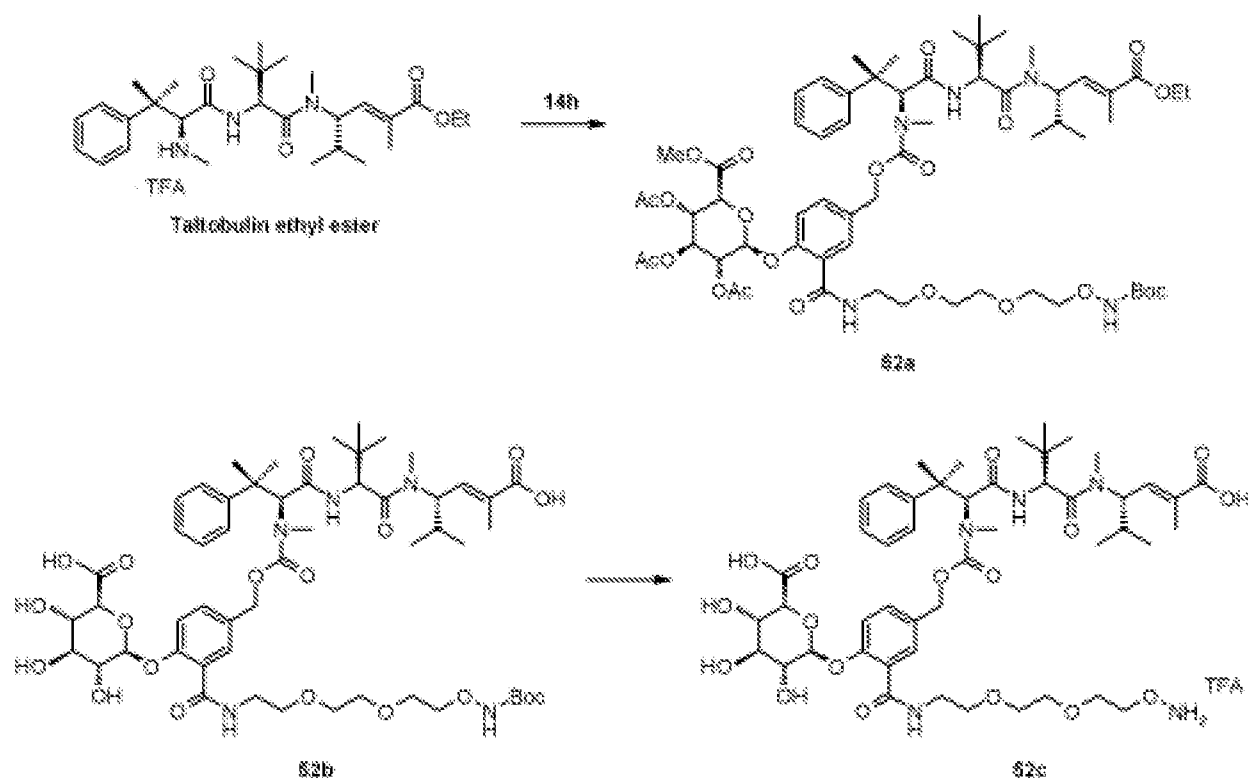
[0525] $\text{CuSO}_4 \cdot 5\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (2 mg) and sodium ascorbate (10 mg) were added to a stirring mixture of compound **51f** (78 mg, 0.102 mmol) and compound **51c** (132 mg, 0.112 mmol) in DMSO (4 mL) and H_2O (1 mL). The pH was adjusted to about 7 by addition of 1 M aq. Na_2CO_3 . After stirring at 20 °C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture was dissolved in H_2O /DMSO (1.5 mL/1.5 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and concentrated to produce the compound **51g** (72.1 mg, 37 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1930.9, $[\text{M}+\text{H}-\text{Boc}]^+$ 1830.9.

Preparation of Compound **51h**

[0526] TFA (0.2 mL) was added to a stirring solution of compound **51g** (72.1 mg, 0.037 mmol) in DCM (1 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N_2 flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H_2O /MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **51h** (more polar isomer 17 mg and less polar isomer 6.0 mg, 36 %) as white solid. ELMS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1730.8.

Example 72. Preparation of Compound **52c**

[0527]



Preparation of Compound **52a**

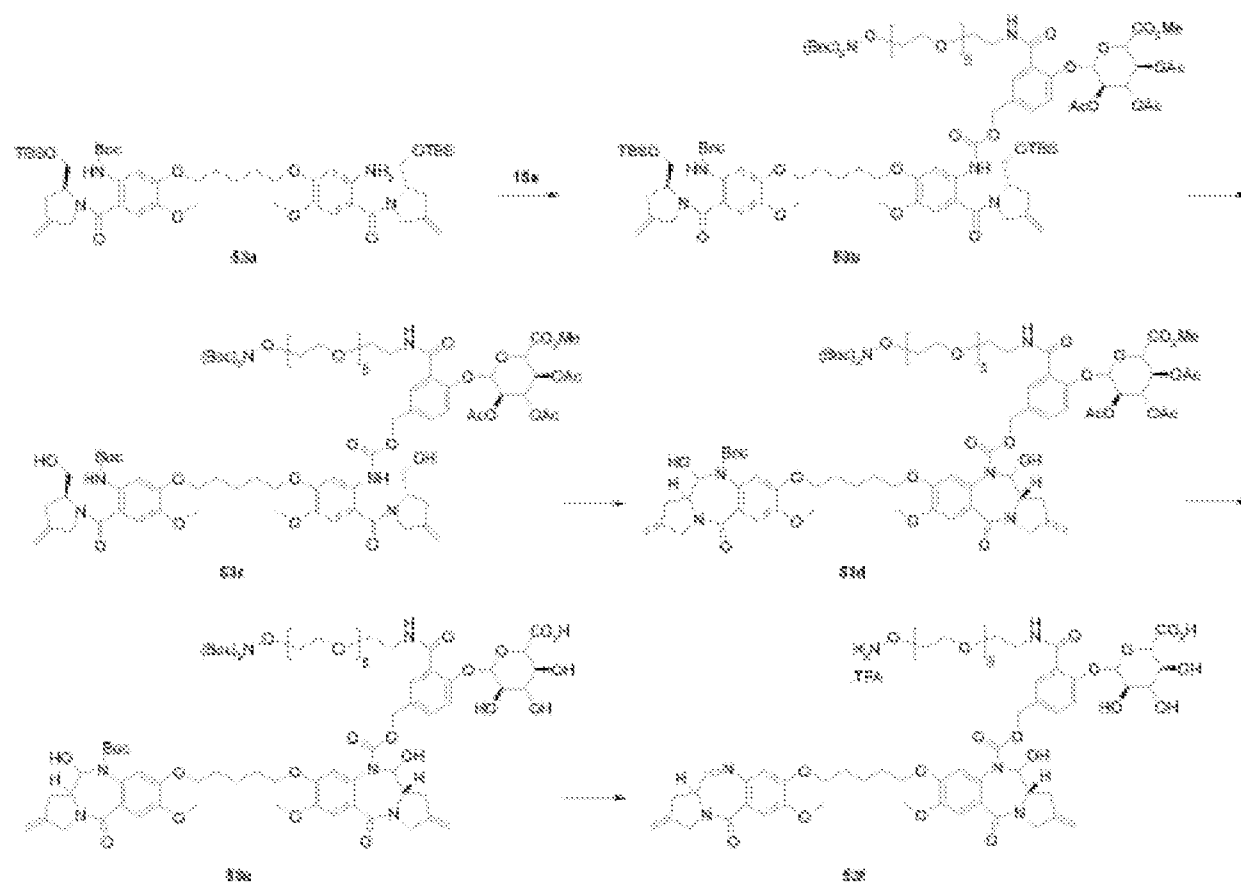
[0528] Taltobulin ethyl ester (TFA salt, 80 mg, 0.029 mmol), compound **14h** (128 mg, 0.0142 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (3.5 mg, 0.026 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (3 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.5 mL) and DIPEA (0.045 mL, 0.26 mmol) were added. After stirring at room temperature for 24 hours under N_2 , the reaction mixture was diluted with H_2O (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2×10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **52a** (70 mg, 43 %). EI-MS m/z : $[\text{M}+\text{H}]^+$ 1258.6, $[\text{M}+\text{H}-\text{Boc}]^+$ 1158.6.

Preparation of Compound 52b

[0529] To a solution of compound **52a** (70 mg, 0.055 mmol) in MeOH (1.4 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (11.7 mg, 0.275 mmol) in H₂O (1.4 mL) at -20 °C. After 1 hour at 0 °C, the pH of the solution was adjusted to 4~5 with acetic acid. The resulting solution was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **52b** (4.5 mg, 8 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1090.4.

Preparation of Compound 52c

[0530] To a solution of compound **52b** (4.5 mg, 0.0041 mmol) in DCM (1 mL) was added TFA (0.2 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was purified by HPLC, which produced the compound **52c** (2.4 mg, 59 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 990.4.

Example 73. Preparation of Compound 53f**[0531]****Preparation of Compound 53b**

[0532] Compound **53a** (300 mg, 0.31 mmol), Compound **53a** was prepared by a method disclosed in patent WO2013/055987 A1), compound **15a** (355 mg, 0.31 mmol) and anhydrous HOBt (10 mg, 0.06 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL) at 0 °C. Then pyridine (0.3 mL) and DIPEA (0.14 mL, 0.78 mmol) were added. After stirring at room temperature for 23 hours under N₂, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O/saturated aq. NH₄Cl solution (100 mL/50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by column chromatography to produce the compound **53b** (250 mg, 41 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1943.6, [M+Na]⁺ 1965.6.

Preparation of Compound 53c

[0533] To a solution of compound **53b** (300 mg, 0.31 mmol) in THF/H₂O (2 mL/1 mL) was added acetic acid (3 mL) at 0 °C under N₂. After 22 hours, the reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 × 100 mL). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated. The resulting residue was purified by column chromatography to yield the compound **53c** (140 mg, 68 %). EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1713.6.

Preparation of Compound 53d

[0534] To a solution of compound **53c** (120 mg, 0.07 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) were added pyridinium chlorochromate (158 mg, 0.42 mmol) and 4 Å molecular sieve (50 mg) at room temperature under N₂. After stirring for 18 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered through a celite pad and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting compound **53d** (95 mg, 75 %) was obtained as colorless oil, which was used without further purification. ELMS m/z: [M+Na]⁺ 1732.8.

Preparation of Compound 53e

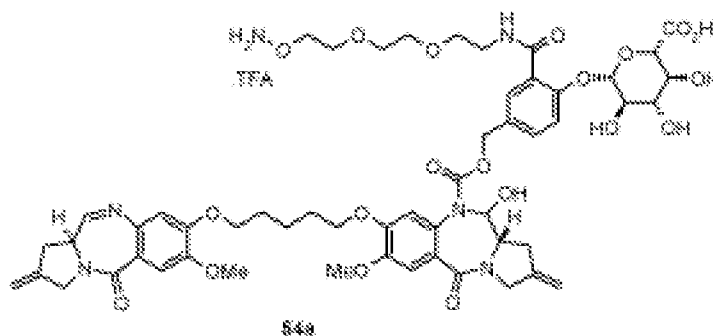
[0535] To a solution of compound **53d** (95 mg, 0.056 mmol) in MeOH (1 mL) was added LiOH monohydrate (12 mg, 0.278 mmol) in H₂O (1 mL) at 0 °C. After 2 hours at 0 °C, the reaction mixture was neutralized using acetic acid and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by prep. HPLC, which produced the compound **53e** (6 mg, 7 %). ELMS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1569.7.

Preparation of Compound 53f

[0536] TFA (0.2 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **53e** (6 mg, 0.004 mmol) in DCM (2 mL). After stirring at 0 °C for 2 hours, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **53f** (2.7 mg, 53 %) as white solid. EI-MS m/z: [M+H]⁺ 1251.3.

Example 74. Preparation of Compound 54a

[0537]



[0538] Compound **54a** was prepared from compound **53a** and compound **14h** by a similar method of preparing compound **53f** in Example 73.

Example 75. Preparation of Compound 55a

[0539]



15

20

25



45

50

55

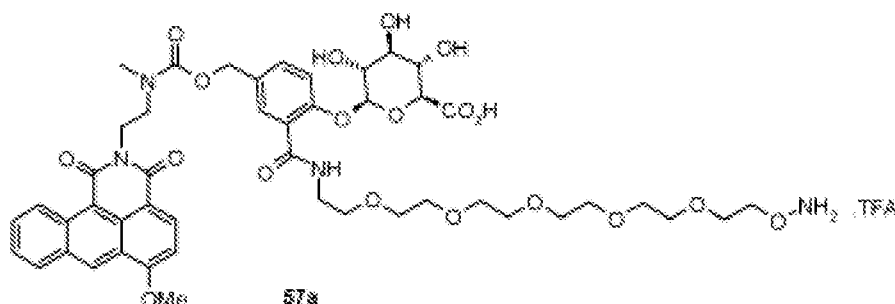
125

Preparation of Compound 56d

[0544] TFA (0.3 mL) was added to a stirred solution of compound **56c** (35 mg, 0.04 mmol) in DCM (2.0 mL) at 0 °C. After stirring for 1 hour, the solvent and excess TFA were removed by N₂ flow. Then the residue was dissolved in H₂O/MeCN (1 mL/1 mL) and purified by HPLC. Pure fractions with the same retention time were combined and lyophilized to produce the compound **56d** (24.9 mg, 68 %) as yellow solid. EI-MS *m/z*: [M+H]⁺ 851.6.

Example 77. Preparation of Compound 57a

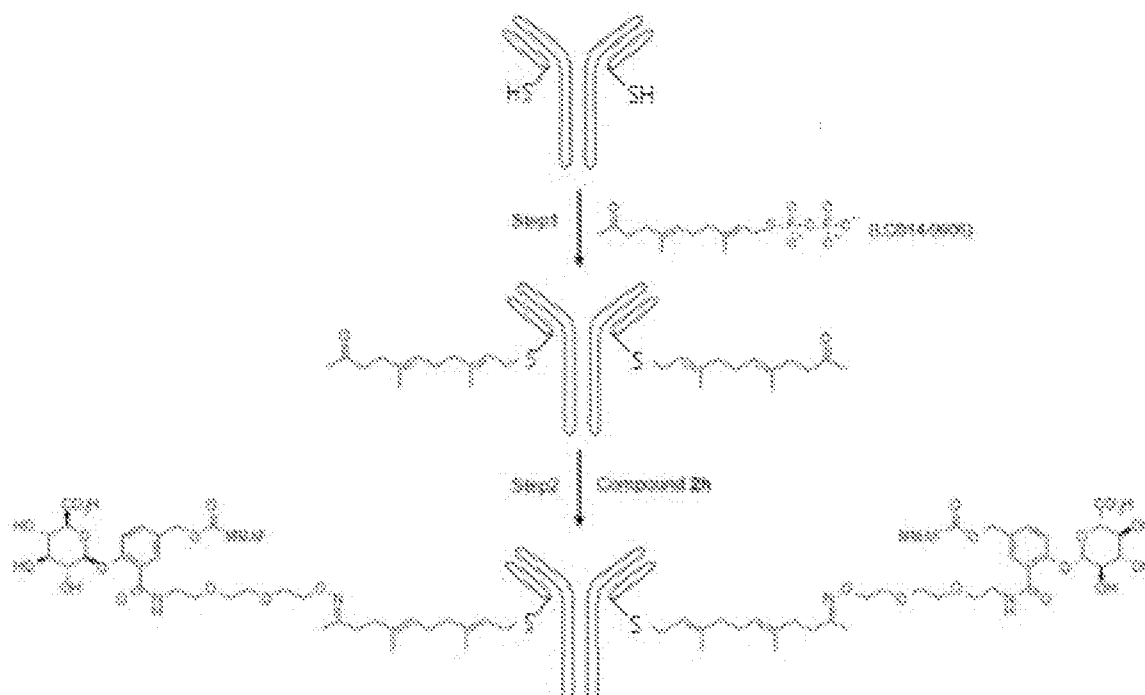
[0545]



[0546] Compound **57a** was prepared from compound **56a** and compound **15a** by a similar method of preparing compound **56d** in Example 76. EI-MS m/z : $[M+H]^+$ 983.3.

Example 78. ADC2 Synthesis

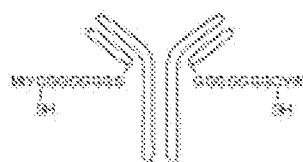
[0547]



Example 79. ADC2 Synthesis

[0548]

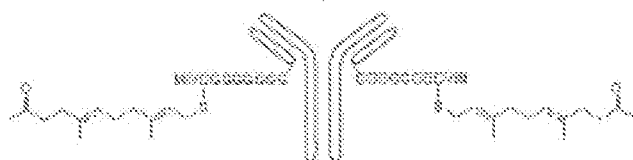
5



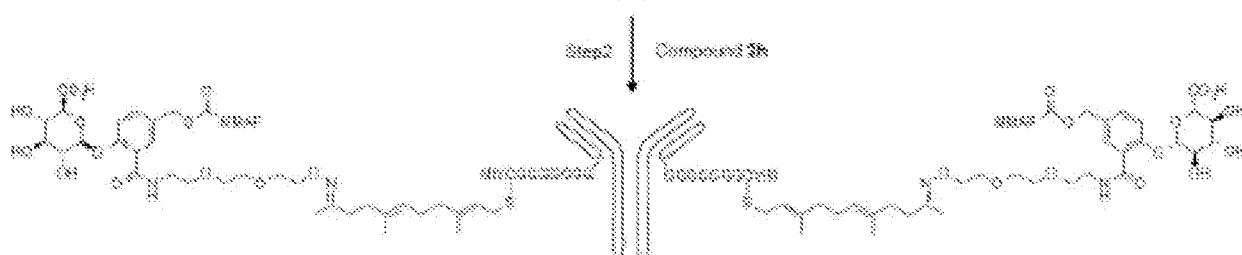
10



15



20

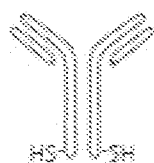


Example 80. ADC86 Synthesis

25

[0549]

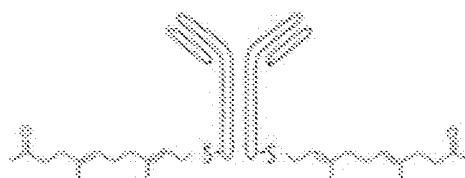
30



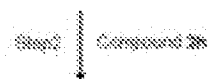
35



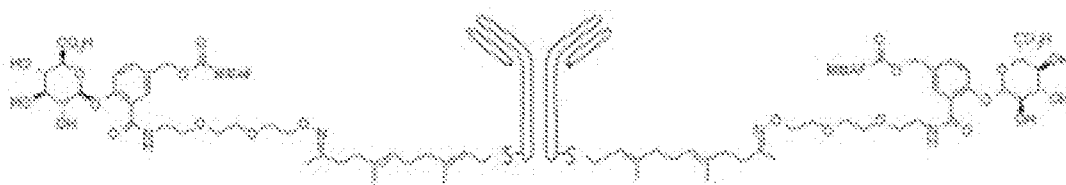
40



45



50



Example 81. ADC86 Synthesis

55

[0550]

5

10

15

20

25

30

Example 82. ADC4 Synthesis**[0551]**

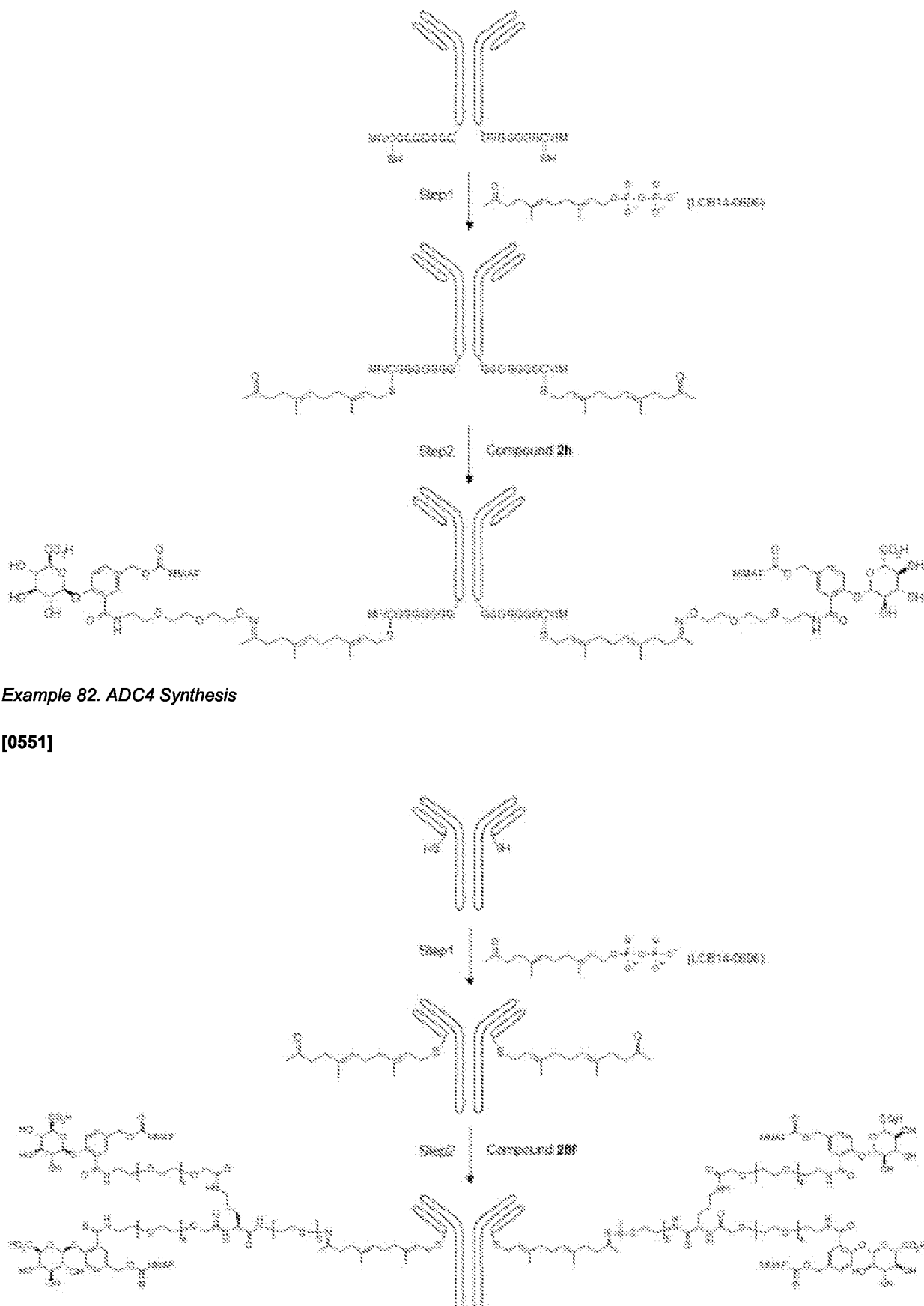
35

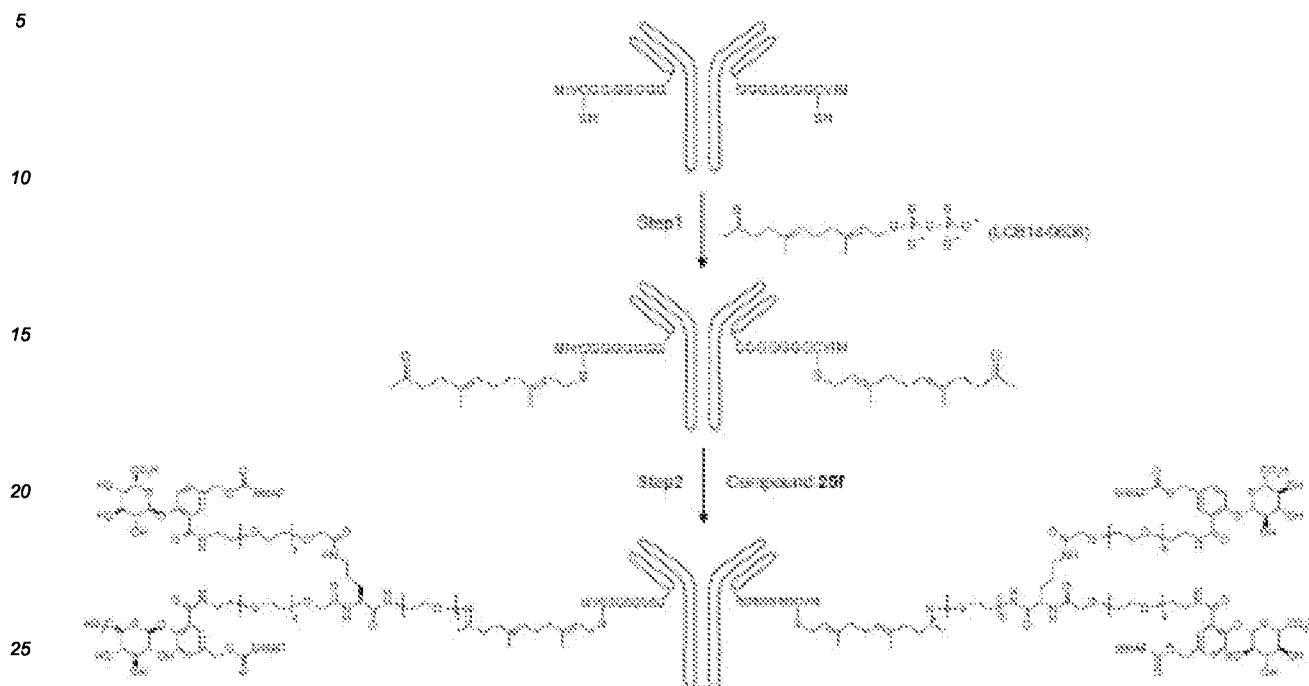
40

45

50

55



*Example 83. ADC4 Synthesis***[0552]***Example 84. ADC75 Synthesis***[0553]**

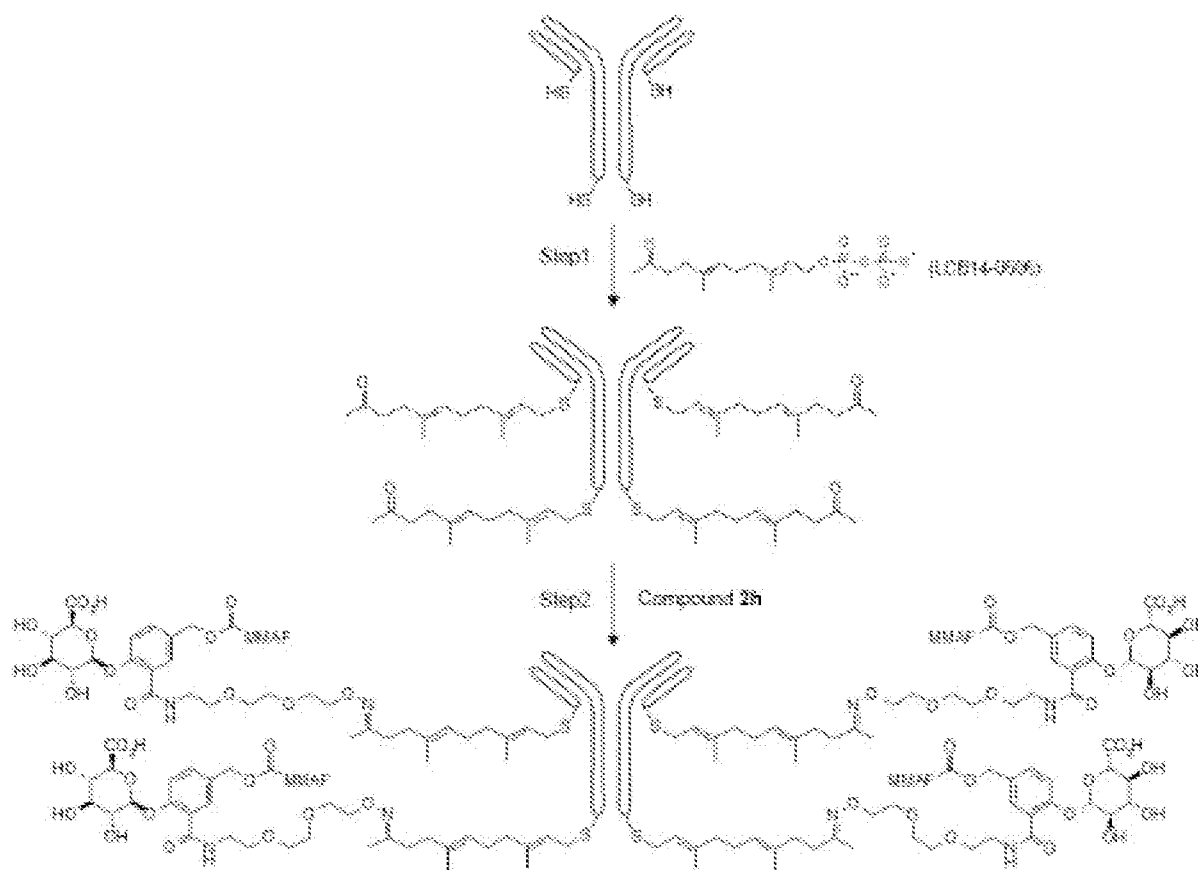
35

40

45

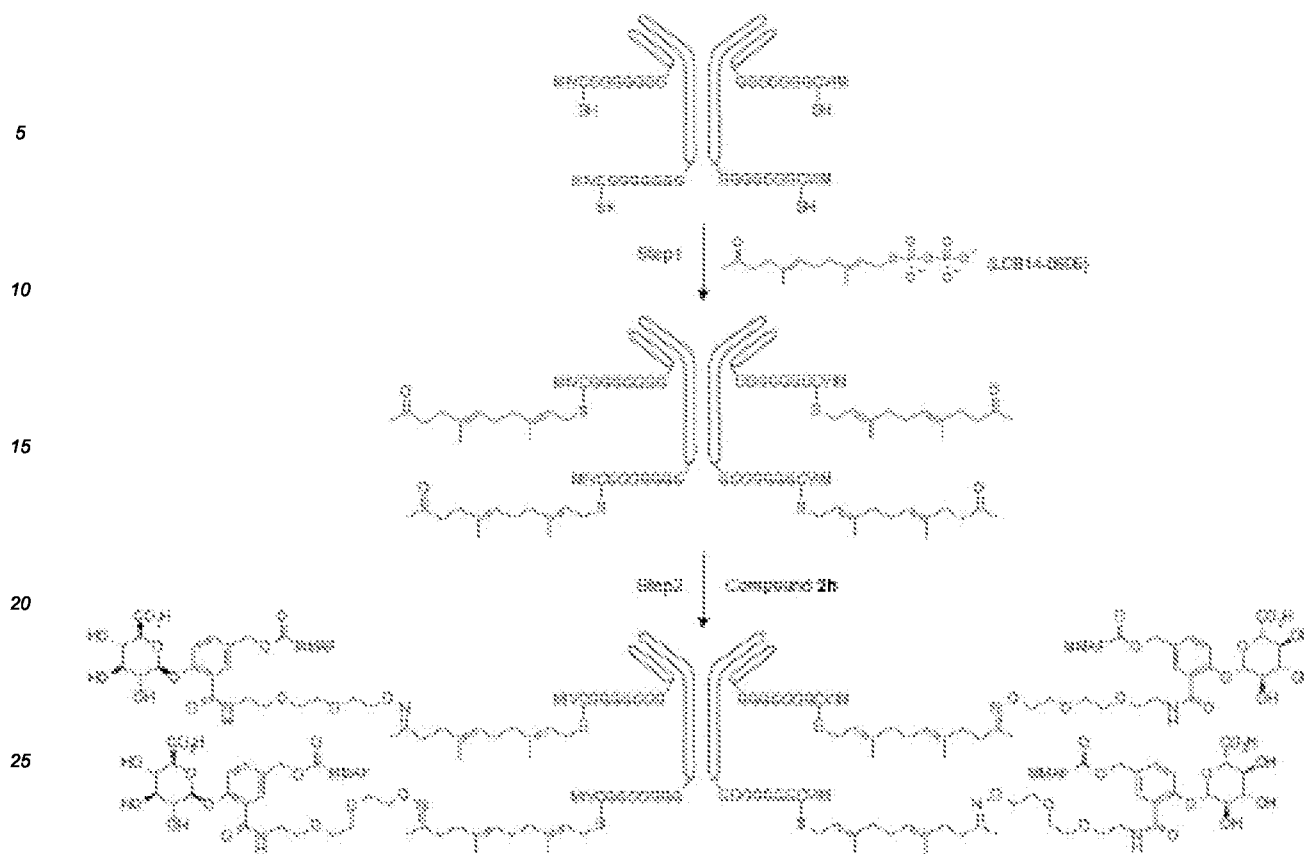
50

55



Example 85. ADC75 Synthesis

[0554]



Experimental Example 1. Responsiveness Comparison Test with respect to β -Glucuronidase.

[0555] In order to compare responsiveness of Compound 45k of Example 66 and Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 to β -glucuronidase with each other, comparison test was performed as follows.

[0556] Compound 45k of Example 66 and Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 were each prepared as 500 μ M and 50 μ M DMSO stock solutions. Reaction solutions in which 880 μ L of phosphate buffer saline (PBS) solution and 100 μ L of Compound 45k and Compound 50k stock solutions were mixed with each other, respectively, were prepared (final concentrations thereof were 50 μ M and 5 μ M, respectively). After 20 μ L of *E. coli* β -glucuronidase enzyme (1 mg/ml, Sigma: E.C.3.2.1.31 Type IX-A; 1 mg/mL in PBS; 3.6 μ g, 13 μ mol) was added to the reaction solutions, reactions were initiated in a constant temperature water bath at 37°C. 100 μ L of the mixed solutions were dispensed at 0 min, 25 min, 60 min, and 90 min, respectively, and 200 μ L of acetonitrile was added thereto. MMAF released from each of the supernatants obtained by performing centrifugation (4°C, 15 min, 14000 rpm) on the mixture samples was quantitatively analyzed using LC-MS/MS (the experiment was performed by a method similar to a method disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 8,568,728).

[0557] The test results were illustrated in Figure 2, and it was confirmed from Figure 2 that MMAF was significantly rapidly released from each Compound 45k of Example 66 and Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 through a 1,6-elimination reaction after enzyme reactions by β -glucuronidase (U.S. Patent No. 8,568,728).

Experimental Example 2. Plasma Stability Comparison Test linker toxin

[0558] The plasma stability of Compound 45k of Example 66 and Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 were compared.

[0559] 10 μ L of Compound 45k or 50k was dissolved in DMSO at 5 mM, and each composition was mixed with 990 μ L of mouse plasma, thereby preparing 50 μ M samples, for assessing plasma stability. The plasma/compound solutions were incubated at 37 °C for 7 days. During the 6-day incubation, 100 μ L aliquots were taken at 0, 1, 2, and 7 days and mixed with 200 μ L of acetonitrile containing an internal standard for monitoring plasma protein precipitation. Supernatants were obtained by centrifuging the acetonitrile/plasma samples (4 °C, 15 min, 14000 rpm), and the amount of each compound and product was quantified by performing LC-MS/MS on the supernatants. (The experiment was performed using similar to those disclosed in J. Chromatography B, 780:451-457 (2002)).

[0560] Results obtained for Compound 45k of Example 66 and Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 using LS-MS/MS are illustrated in Figure 3 and Table 1. The stability of Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66 and stability of Compound 45k of Example 66 was 14% and 80% at 1 day, respectively. Thus, the stability of Compound 45k of Example 66 in mouse plasma was superior to Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66.

Table 1. Stability of Compound 45k and Compound 50k in mouse plasma

	Compound 45k of Example 66	Compound 50k of Comparative Example 66
Linker	Glucuronide	Glucuronide
Plasma Stability (mouse plasma)	80% Stability (@7 days)	14% Stability (@ 1 day)
Result	Stable	Unstable

[0561] The plasma stability of Compound 47a, 48a, and 49a were performed by using the method mentioned above (Figure 4-6).

Experimental Example 3. Preparation of Antibody-Drug Conjugate

Step 1. Method of Prenylated Antibody (prepared according to the method of Korean Patent Laid-Open Publication No. 10-2014-0035393)

[0562] A prenylation reaction mixture of an antibody was prepared and reacted at 30°C for 16 hours. The antibodies comprising the GGGGGGGCVIM sequence ("G7CVIM") added to the c-terminus of each light chain were used. The G7CVIM sequence was added at the C-terminus of heavy chain (ADC86-91) or both heavy and light chain (ADC75-77). The sources of sequences of antibodies used were like following Table 2.

Table 2. The used antibody list for ADC preparation

Target (Antibody)	References
HER2 (Herceptin®)	http://www.drugbank.ca/drugs/DB00002
EGFR (Erbitux®)	http://www.drugbank.ca/drugs/DB00002
CD19 (DI-B4)	US8691952 B2
CD20 (Rituxan®)	http://www.drugbank.ca/drugs/DB00073
EGFR wt & EGFRvIII (ABT806)	US 2014/02555410 A9

The reaction mixture was composed of a buffer solution (50 mM Tris-HCl (pH7.4), 5 mM MgCl₂, 10 μM ZnCl₂, 0.25 mM DTT) containing 24 μM antibody, 200 nM FTase (Calbiochem #344145), and 144 μM LCB 14-0606 (prepared in house according to the method of Korean Patent Laid-Open Publication No. 10-2014-0035393). After the reaction was completed, a prenylated antibody was purified by FPLC.

Step 2. Method of Preparing ADC

[0563] An oxime bond formation reaction mixture between the prenylated antibody and linker-toxin was prepared by mixing 100 mM Na-acetate buffer (pH 4.5, 10% DMSO), 12 μM prenylated antibody, and 120 μM linker-toxin (in house) and gently stirred at 30°C. After incubating the reaction for 24 hours, the antibody-drug conjugate was purified by desalting via FPLC and hydrophobic interaction chromatography-HPLC.

Table 3. List of anti-HER2 ADCs (DAR2)

ADC#	Comp'd #
ADC1	2g
ADC2	2h
ADC3	3f
ADC4	3g

(continued)

ADC#	Comp'd #
ADC5	4f
ADC6	4g
ADC7	5e
ADC8	5f
ADC9	6e
ADC10	7e
ADC11	8f
ADC12	9j
ADC13	10c
ADC14	10d
ADC15	11j
ADC16	11k
ADC17	12c
ADC18	12d
ADC19	13e
ADC20	13f
ADC86	2h
ADC87	2g

Table 4. List of anti-HER2 ADCs (DAR4)

ADC#	Comp'd #
ADC23	16f
ADC24	16g
ADC25	17d
ADC26	18c
ADC27	19c
ADC28	20q
ADC29	21i
ADC30	22h
ADC31	23h
ADC32	24l
ADC33	25e
ADC34	25f
ADC35	26e
ADC36	27e
ADC37	28d
ADC38	28e

(continued)

ADC#	Comp'd #
ADC39	29j
ADC40	29k
ADC41	30b
ADC42	30c
ADC43	31f
ADC44	31g
ADC45	32c
ADC46	32d
ADC47	33e
ADC48	33f
ADC49	34e
ADC50	34f
ADC51	35g
ADC52	36e
ADC53	37d
ADC54	38b
ADC55	38e
ADC76	2h
ADC88	16f
ADC89	16g
ADC90	25f
ADC91	25e

Table 5. List of anti-HER2 ADCs (DAR4<)

	ADC#	Comp'd #
<DAR6>	ADC60	43i
	ADC61	43j
<DAR8>	ADC62	44i
	ADC63	44j
	ADC77	16f

Table 6. List of anti-HER2 ADCs using amanitin as a payload

DAR 2		DAR4	
ADC#	Comp'd #	ADC#	Comp'd#
ADC21	14m	ADC56	39e
ADC22	15b	ADC57	40c
		ADC58	41c

(continued)

DAR 2		DAR4	
ADC#	Comp'd #	ADC#	Comp'd#
		ADC59	42d

Table7. List of ADCs using antibodies targeting various proteins

Target (Antibody)	ADC#	Comp'd #
EGFR (Erbix®)	ADC64	2h
	ADC65	25e
	ADC66	25f
CD19 (DI-B4)	ADC67	2h
	ADC68	25e
	ADC69	25f
CD20 (Rituxan®)	ADC70	2h
	ADC71	25e
	ADC72	25f
EGFR wt & EGFRvIII	ADC73	4g
(ABT806)	ADC74	25e
	ADC75	25f

Experimental Example 4. Cytotoxicity of anti-HER2 ADCs

[0564] Commercially available human breast cancer cell lines MCF-7 (HER2 negative to normal), OE-19 (HER2 positive), NCI-N87 (HER2 positive), SK-OV-3 (HER2 positive), JIMT-1 (HER2 positive), and SK-BR-3 (HER2 positive) were used. The cell lines were cultured according to recommended specifications provided with the commercially available cell lines.

[0565] Anti-proliferation activities of the antibodies, drugs, and conjugates with regard to the cancer cell lines were measured. The cells were plated in 96-well, tissue culture plates at 1×10^4 cells per well. After 24 hour incubation, the antibodies, drugs, and conjugates were added in various concentrations. The number of viable cells after 72 hours were counted using SRB assay. Absorbance was measured at 540 nm using SpectraMax 190 (Molecular Devices, USA).

Table 8. IC₅₀ value of the different anti-HER2 ADCs (DAR2)

Payload	ADC	Linker-toxin	SK-BR-3	JIMT-1	OE-19	NCI-N87	SK-OV-3	MCF-7
MMAF	ADC8	5f	0.10	0.34	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC2	2h	0.14	0.16	0.42	0.75	1.19	>33.33
	ADC4	3g	0.10	0.32	-	0.97	1.21	>33.33
	ADC6	4g	0.03	0.38	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC16	11k	0.06	0.26	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC14	10d	0.09	0.31	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC18	12d	0.10	0.34	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC20	13f	0.08	0.29	-	-	-	>33.33

(continued)

Payload	ADC	Linker-toxin	SK-BR-3	JIMT-1	OE-19	NCI-N87	SK-OV-3	MCF-7
MMAE	ADC7	5e	0.10	13.44	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC1	2g	0.47	275	-	0.69	241	>33.33
	ADC3	3f	0.29	1.63	-	1.04	1.34	>33.33
	ADC5	4f	0.15	0.97	-	0.40	1.04	>33.33
	ADC9	6e	0.10	>33.3	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC15	11j	0.17	>33.3	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC10	7e	0.12	0.64	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC12	9j	0.20	2.01	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC13	10c	0.19	1.09	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC17	12c	0.03	0.11	-	-	-	>33.33
	ADC19	13e	0.13	0.38	-	-	-	>33.33

Table 9. IC₅₀ value of the different PEG length-ADCs

Test samples					IC ₅₀ (nM)	
Toxin	DAR	ADC	# of PEG unit	Linker-toxin	JIMT-1	MCF-7
MMAE	2	ADC7	1	5e	>10.0	>10.0
		ADC1	3	2g	>10.0	>10.0
		ADC3	6	3f	>10.0	>10.0
		ADC5	12	4f	1.01	>10.0

Table 10. IC₅₀ value of MMAF ADCs with the different types of linkers

ADC	Linker-toxin	SK-BR-3	JIMT-1	NCI-N87	SK-OV-3	MCF-7
ADC23	16f	0.05	0.12	0.35	0.44	>33.33
ADC34	25f	0.03	0.10	-	-	>33.33
ADC38	28e	0.03	0.05	-	-	>33.33
ADC40	29k	0.02	0.06	-	-	>33.33
ADC42	30c	0.03	0.04	-	-	>33.33
ADC44	31g	0.03	0.05	-	-	>33.33
ADC46	32d	0.04	0.08	-	-	>33.33
ADC48	33f	0.03	0.08	-	-	>33.33
ADC50	34f	0.03	0.05	-	-	>33.33
ADC53	37d	0.03	0.05	-	-	>33.33
ADC54	38b	0.05	0.12	-	-	>33.33

Table 11. IC₅₀ value of MMAE ADCs with the different types of linkers

ADC	Linker-toxin	SK-BR-3	JIMT-1	NCI-N87	SK-OV-3	MCF-7
ADC24	16g	0.14	0.26	0.17	0.37	>33.33
ADC25	17d	0.03	0.10	0.36	0.37	>33.33
ADC26	18c	0.08	0.14	-	-	>33.33
ADC27	19c	0.05	0.43	0.29	0.38	>33.33
ADC28	20q	0.03	0.12	0.36	0.36	>33.33
ADC29	21i	0.03	0.41	0.31	0.49	>33.33
ADC30	22h	0.05	0.41	0.30	0.35	>33.33
ADC31	23h	0.14	0.24	-	-	>33.33
ADC32	24l	0.03	0.40	0.32	0.35	>33.33
ADC33	25e	0.04	0.23	0.27	0.33	>33.33
ADC35	26e	0.13	0.19	-	-	>33.33
ADC36	27e	0.13	0.22	-	-	>33.33
ADC37	28d	0.04	0.07	-	-	>33.33
ADC39	29j	0.03	0.11	-	-	>33.33
ADC41	30b	0.03	0.10	-	-	>33.33
ADC43	31f	0.03	0.04	-	-	>33.33
ADC45	32c	0.03	0.08	-	-	>33.33
ADC47	33e	0.04	0.07	-	-	>33.33
ADC49	34e	0.03	0.05	-	-	>33.33
ADC51	35g	0.04	0.24	0.34	-	>33.33
ADC52	36e	0.07	0.40	0.37	-	>33.33
ADC55	38e	0.04	0.07	-	-	>33.33

Table 12. IC₅₀ value of the hybrid ADCs

Test samples				IC ₅₀ (nM)				
Toxin	DAR	ADC	Linker-toxin	SK-BR-3	JIMT-1	NCI-N87	SK-OV-3	MCF-7
MMAF	2	ADC2	2h	0.08	0.40	0.84	0.84	>33.33
	4	ADC23	16f	0.05	0.10	0.25	0.36	>33.33
Amanitin	2	ADC21	14m	0.09	>33.3	0.88	0.25	>33.33
MMAF & Amanitin	4	ADC58	41c	0.06	0.73	0.95	0.64	>33.33
	8	ADC78	41c	0.03	0.03	0.33	0.76	>33.33
MMAF-OMe				0.12	0.07	0.49	0.78	0.60

The comparison of two different toxin conjugated ADCs and same toxin conjugated ADCs

Table 13. IC₅₀ value of the various DAR-ADCs

Test samples			IC ₅₀ (nM)	
DAR#	ADC code	Linker-toxin	JIMT-1	MCF-7
DAR2	ADC2	2h	1.37	>33.33
DAR4	ADC23	16f	0.21	>33.33
	ADC34	25f	0.09	>33.33
	ADC76	2h	0.27	>33.33
DAR8	ADC62	44i	0.08	>33.33
	ADC77	16f	0.02	>33.33

Experimental Example 5. Cytotoxicity of Erbitux (LC)-Glucuronide Linker MMAF

[0566] A431 cells, which express high levels of EGFR, and MCF-7 cells, which express low levels of EGFR, were plated at about 1000 cells per well in a 96-well plate in 100 μ L of media. HCC-827 cells, which express an intermediate level of EGFR were plated at about 5000 cells per well in a 96-well plate in 100 μ L of media. The cells were incubated at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 24 hours. Then, serial dilutions of monomethyl auristatin F-OMe (MMAF-OMe), Erbitux (LC)-G7CVIM, and the antibody drug conjugate ADC64 comprising Erbitux (LC)-G7CVIM and MMAF were added to the cells at concentrations of 100 to 0.00128 nM. The cells were incubated for 72 hours and then fixed for 1 hour at 4°C after adding 100 μ L of ice-cold 10% trichloroacetic acid to each well. Viable cells were counted using SRB dye (Sulforhodamine B, Sigma S1402) and a Molecular Devices SpectraMax 190 plate reader running Softmax Pro v5, monitoring absorbance at 540 nm (Table 14)

[0567] Erbitux (LC)-G7CVIM had an IC₅₀ greater than 100 nM for each cell line (A431, MCF-7, and HCC-827). MMAF-OMe had an IC₅₀ of 1.81 nM against MCF-7 cells, 1.99 nM against HCC-827 cells, and 1.11 nM against A431 cells. The antibody-drug conjugate ADC64, 65, and 66 had an IC₅₀ of greater than 100 nM against MCF-7 cells, 0.47, 0.17, and 0.11 nM against HCC-827 cells, respectively. ADC64 showed 1.3 nM against A431 cells, thus displaying superior specificity over MMAF-OMe and superior potency over Erbitux (LC)-G7CVIM.

Table 14. IC₅₀ value of anti-EGFR mAb, Erbitux based ADCs

ADC Code	Cell-lines		
	A431	HCC-827	MCF-7
ADC64	1.30	0.47	>33.33
ADC65	-	0.17	>33.33
ADC66	-	0.11	>33.33

Experimental Example 6. Cytotoxicity of ABT-806 (LC)-Glucuronide Linker-MMAF

[0568] Cytotoxicity of ABT-806 based ADCs were tested against patient derived cell lines established Samsung Medical Center (Seoul, Republic of Korea). The cells were maintained in Neurobasal®-A Media (Thermo Fisher Scientific) with supplement of L-glutamine (200 nM), bFGF (20 ng/mL), EGF (20 ng/mL), N2 supplement, and B27 supplement. For the viability test, cells were aliquoted to 96-well plate (5000 cells/well) and incubated at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 1 day before treatment. After ADC treatment, cells were incubated for 72 hr. 100 μ L of CellTiter-Glo® Reagent (Promega) was added to each well to analyze the cell viability. After 10 minutes incubation, luminescent signal was analyzed using Luminometer.

[0569] DAR4 ADCs (ADC74, ADC75) had better potency than DAR2 ADC (ADC73) as expected. Some patient's cells showed a little different sensitive to payload. 22 & 780 cells were more sensitive to MMAF over MMAE, 464 cells vice versa.

Table 15. Cytotoxic activity of ABT-806 based ADCs against patient derived cell lines

Test samples		Patient Derived Cell-lines				
		vIII352T1	780	437	464	22
ABT806	ADC73	0.572	0.959	0.357	0.472	0.501
	ADC75	0.104	0.227	0.241	0.151	0.282
	ADC74	0.170	0.425	0.253	0.069	0.489

Experimental Example 7. Cytotoxicity of anti-CD19 ADCs

[0570] Ramos cells, which are human Burkitt's lymphoma cells, were seeded in a 96-well plate at 20,000 cells/well in 100 μ L of growth media. The cells were incubated at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 1 day. Serial dilutions of anti-CD19 antibodies DI-B4-(LC)-G7CVIM and ADCs from 33.33 nM to 5.1 pM in 100 μ L media were added to the wells, and the cells were incubated with the antibody & ADCs for 72 hours. Cell viability was assessed using WST-1 (TaKaRa MK400) and a Molecular Devices SpectraMax 190 plate reader running Softmax Pro v5, monitoring absorbance at 450 nm (Table 16).

[0571] The experiments in Ramos cells were performed in parallel with experiments on K562 cells, human myelogenous leukemia cells that do not express CD19, as a negative control to assess any non-specific cytotoxicity.

[0572] ADC68 and ADC69 displayed an IC₅₀ of 0.09 nM against Ramos cells, which was superior to unconjugated DI-B4 (Table 16). No antibody displayed cytotoxicity below 33.33 nM against the K562 control cells.

Table 16. Cytotoxic activity of anti-CD19 antibody based ADCs

ADC Code	Cell-lines	
	Ramos	K562
ADC67	>33.33	>33.33
ADC68	0.09	>33.33
ADC69	0.09	>33.33

Experimental Example 8. Cytotoxicity of Rituxan based ADCs

[0573] Ramos cells, which are human Burkitt's lymphoma cells, were seeded in a 96-well plate at 20,000 cells/well in 100 μ L of growth media. The cells were incubated at 37°C in 5% CO₂ for 1 day. Serial dilutions of Rituxan (LC)-G7CVIM and ADCs from 33.33 nM to 5.1 pM in 100 μ L media were added to the wells, and the cells were incubated with the antibody & ADCs for 72 hours. Cell viability was assessed using WST-1 (TaKaRa MK400) and a Molecular Devices SpectraMax 190 plate reader running Softmax Pro v5, monitoring absorbance at 450 nm (Table 17).

[0574] The experiments in Ramos cells were performed in parallel with experiments on K562 cells, human myelogenous leukemia cells that do not express CD20, as a negative control to assess any non-specific cytotoxicity.

[0575] ADC70, ADC71, and ADC72 displayed an IC₅₀ of 4.56 nM, 1.47 nM, and 1.78 nM against Ramos cells respectively, which was superior to unconjugated anti-CD20 antibody (Table 17). No antibody displayed cytotoxicity below 33.33 nM against the K562 control cells.

Table 17. Cytotoxic activity of Rituxan-based ADCs

ADC Code	Cell-lines	
	Ramos	K562
ADC70	4.56	>33.33
ADC71	1.47	>33.33
ADC72	1.78	>33.33

Experimental Example 9. Differences in Beta glucuronidase susceptibility

[0576] ADCs in 0.06 M Na-acetate buffer (pH5.2) were aliquoted into the 1.5 mL micro tube. The final concentration

of ADC in the mixture was adjusted to 12 μM . 0.001 μg of human β -glucuronidase (R&D systems: 6144-GH-020) was added to each tube. Then, the mixtures were incubated at 37°C water bath for 3h. The reaction was terminated by the addition of cold PBS buffer (pH7.4) to the 15-fold dilution. The change of ADC-pattern by beta-glucuronidase was analyzed by HIC-HPLC. The efficacy of enzyme activity was visualized by % of remaining (Figure 10)

[0577] The attribute to susceptibility seemed to be the Branch Unit (BR) of linker-toxin part. When Lys was located in BR, the toxin release was occurred very efficiently. Amide and amine showed less susceptibility than Lys.

Experimental Example 10. Plasma stability of ADCs

[0578] To compare plasma stability between ADC2 (Herceptin- LBG-MMAF, DAR2) and Kadcyla, those ADCs were incubated in mouse and human plasma for 5 seconds (0h) or 96 hours (96h), followed by SRB *in vitro* cytotoxicity test using SK-BR3 cells for 72 hr. Plasma-incubated ADC2 retains potent cytotoxicity (no change in IC_{50} ; 0.06 (0h) and 0.07 nM (96h) for MP, 0.08 (0h) and 0.08 nM (96h) for HP) while plasma-incubated Kadcyla displayed decreased cytotoxicity compared to 0h Kadcyla (increase in IC_{50} ; 0.26 (0h) and 1.59 nM (96h) for MP, 0.29 (0h) and 4.21 nM (96h) for HP) (Figure 11)

To characterize the plasma stability of ADCs made of various antibody, ADCs were incubated in human plasma for 5 seconds (0h) or 168 hours (168h), followed by SRB *in vitro* cytotoxicity test using SK-BR3 cells for 72hr. (Table 18-20, and Figure 12)

Table 18. Plasma stability of Herceptin based ADCs (nM)

Test samples			Plasma incubation time	
			0h	168h
MMAF-OMe			0.48	N.D.
Herceptin	MMAF	ADC2	0.09	0.15
		ADC6	0.07	0.09
		ADC8	0.11	0.18
		ADC14	0.06	0.08
		ADC16	0.05	0.07
		ADC23	0.04	0.05
		ADC34	0.03	0.04
		ADC40	0.03	0.05
		ADC46	0.03	0.03
		ADC48	0.03	0.04
		ADC62	0.02	0.02
	MMAE	ADC1	0.26	0.41
		ADC3	0.20	0.32
		ADC5	0.19	0.31
		ADC7	0.17	0.26
		ADC12	0.51	0.79
		ADC13	0.63	0.87
		ADC15	0.52	0.70
		ADC24	0.08	0.11
		ADC25	0.07	0.12
		ADC26	0.17	0.22

(continued)

Test samples			Plasma incubation time	
			0h	168h
MMAF-OMe			0.48	N.D.
		ADC27	0.10	0.14
		ADC28	0.07	0.08
		ADC29	0.06	0.08
		ADC30	0.15	0.19
		ADC31	0.08	0.12
		ADC32	0.05	0.09
		ADC33	0.04	0.09
		ADC35	0.11	0.21
		ADC36	0.09	0.12
		ADC39	0.12	0.17
		ADC45	0.04	0.05
		ADC47	0.04	0.05
		ADC61	0.32	0.32

Table 19. Plasma stability of anti-CD19 antibody based ADCs (nM)

Test samples		Plasma incubation	
		0h	168h
MMAF-OMe		0.160	N.D.
CD19	ADC68	0.036	0.048
	ADC69	0.047	0.135

Table 20. Plasma stability of anti-CD20 antibody based ADCs (nM)

Test samples		Plasma incubation	
		0h	168h
MMAF-OMe		0.160	N.D.
CD20	ADC71	4.001	4.134
	ADC72	2.026	3.851

Experimental Example 11. Pharmacokinetics of Herceptin® and ADCs

[0579] Male Sprague Dawley rats were dosed intravenously with 3 mg/kg of antibodies or the antibody-drug conjugates. Blood samples were taken at multiple time points after dosing, chilled in ice water, and plasma was isolated. Plasma was frozen at -80°C until subsequent LC/MS/MS analysis.

[0580] 20 µL of each sample was mixed with 340 µL of PBS and 60 µL of protein A magnetic beads and incubated for 2 hours at room temperature with gentle shaking. The beads were washed three times with PBS. Then, 25 µL of an internal standard (isotope-labeled peptides at 10 µg/mL), 75 µL of RapiGest SF (Waters), and 10 µL of dithiothreitol were added to the beads. The mixture was shaken for 1 minute and then incubated for 1 hour at 60°C. 25 µL of iodoacetic acid was added to the mixture, the mixture was shaken for 1 minute, and then incubated for 30 minutes at room tem-

perature. 10 μ L of sequencing grade modified trypsin (Promega) was added to the mixture, the mixture was shaken for 1 minute, and the mixture was incubated overnight at 37°C. 15 μ L of hydrochloric acid was added to the mixture, the mixture was shaken for 1 minute, and the mixture was incubated for 30 minutes at 37°C. The mixture was centrifuged at $5000 \times g$ for 10 minutes at 4°C and the supernatant was transferred into an HPLC vial.

[0581] The liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry system consisted of two Shimadzu LC-20AD pumps, a Shimadzu CBM-20A HPLC pump controller (Shimadzu Corporation, Columbia, MD, USA), a CTC HTS PAL autosampler (CEAP Technologies, Carrboro, NC, USA) and a triple time of flight 5600 mass spectrometer (Triple TOF MS) (AB Sciex, Foster City, CA, USA). The analytical column was a Phenomenex Kinetex XB-C18 column, 2.1×30 (2.6 μ m). HPLC was performed with a water/acetonitrile gradient and acidified with 0.1% formic acid. Injection volumes were 10 μ L. Triple TOF MS, equipped with a Duospray™ ion source, was used to complete the high resolution experiment. The Triple TOF MS was operated in the positive ion mode. High-purity nitrogen gas was used for the nebulizer/Duospray™ and curtain gases. The source temperature was set at 500°C with a curtain gas flow of 30 L/min. The ion spray voltage was set at 5500 V, declustering potential was 145 V, and the collision energy was 38 V. The product ion mode was used as scan mode. Analyst® TF Version 1.6 (AB Sciex) operated with Windows® (Microsoft) was used for instrument control and data acquisition. Peak integrations were performed with MultiQuant® Version 2.1.1 (AB Sciex). Calculations were performed with Multi Quant® Version 2.1.1 for peak area ratios, standard curve regressions, sample concentration values, and descriptive statistics. The LC/MS/MS was calibrated using standard solutions at concentrations of 0.1, 0.4, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 40, 80, and 100 μ g/mL. A representative PK profile was shown in Figure 13. PK profile of ADC2 (Herceptin (LC)-MMAF, DAR2) was a very similar with that of Herceptin.

Experimental Example 12. PEG (connecting unit) combination effect in Branched linker-toxin

[0582] To identify critical attributes that affect PK profile of ADC, different length and structure of connecting unit (PEG number and arrangement) were tested. Experiment for PK analysis was done as described in experimental example 9. Although ADC23 (a DAR4 ADC) had more potent efficacy *in vitro* and *in vivo* than DAR2 ADCs, its PK profile was reduced in half life and AUC (Figure 14). By replacing linker-toxin from 16f to 25f (attaching additional connecting unit (3 PEGs) to after branch unit (BR), PK profile had been recovered as much as that of Herceptin (Figure 14). These effects were well reproduced in MMAE based ADCs, ADC24 & ADC33 (Figure 15). Because MMAE is more hydrophobic than MMAF, ADCs based on MMAE has worsened in PK profile as shown by ADC1 and ADC24. Adding longer PEG unit was traditional application for extending half-life and AUC. However, simple elongation of PEG unit numbers from 3 to 12 didn't show big differences, when comparing ADC1 with ADC5. In the other hand, by replacing linear linker unit (compound 2g or 4f) to branched one (compound 11j, ADC15), the PK profile was significantly improved (Figure 16), indicating that critical attribute for PK might not be a just simple length, but the structure of connecting unit.

Experimental Example 13. Effects of hydrophilic connecting unit in PK of ADC

[0583] Many payloads used for ADC have hydrophobic character, resulted in bad PK property. To compensate the hydrophobicity, hydrophilic compounds were tested as a part of connecting unit. Inserting hydrophilic compounds such as Asp enhanced AUC and half-life of ADCs (Figure 17, 18, 19). In cases of DAR2, ADC with connecting unit including Asp showed higher AUC than Herceptin (Figure 17, 18). The compensate effect by polar amino acid, such as Asp or Glu, can be observed in ADCs with DAR4 (Figure 19, 20). ADC49 (2 Asp) and ADC52 (2 D-Glu) were superior to ADC47 (1 Asp) and ADC51 (1D-Glu) respectively in AUC and half-life.

Experimental Example 14. *in vivo* efficacy

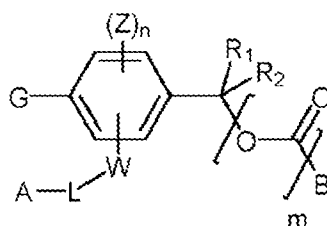
[0584] A frozen JIMT-1 cell stock was thawed and cultivated under the 37°C, 5% CO₂ condition. JIMT-1 cells of the best condition that the viability was more than 95% were used for implantation. Cells of 5×10^6 suspended in 50 μ L cold-saline were implanted into right hind leg of balb/c-nude mouse. 5 mice per group were used for the experiments. Tumor formation and growth were periodically monitored. Tumor volume was calculated by the formulation; volume = $(a^2b)/2$, "a" means short diameter and "b" means long diameter.

[0585] When the tumor volume reaches to about 200 mm³, mice having average value were selected and grouped according to tumor volume. Then, mice were treated with PBS (vehicle control), or ADCs indicated in Figure 21 and 22. Tumor size was determined 2 times a week in 3~4 days interval during the experimental period. Tumor volumes measured from the first day of administration to the end date were plotted for tumor growth curve.

[0586] Representative ADCs were tested by single injection. In general, the ADCs with branching unit (BR) containing Lys had better efficacy than ADCs with BR containing amide.

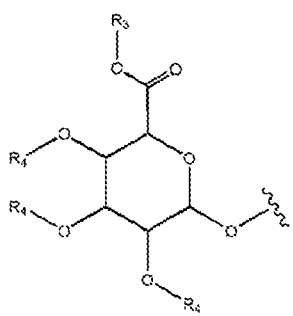
PATENTKRAV

1. Ligand-lægemiddel konjugat omfattende en ligand, en linker og et aktivt middel,
5 som har formelen:



hvor:

- 10 G repræsenterer



- A repræsenteer et antistof;
15 B repræsenterer det aktive middel;
W repræsenterer -C(O)-, -C(O)NR'-, -C(O)O-, -S(O)₂NR'-, -P(O)R''NR'-,
-S(O)NR'- eller -PO₂NR'-, i hvert enkelt tilfælde hvor gruppen C(O), S eller P er
direkte bundet til phenylringen og R' og R'' er hver især uafhængigt er hydrogen,
(C₁-C₈)alkyl, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₈)alkoxy, (C₁-C₈)alkylthio, mono- eller di-(C₁-
20 C₈)alkylamino, (C₃-C₂₀)heteroaryl eller (C₆-C₂₀)aryl;
hvert Z repræsenterer uafhængigt hydrogen, (C₁-C₈)alkyl eller en elektron-
udtrækkende gruppe (såsom en amid, carboxylsyre, carboxylsyreester, halogen,
cyano eller nitro), (C₁-C₈)alkyl, halogen, cyano eller nitro;
n er et heltal fra 1 til 3;
25 m er 0 eller 1;
L er en linker, som kovalent linker A til W, hvor linkeren omfatter et peptid, som
omfatter i det mindste én hydrofil aminosyre;

R_1 og R_2 er hver især uafhængigt hydrogen, (C_1-C_8) alkyl eller (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl; eller R_1 and R_2 , taget sammen med det carbonatom, hvortil de er forbundet, danner en (C_3-C_8) cycloalkylring;

R_3 er hydrogen eller en carboxylbeskyttende gruppe; og

5 hvert R_4 er uafhængigt hydrogen eller en hydroxylbeskyttende gruppe.

2. Konjugat ifølge krav 1, hvor antistoffet er et monoklonalt antistof, polyklonalt antistof, antistoffragment, Fab, Fab', Fab'-SH, $F(ab')_2$, Fv, enkeltkæde Fv ("scFv"), diastof, lineært antistof, bispecifikt antistof, multispecifikt antistof, kimerisk antistof, 10 humaniseret antistof, humant antistof eller et fusionsprotein omfattende den antigenbindende del af et antistof.

3. Konjugat ifølge krav 1, hvor antistoffet er muromonab-CD3 abciximab, rituximab, daclizumab, palivizumab, infliximab, trastuzumab, etanercept, basiliximab, 15 gemtuzumab, alemtuzumab, ibritumomab, adalimumab, alefacept, omalizumab, efalizumab, tositumomab, bevacizumab, natalizumab, ranibizumab, eculizumab, rilonacept, certolizumab, romiplostim, AMG-531, golimumab, ustekinumab, ABT-874, belatacept, belimumab, atacicept, et anti-CD20 antistof, canakinumab, tocilizumab, atlizumab, mepolizumab, pertuzumab, HuMax CD20, tremelimumab, ticilimumab, 20 ipilimumab, IDEC-114, inotuzumab, aflibercept, HuMax-CD4, teplizumab, oteelixizumab, catumaxomab, anti-EpCAM antistoffet IGN101, adecatumomab, oregovomab, dinutuximab, girentuximab, denosumab, bapineuzumab, motavizumab, efumgumab, raxibacumab, LY2469298 eller veltuzumab.

25 4. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor R_3 og R_4 hver især er hydrogen.

5. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor W er $-C(O)NR'$ -, hvor C(O) er bundet til phenylringen og NR' er bundet til L.

30 6. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor linkeren omfatter en alkyl, som har 1 til 100 carbonatomer, og enten:

alkylenet omfatter i det mindste én umættet binding;

alkylenet omfatter i det mindste ét heteroarylen;

35 et carbonatom i alkylenet er erstattet af ét eller flere heteroatomer valgt blandt nitrogen (N), oxygen (O), og svovl (S); eller

alkylenet er yderligere substitueret med én eller flere alkyl med 1 til 20 carbonatomer.

7. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor peptidet omfatter alanin, aspartat, asparagin, glutamat, glutamin, glycin, lysin, ornithin, prolin, serin eller threonin.

8. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor peptidet omfatter asparat eller glutamat.

9. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor:

linkeren er kovalent bundet til liganden med en thioetherbinding og thioetherbindingen omfatter et svovlatom af et cystein i liganden, liganden omfatter et aminosyremotiv, som genkendes af en isoprenoid transferase; og thioetherbindingen omfatter et svovlatom af et cystein i aminosyremotivet.

10. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor linkeren omfatter i det mindste én isoprenylenhed.

11. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor linkeren omfatter en forbindelsesenhed repræsenteret ved $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_q-$, $-((CH_2)_pV)_q-$, $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_qY-$, $-((CH_2)_pV)_q(CH_2)_r-$, $-Y(((CH_2)_pV)_q-$ eller $-(CH_2)_r(V(CH_2)_p)_qYCH_2-$ hvor:

r er et heltal fra 0 til 10;

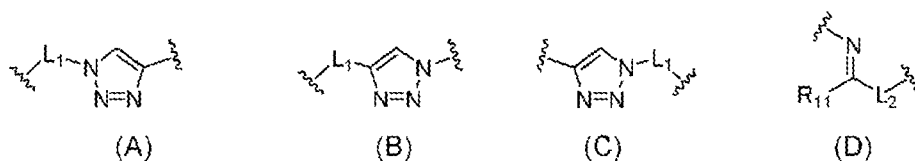
p er et heltal fra 1 til 10;

q er et heltal fra 1 til 20;

V og Y er hver især uafhængigt en enkelt binding, $-O-$, $-S-$, $-NR_{21}-$, $-C(O)NR_{22}-$, $-NR_{23}C(O)-$, $-NR_{24}SO_2-$ eller $-SO_2NR_{25}-$; og

R_{21} til R_{25} er hver især uafhængigt hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_6-C_{20}) aryl eller (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl.

12. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor linkeren omfatter en bindingsenhed, som er præsenteret ved en vilkårlig enkelt af formlerne A, B, C eller D:

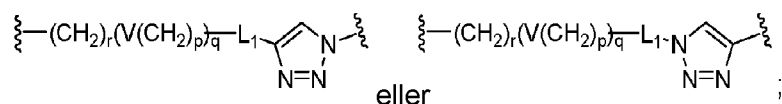


hvor:

- 5 L_1 er en enkelt binding eller alkylen med 1 til 30 carbonatomer;
 R_{11} er hydrogen eller alkyl med 1 til 10 carbonatomer; og
 L_2 er alkylen med 1 til 30 carbonatomer.

13. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor linkeren omfatter:

10



hvor

- 15 V er en enkeltbinding, $-O-$, $-S-$, $-NR_{21}-$, $-C(O)NR_{22}-$, $-NR_{23}C(O)-$, $-NR_{24}SO_2-$ eller $-SO_2NR_{25}-$, fortrinsvis $-O-$;
 R_{21} til R_{25} er hver især uafhængigt hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_6-C_{20}) aryl eller (C_1-C_6) alkyl (C_3-C_{20}) heteroaryl;
 r er et heltal fra 1 til 10, fortrinsvis 2 eller 3;
20 p er et heltal fra 0 til 10, fortrinsvis 1 eller 2;
 q er et heltal fra 1 til 20, fortrinsvis 1 til 6; og
 L_1 er en enkelt binding.

14. Konjugat ifølge ethvert af de foregående krav, hvor det aktive middel er valgt

25 blandt:

- (a) erlotinib, bortezomib, fulvestrant, suturent, letrozol, imatinib mesylat, PTK787/ZK 222584, oxaliplatin, 5-fluoruracil, leucovorin, rapamycin, lapatinib, lonafarnib, sorafenib, gefitinib, AG1478, AG1571, thiotepa, cyclophosphamid, busulfan, improsulfan, piposulfan, benzodopa, carboquon, meturedopa, uredopa, ethylenimin, altretamin, triethylenmelamin, trietylenphosphoramid, triethiylenthiofosforamid, trimethylolomelamin, bullatacin, bullatacinon, camptothecin, topotecan, bryostatin, callystatin, CC-1065, adozelesin, carzelesin,
- 30

- bizelesin, cryptophycin 1, cryptophycin 8, dolastatin, duocarmycin, KW-2189, CB1-TM1, eleutherobin, pancratistatin, sarcodictyin, spongistatin, chlorambucil, chlornaphazin, cholophosphamid, estramustin, ifosfamid, mechlorethamin, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterin, prednimustin, trofosfamid, uracil mustard,
- 5 carmustin, chlorozotocin, fotemustin, lomustin, nimustin, ranimnustin, calicheamicin, calicheamicin-gamma 1, calicheamicin-omega 1, dynemicin, dynemicin A, clodronat, esperamicin, neocarzinostatin chromophor, aclacinomysiner, actinomycin, antrmycin, azaserin, bleomyciner, cactinomycin, carabycin, carninomycin, carzinophilin, chromomyciner, dactinomycin,
- 10 daunorubicin, detorubucin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucin, doxorubicin, morpholino-doxorubicin, cyanomorpholino-doxorubicin, 2-pyrrolino-doxorubucin, liposomal doxorubicin, deoxydoxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycin C, mycophenolsyre, nogalamycin, olivomyciner, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptomigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin,
- 15 ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin, 5-fluoruracil, denopterin, methotrexat, pteropterin, trimetrexat, fludarabin, 6-mercaptopurin, thiamiprin, thiguanin, ancitabin, azacitidin, 6-azauridin, carmofur, cytarabin, dideoxyuridin, doxifluridin, enocitabin, floxuridin, calusteron, dromostanolon-propionat, epitiostanol, mepitiostan, testolacton, aminoglutethimid, mitotan, trilostan, folinsyre, aceglaton,
- 20 aldophosphamid-glycosid, aminolevulinsyre, eniluracil, amsacrin, bestrabucil, bisantren, edatraxat, defofamin, demecolcin, diaziqun, elfornithin, elliptinium-acetate, etoglucid, galliumnitrat, hydroxyurea, lentinan, lonidainin, maytansin, ansamitociner, mitoguazon, mitoxantron, mopidanmol, nitraerin, pentostatin, phenamet, pirarubicin, losoxantron, 2-ethylhydrazid, procarbazin, polysaccharide-
- 25 k, razoxan, rhizoxin, sizofiran, spirogermanium, tenuazonysyre, triaziqun, 2,2',2"-trichlortriethylamin, T-2 toxin, verracurin A, roridin A, anguidin, urethan, vindesin, dacarbazin, mannomustin, mitobronitol, mitolactol, pipobroman, gacytosin, arabinosid, cyclophosphamid, thiotepa, paclitaxel, albumin-manipuleret nanopartikelformulering af paclitaxel, doxetaxel, chlorambucil, gemcitabin, 6-
- 30 thioguanin, mercaptopurin, cisplatin, carboplatin, vinblastin, platinum, etoposid, ifosfamid, mitoxantron, vincristin, vinorelbin, novantron, teniposid, edatrexat, daunomycin, aminopterin, xeloda, ibandronat, CPT-11, topoisomerase-inhibitor RFS 2000, difluormethylornithin, retinsyre, capecitabin eller farmaceutisk acceptable salte, solvater eller syrer af vilkårlige af de foregående;
- 35 (b) monokin, en lymphokin, et traditionalt polypeptidhormon, parathyroidhormon, thyroxin, relaxin, prorelaxin, et glycoproteinormon, follikel-stimulerende hormon,

- thyroid-stimulerende hormon, luteiniserende hormon, hepatisk vækstfaktor, fibroblast vækstfaktor, prolactin, placentalt lactogen, tumor nekrose-faktor- α , tumor nekrose-faktor- β , mullerian-inhiberende substans, muse-gonadotropin-associeret peptid, inhibin, activin, vasculær endothelial vækstfaktor, thrombopoietin,
- 5 erythropoietin, en osteoinduktiv faktor, et interferon, interferon- α , interferon- β , interferon- γ , en kolonistimulerende faktor ("CSF"), makrofag-CSF, granulocyt-makrofag-CSF, granulocyt-CSF, et interleukin ("IL"), IL-1, IL-1 α , IL-2, IL-3, IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, IL-7, IL-8, IL-9, IL-10, IL-11, IL-12, et tumor nekrose-faktor, TNF- α , TNF- β , en polypeptid-faktor, LIF, kitligand eller en kombination af vilkårlige af de
- 10 foregående;
- (c) diphtheritoxin, botuliumtoxin, tetanustoxin, dysenteritoxin, choleratoxin, amanitin, α -amanitin, et derivat af amanitin, pyrrolbenzodiazepin, pyrrolbenzodiazepinderivater, tetrodotoxin, brevetoxin, ciguatoxin, ricin, AM toxin, auristatin (eksempelvis auristatin E (MMAE), eller auristatin F (MMAF)),
- 15 tubulysin, geldanamycin, maytansinoider, daunomycin, vindesin, SG2285, dolastatin, en dolastatinanalog, cryptophycin, camptothecin, et derivat eller en metabolit af camptothecin (eksempelvis SN-38), rhizoxin, et rhizoxinderivat, CC-1065, en CC-1065 analog eller derivat, duocarmycin, et enediyn-antibiotikum, esperamicin, epothilon, azonafid, aplidin, et toxoid, eller en kombination af
- 20 vilkårlige af de foregående;
- (d) en affinitetsligand, hvor affinitetsliganden er et substrat, en inhibitor, et stimulerende middel, en neurotransmitter, en radioisotop eller en kombination af vilkårlige af de foregående;
- (e) en radioaktiv markør, ^{32}P , ^{35}S , en fluorescent farve, et elektrontæt reagens, et
- 25 enzym, biotin, streptavidin, dioxigenin, en haptent, et immunogent protein, et nucleicinsyremolekyle med en sekvens, som er komplementær med et mål eller en kombination af vilkårlige af de foregående;
- (f) en immunomodulatorisk forbindelse, en anti-cancer middel, et anti-viralt middel, et anti-bakterielt middel, et anti-fungalt middel og et anti-parasitisk middel, eller en
- 30 kombination af vilkårlige af de foregående;
- (g) tamoxifen, raloxifen, droloxifen, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifen, keoxifen, LY117018, onapriston eller toremifen;
- (h) 4(5)-imidazoler, aminoglutethimid, megestrolacetat, exemestan, letrozol eller anastrozol;
- 35 (i) flutamid, nilutamid, bicalutamid, leuprolid, goserelin eller troxacitabin;
- (j) en aromataseinhibitor;

- (k) en proteinkinase inhibitor; og
- (l) en lipidkinase inhibitor.

5 **15.** Konjugat ifølge ethvert af kravene 1-13, hvor det aktive middel er valgt blandt et
antisense oligonucleotid, et ribozym, en vaccine og et anti-angiogent middel.

16. Farmaceutisk sammensætning omfattende konjugatet ifølge ethvert af de
foregående krav og i det mindste et farmaceutisk acceptabelt excipients.

10 **17.** Konjugat ifølge ethvert af kravene 1-15, til anvendelse ved behandlingen af
cancer.

18. Fremgangsmåde til fremstilling af lidandlægemiddelkonjugatet ifølge krav 1,
omfattende omsætning af et biomolekyle med et prolægemiddel, hvor:

15

biomolekylet omfatter en ligand og en keton eller et aldehyd;

prolægemidlet omfatter en alkoxyamin; og

omsætningen fremstiller et oxim, for derved kovalent af binde liganden til
prolægemidlet.

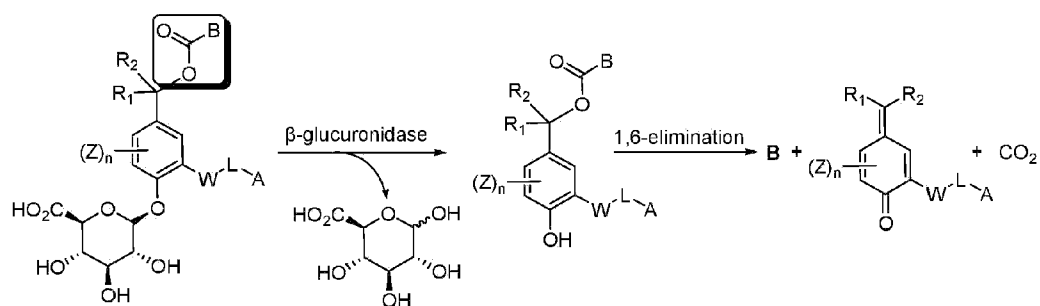
20

DRAWINGS

Drawing

Figure 1

When  part is carbamate,



When  part is ester,

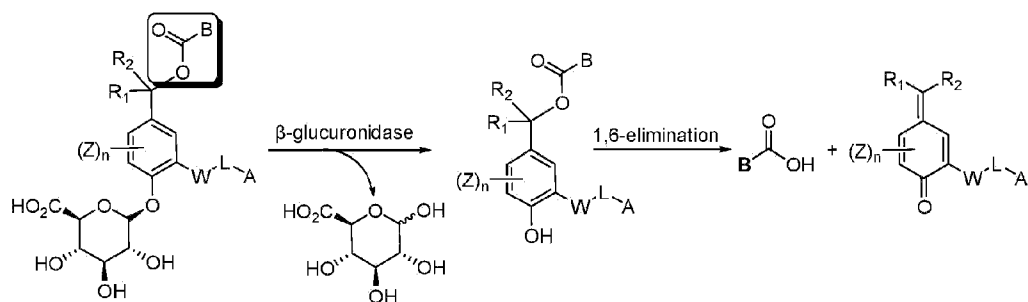


Figure 2

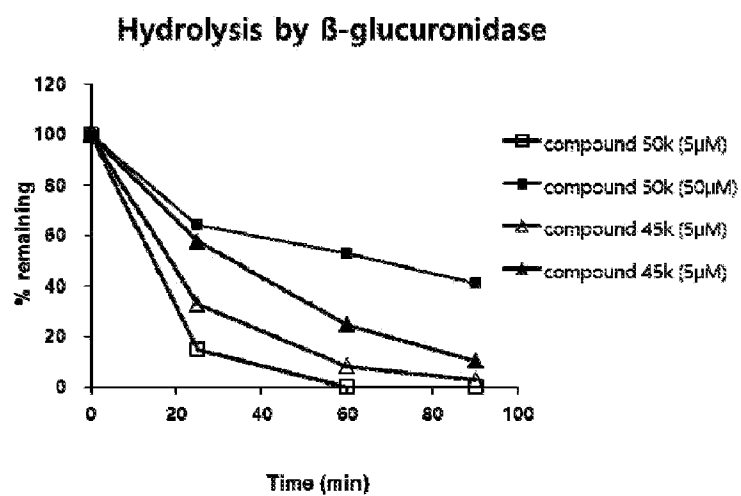


Figure 3

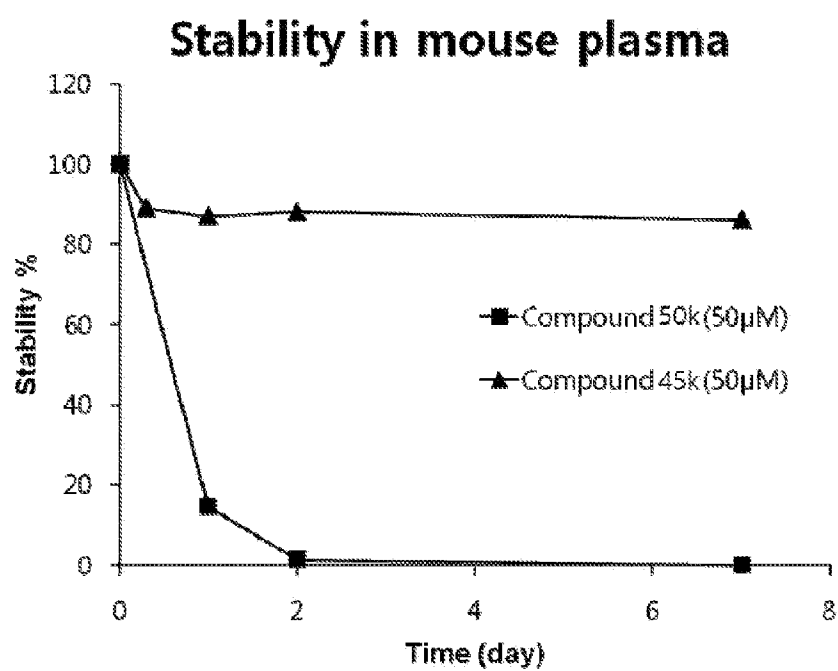


Figure 4

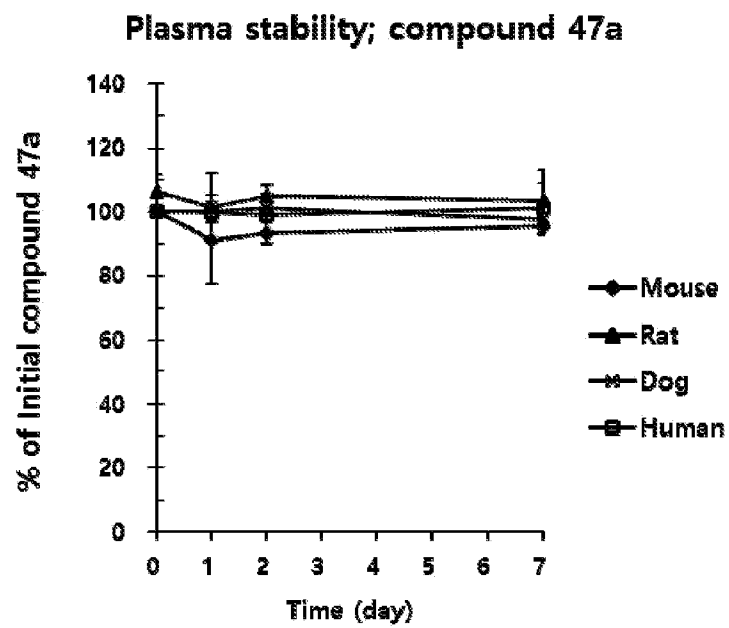


Figure 5

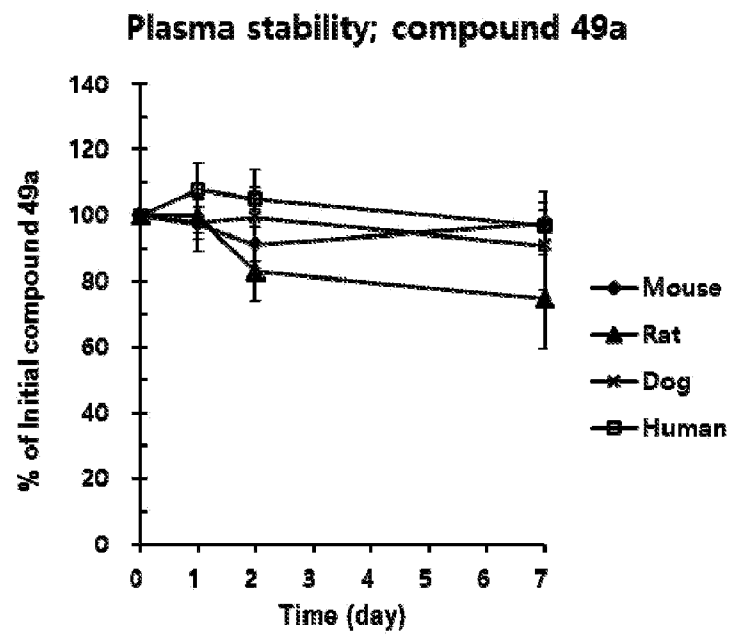


Figure 6

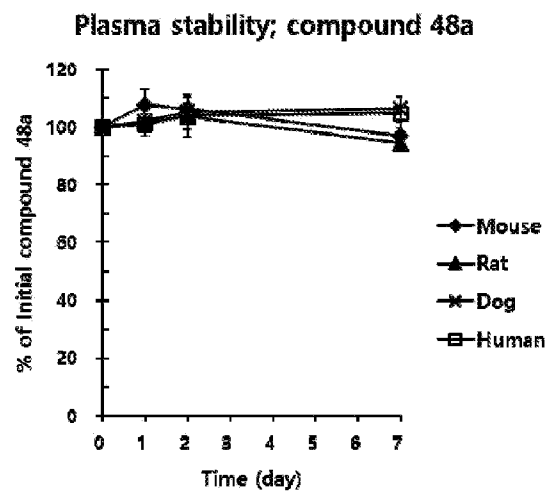


Figure 8

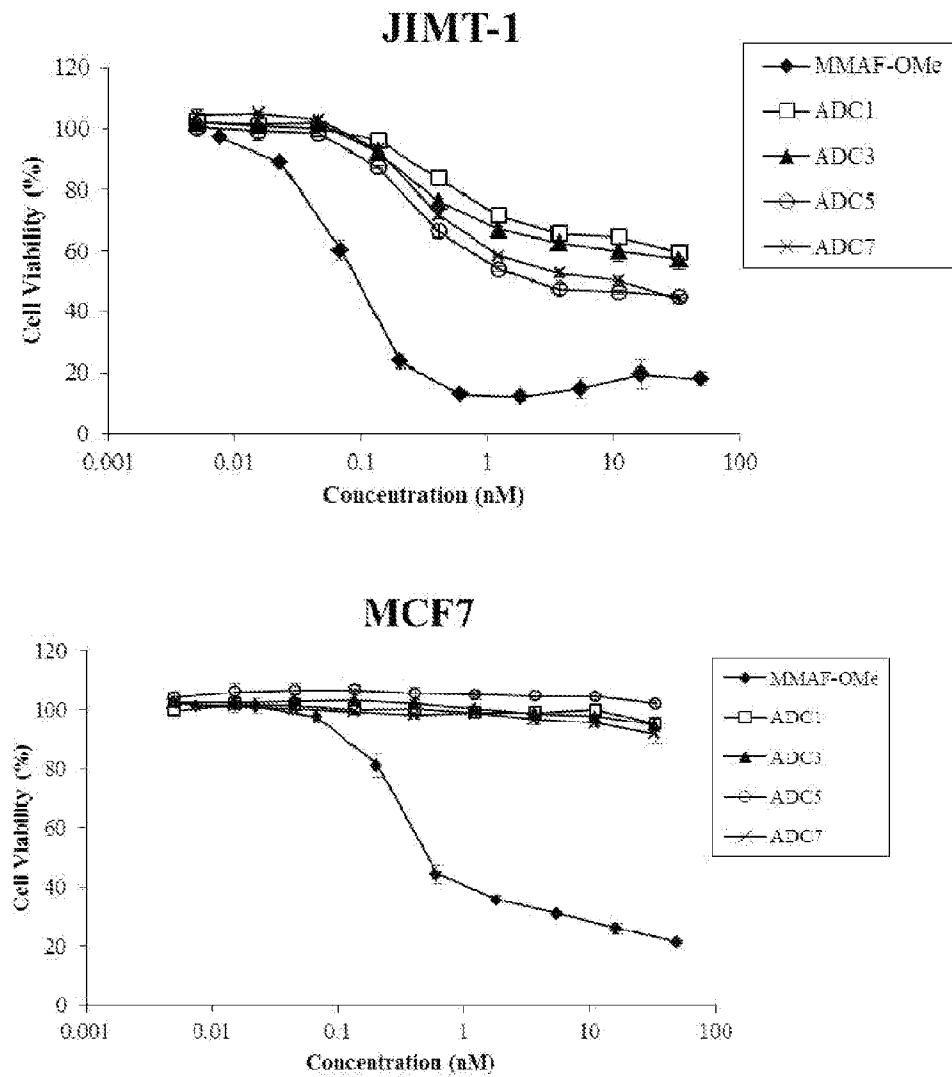


Figure 9

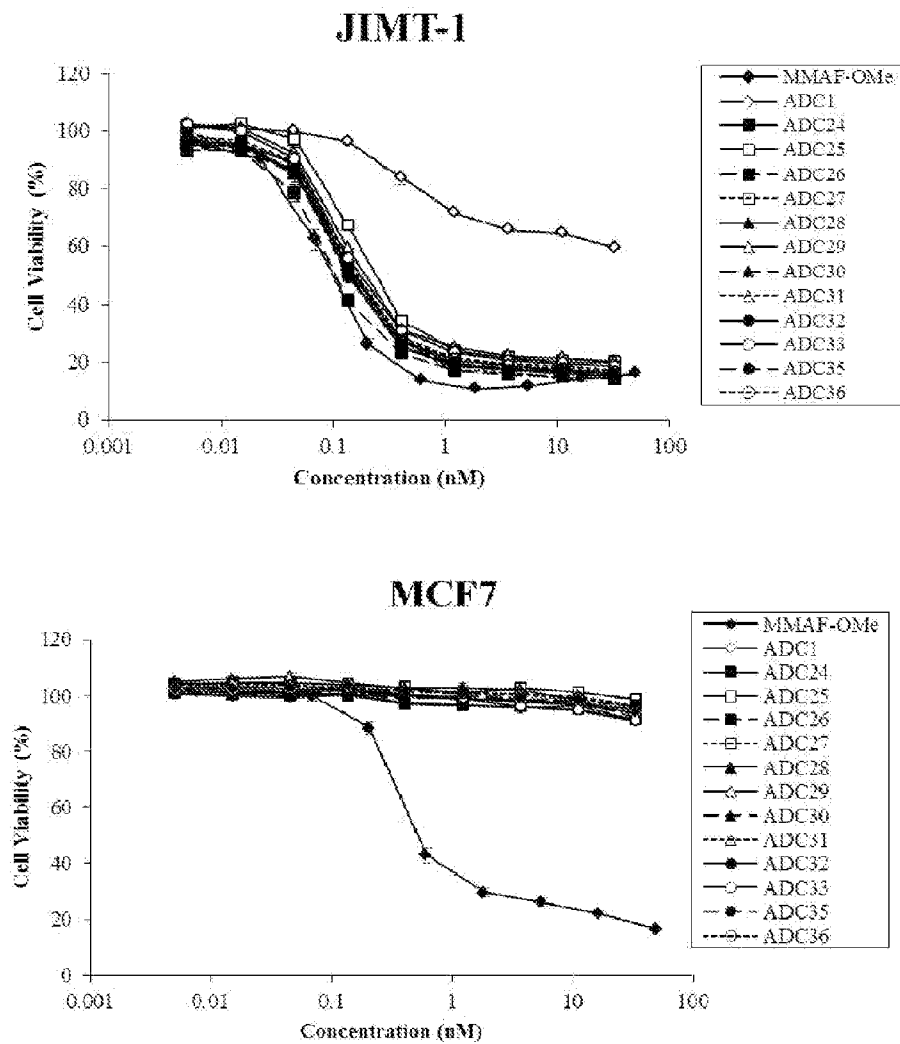


Figure 10

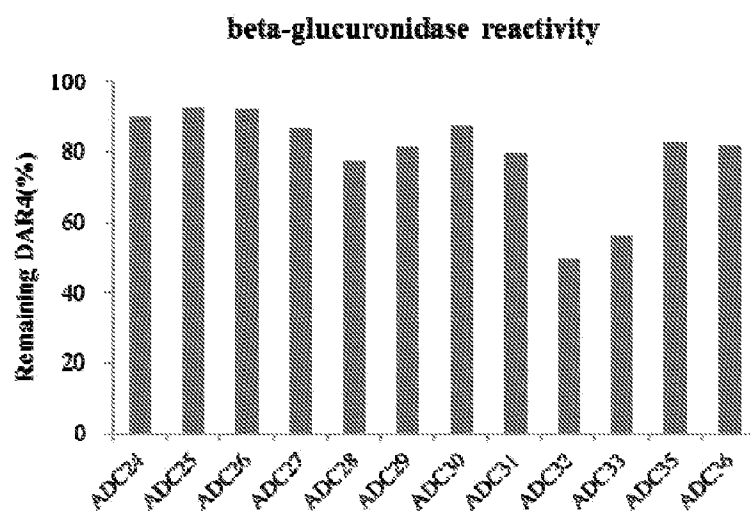


Figure 11

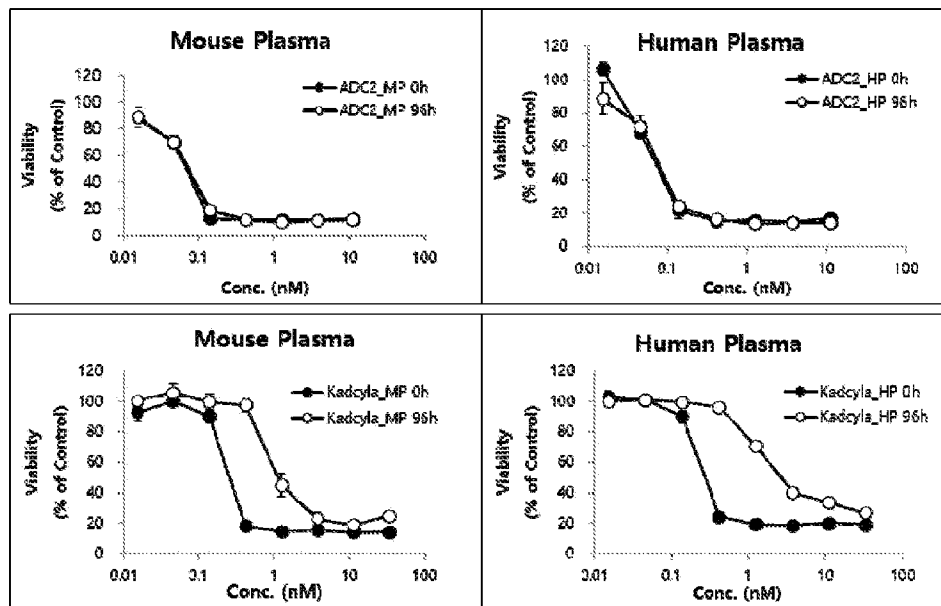


Figure 12

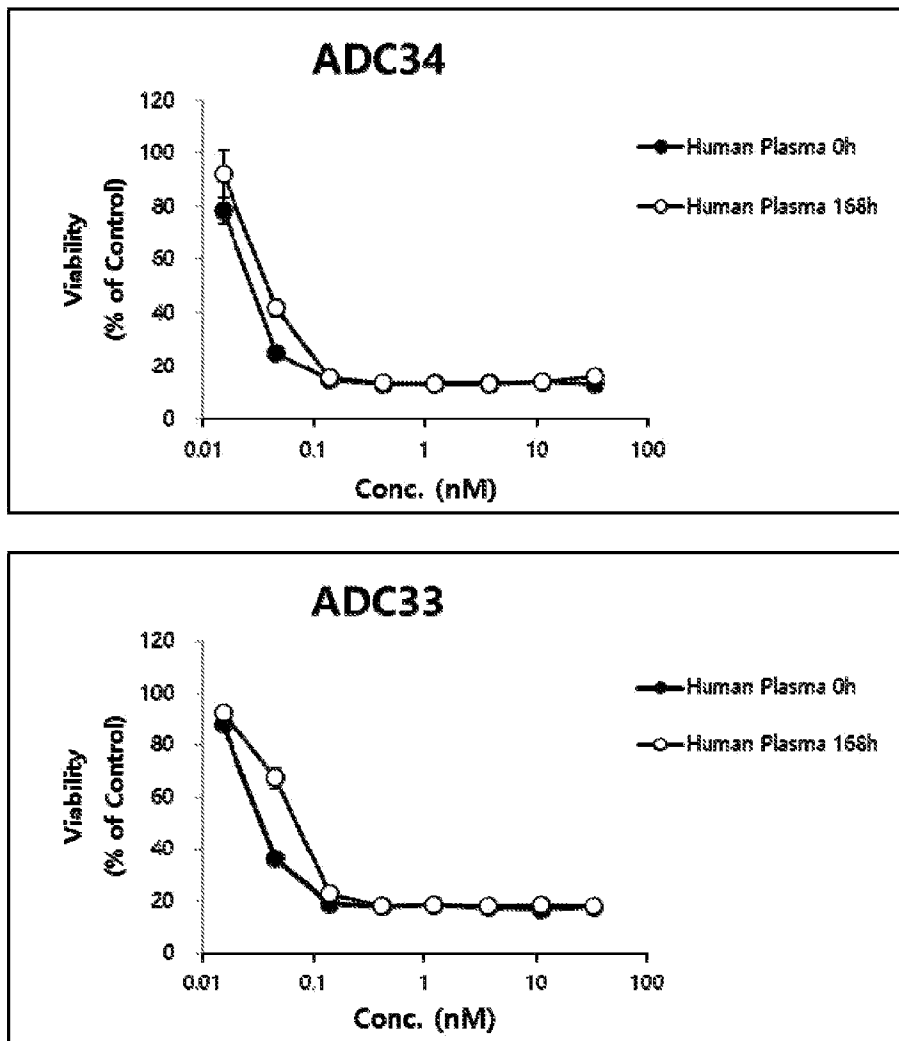


Figure 13

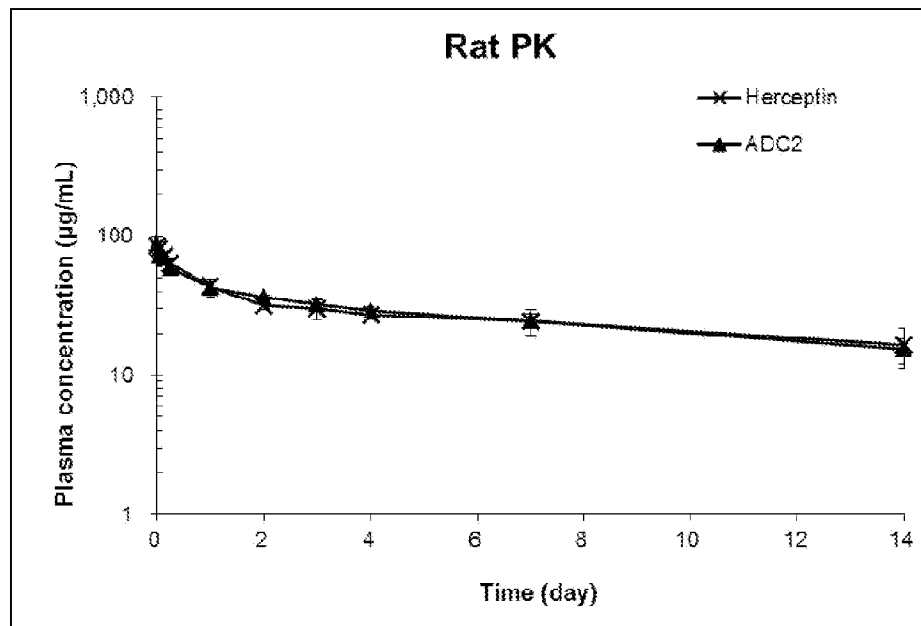


Figure 14

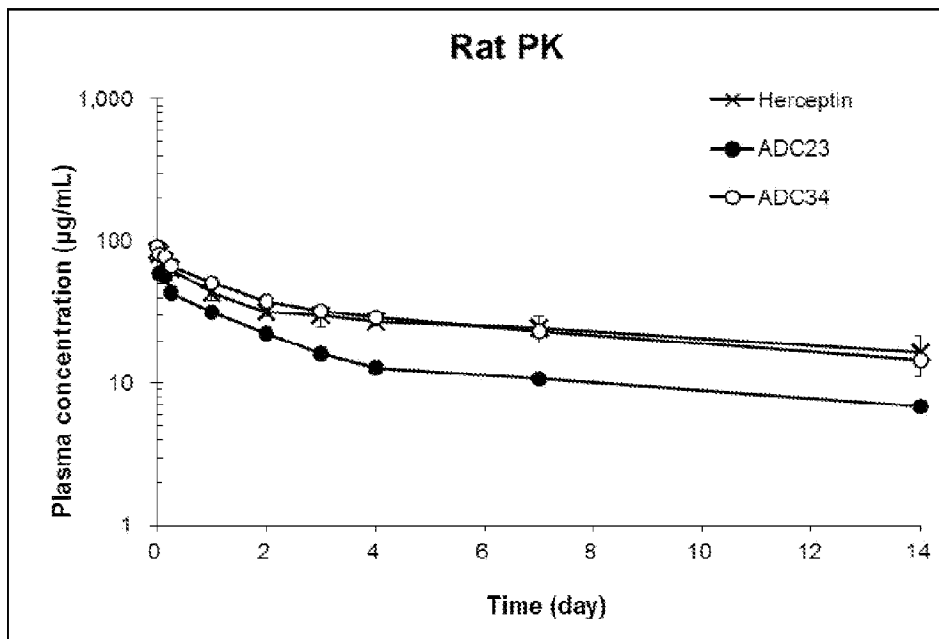


Figure 15

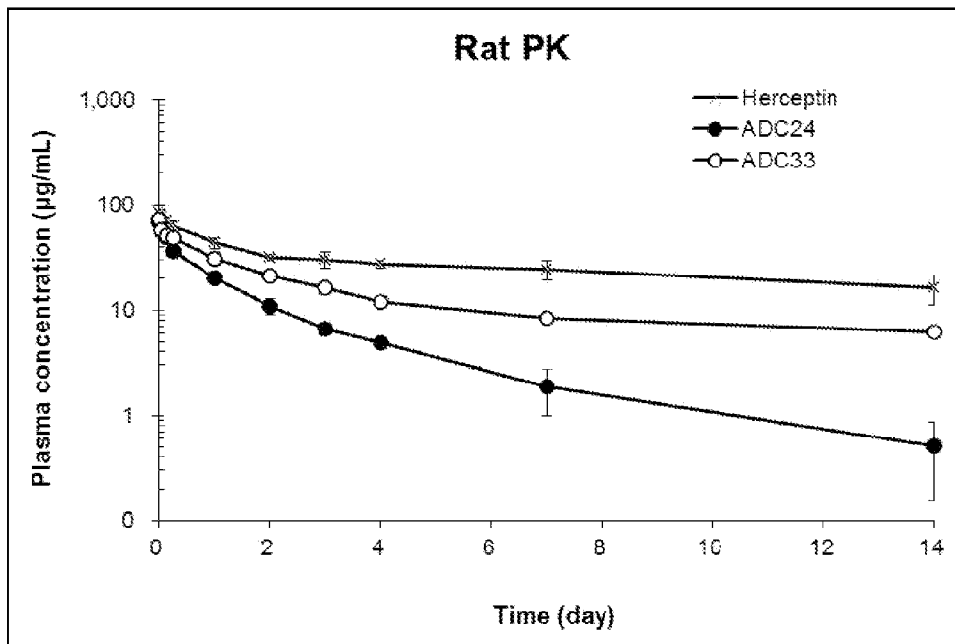


Figure 16

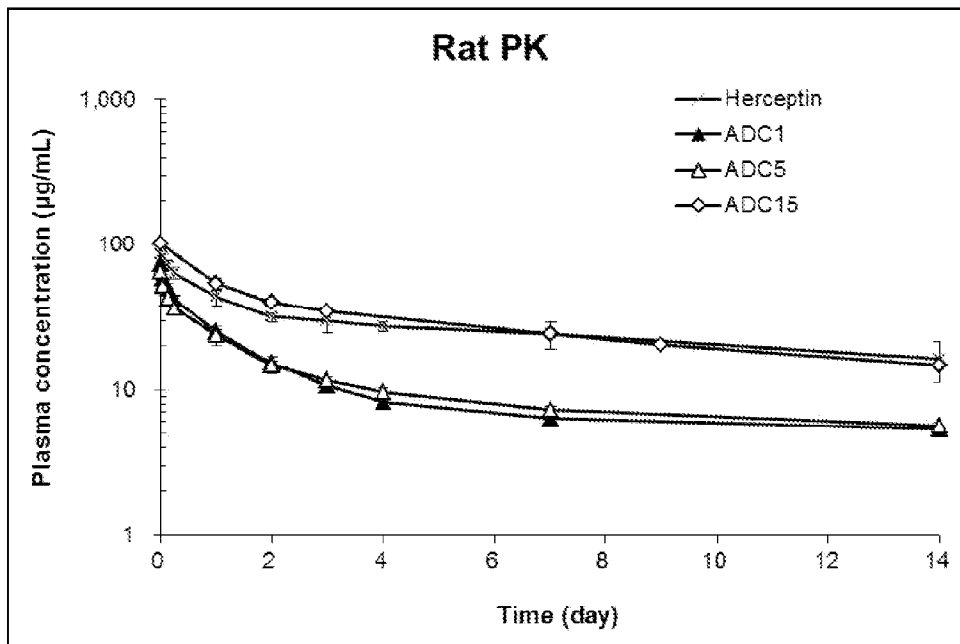


Figure 17

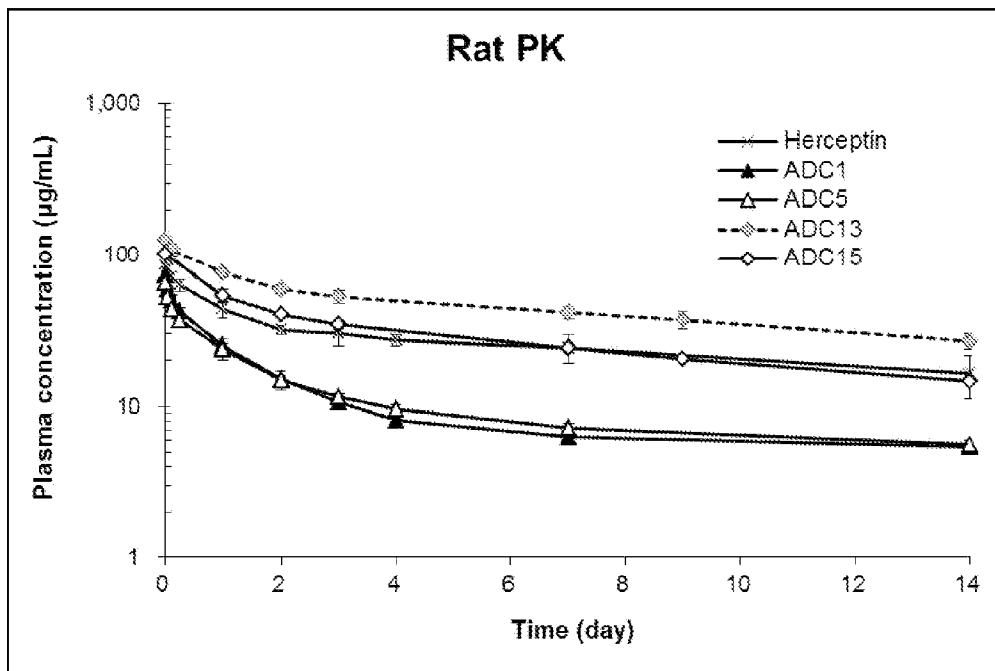


Figure 18

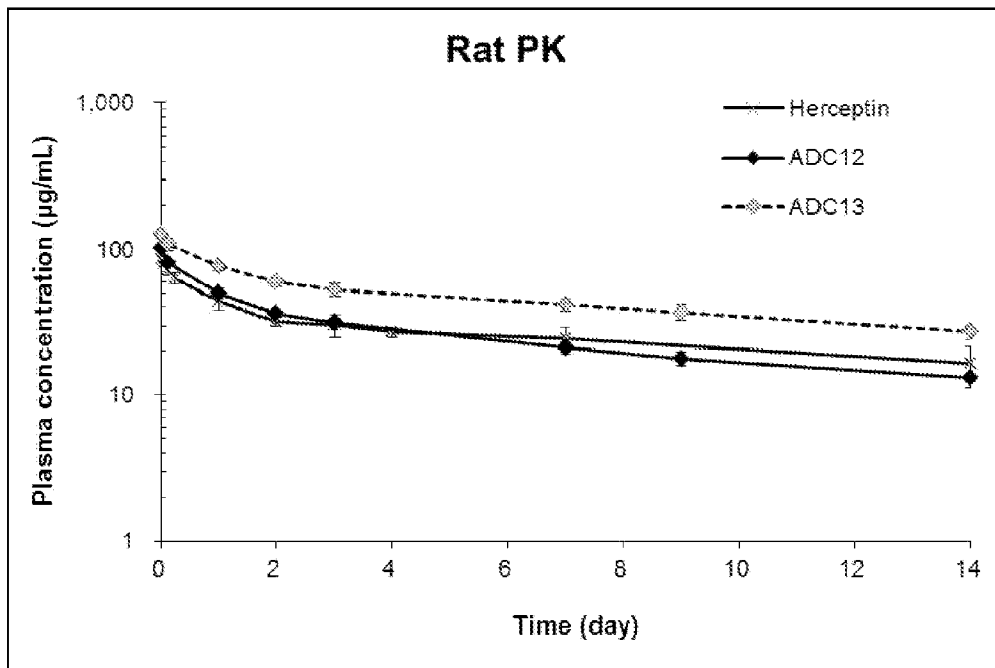


Figure 19

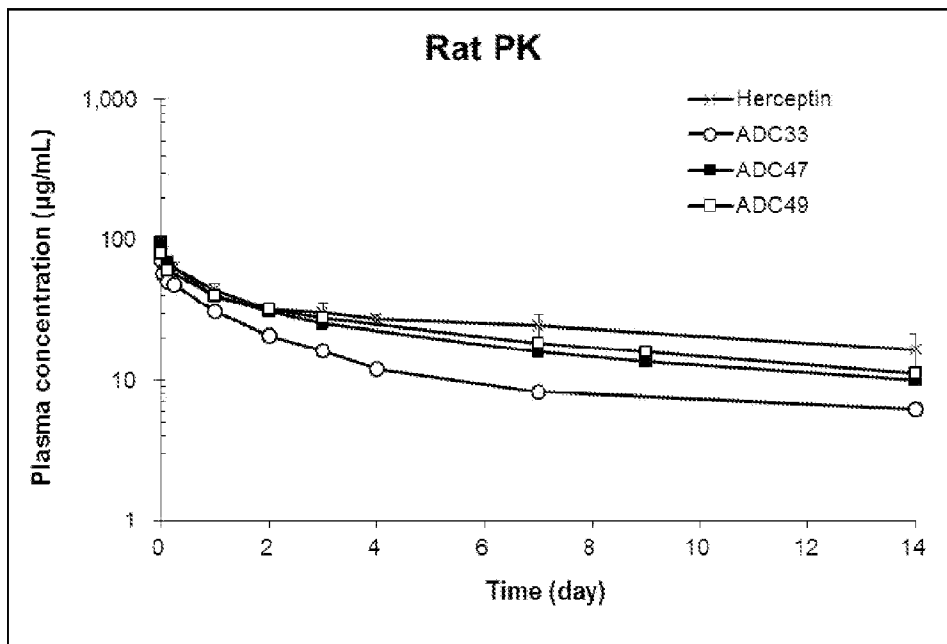


Figure 20

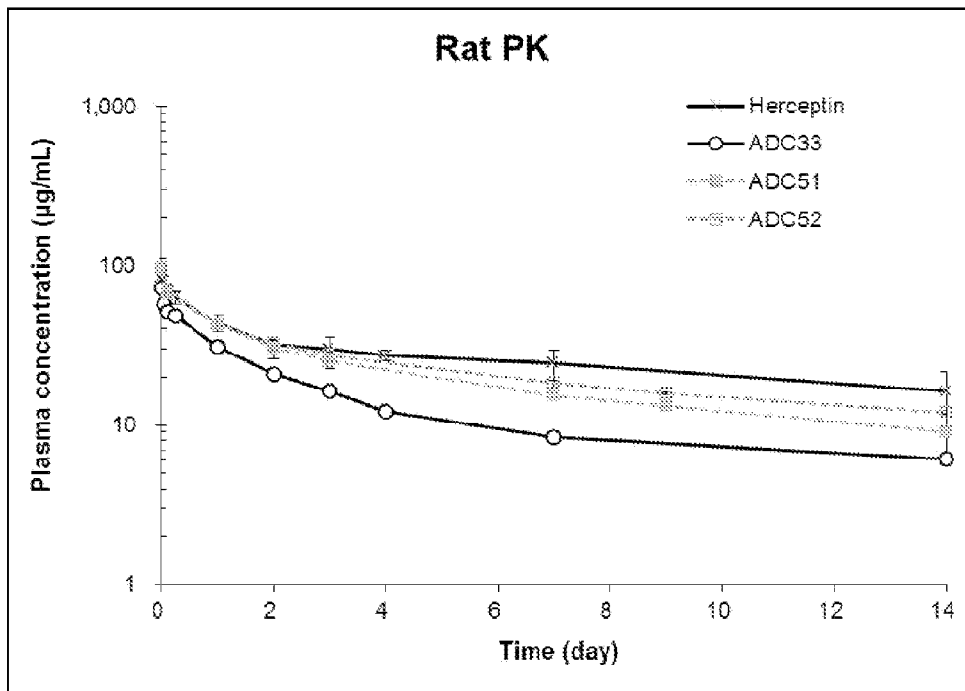


Figure 21

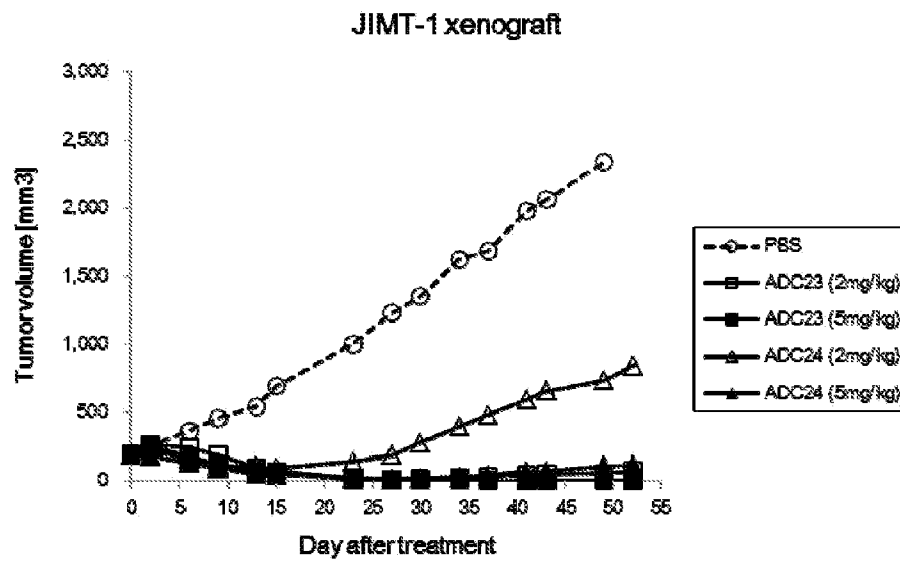


Figure 22

